This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

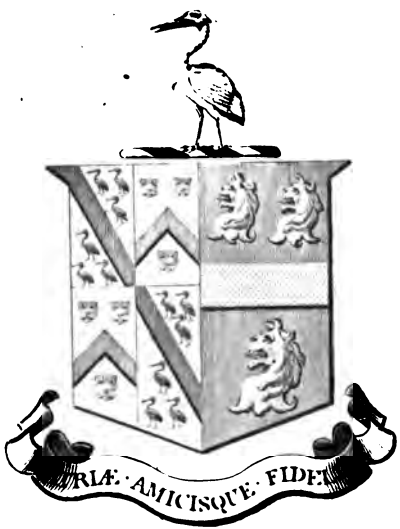
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

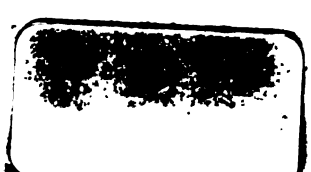
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

F. 3. 21



Sc Gondio Petro Starkie.



Vet. Fr. II A. 136

CASSANDRA,

A

ROMANCE.

Written Originally in FRENCH,

AND

Faithfully Tranſlated into ENGLISH,

BY

Sir CHARLES COTTERELL,
Maſter of the CEREMONIES.

VOL. IV.

The THIRD EDITION, very much Corrected.

LONDON:

Printed for J. DARBY, A. BETTESWORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. PEMBERTON, J. HOOKE, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY, J. BATLEY, B. SYMON. M.DCC.XXV.

THE

AUTHOR

TO

CALISTA.

I is but reaſon, Caliſta, *that I ſhould watch for you all manner of ways, and that ſome part of thoſe Nights you make me paſs without Sleep, ſhould be beſtowed on this Employment which you have ordained me: I obey you without Repugnance, both be-*

cauſe in pleaſing you I meet my Satisfaction and my perfect Glory, and becauſe I indeed find ſome pleaſure in entertaining my ſelf ſtill with Perſons, towards whom your Inclinations have cauſed a Friendſhip in me. My Heroes now are dearer to me by your Approbation than by their own Deſert, and ſince you have judged them worthy of your Affections, they are too proud of that high Fortune to neglect any thing from henceforth that may maintain them in it, or to conceal any of thoſe gallant Actions from you which may preſerve them in your eſteem. They, when I was taken up with Buſineſſes very different from this, ſollicited me themſelves to give you the Continuation of their Adventures, and I had your Commands too deeply graven in my Remembrance to reſiſt their Sollicitations. I here bring them to you a fourth time, divine Caliſta; *at their next viſit they ſhall take their Leave of you, and in this they perhaps will tell you ſome part of that you have deſired from them. If you think my* Arſaces *too long in the recital of his Life, perhaps you will pardon that Defect, in Conſideration of the Accidents whereof it is compoſed, and of*

the

the Importance of the Actions and Perſon; ſince his Death drew Tears from your fair Eyes, and that you have intereſſed your ſelf enough both in his return, and in his whole Fortune, to hear the relation of it without Wearineſs. If all the Adventures of it are not equal, and if you find ſome places in them not ſo ſtrong, nor ſo diverting as others, you will be pleaſed to conſider, that my Invention has not had an entire Liberty, and that it has been rack'd by Chronology, by the Truth of the Hiſtory, and by thoſe things I had already written; and, in ſhort, that I have been put to it, as many others would have been, to make Darius's *Son paſs his time handſomly in* Scythia, *whilſt his Country was laid deſolate, and his Father deprived of his Empire, and of his Life, by* Alexander's *victorious Forces. Yet in this Encounter, and in many others, which truly have kept me in a very troubleſome Conſtraint, I have ſtuck to Probability as much as poſſibly I could, and have made up a Story which in mine own Opinion is not the moſt defective of this Piece. You your ſelf (it may be) will make a more favourable Judgment of it, than I, ſince you have*

ever ſhewed as much Goodneſs, and as much Complacency to your Caſſandra, *as you have had little for him who gave her to you before her Birth, and who here confirms the Gift with that of his own Life.*

CASSAN-

CASSANDRA.

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK I.

WHILE nothing but Joy reſounds in Prince of *Scythia*'s Tent, Sorrow diſ all its mournful Effects in that of *An nus*, and in the Soul of young *Demet* That amorous Prince, whom the Va of ſo many Objects, and of ſo many ployments, could not divert from his fatal Thou was gone out as ſoon as Day began to break, to pa ordinary Tribute to the Aſhes of his *Hermione*. He waſh'd the cold Marble of her Tomb with his T whoſe Source ſeem'd impoſſible to be dried up; he invok'd her Ghoſt, and a thouſand times pronounc'd Name ſo dear to his Remembrance; when after ha ſpent ſome time in theſe doleful Employments, he b

to walk along the River-ſide, ſeeking in all kind of Objects for new Matter to increaſe his Affliction.

He was inſenſibly gotten a good way from the Camp, and already drew near that Walk which reach'd from the Bank of the River to the Temple of *Apollo*, when he chanc'd to light upon an extraordinary Adventure. He firſt ſaw certain Horſes looſned from a Chariot which ſtood ſome twenty Paces from them, and a little farther off under certain Trees he ſaw Women ſitting upon the Graſs, and three or four Men ſtanding about them. *Demetrius*'s ſorrowful Humour made him think of going directly back, or of turning into ſome other way to avoid that Encounter.

For that Purpoſe, after having taken a little Circuit, he left that Company on his Right-hand, but paſſing ſomewhat near them, he diſcover'd Objects that were powerful enough to ſtay him, and make him change his Reſolution. He caſt his Eye upon thoſe Women with more Curioſity than his Grief ſeem'd to have left him, and being naturally a Lover, or rather an Idolater of that Sex, he began to intereſt himſelf in certain Sighs and Complaints he heard come from among them. That potent Inclination which was predominant in him over all others, ſuſpended the Violence of his Sorrow for a few Moments, and made him capable of ſome Attention, and even of ſome deſire to know more. To ſatisfy himſelf he drew near to thoſe Trees again, and took his place behind a Hedge, thro' which he diſtinctly could obſerve the Perſons whereof that Company was compoſed. There was a young Lady, to whom all the reſt bore Reſpect as to the Miſtreſs, or Chief of two Women that ſeem'd to be her Retinue, an old Man of reaſonable good Preſence, and ſome other Servants. This Lady was laid along upon the Graſs, leaning her Head in the Lap of one of thoſe Women; the old Man was ſitting five or ſix Paces from her, and the Servants ſtood waiting round about them.

Demetrius could ſee the Lady's Face but on the ſide, yet in that little that appear'd to his Eyes he obſerved an extraordinary Beauty. That ſight obliged him to lend an Ear to their Converſation, and then he heard the

Lady

Lady ſpeak on this manner; *Flatter me no longer*, Theogenes, *but think as I do, that this eternal Anger of the Gods has no other Cauſe but my Ingratitude, and the meanneſs of my Spirit; I am confident enough of it to believe, that it hath drawn part of thoſe Deſolations which have fallen upon our Houſe, and I account it a manifeſt Folly to ſtruggle any more againſt my Deſtiny. Ah! how many Misfortunes ſhould I have eſcaped, if I had not ſurviv'd that deplorable Loſs, which ſettled a gloomy cruel Night for ever in my Soul? What an infinite of Tears ſhould I have ſpared my Eyes, and from how many bloody diſmal Spectacles ſhould I have freed them? How great Remorſe, how great Repentance ſhould I have avoided, and in ſhort, what a World of Miſeries ſhould I have forſaken, to enjoy that reſt which you have always oppoſed? Ah! without doubt!* (continued ſhe, with a Voice interrupted by many Sighs) *without doubt, O moſt valiant, and moſt conſtant Prince, I ought to have accompanied you to your Grave; I ſhould then no more be guilty of faint-heartedneſs, and ſhould only have felt my firſt Misfortunes. I ſhould not have ſeen the loſs of my Friends, and the general Ruin of our Family, nor ſhould I have been reduced to wander from Province to Province, to ſeek a Sanctury for this Life, which I had ſo many Occaſions to hate.*

This fair deſolate Lady brought forth theſe Words with ſo ſad and yet ſo pleaſing a Tone, that they pierced even into the very Soul of *Demetrius*, and preſently begot a Deſire in him, both to know that Stranger, and to offer her his Aſſiſtance in the Miſeries ſhe complained of. With this Intent, lending an Ear to their Diſcourſe more carefully than before, he heard that the old Man, after having kept ſilence a good while, made this Reply, It is no longer time, Madam, to renew your Grief by theſe tragical Remembrances which afflict you, and to ſeek out new Matter of Sorrow in a Wound, which Time, your Reaſon, and your Reſignation to the Will of the Gods, ought to have perfectly cured. You have ſpent Time enough in mournful Employments, and you have ſhewed both Senſe enough of your Loſſes, and Contempt enough of your Life, to fear no Reproaches of Ingratitude, or of Meanneſs of Spirit. Think now of giving ſome Reſt unto your Mind, and begin to hope for an end of part of

your Miseries. The Gods do expressly command it you, and they have discovered their Intentions clearly enough, to leave your Disobedience no Excuse, and to free you from all new Cause of Apprehension.

What would you have me hope, O Theogenes? (said the fair afflicted Lady, with a sigh) *shall I hope for the Recovery of those Persons I have left? and will those Gods, whose Pleasure ought to be a sacred Law to us, restore me the King my Father, of whose Death these Eyes were sad Spectators? Will they regain me that dear Prince, whom my Ingratitude sent unto his Grave? Ah!* Theogenes, *you know that that's the true Cause of all my Tears, and if you will have me hope for the end of my Wandrings, and for that Refuge which we seek against our Persecutors, how little able is that hope to comfort me; and besides, how little certainty is there in it! That great Man, at whose Feet we went to seek both Refuge and Revenge, is now no longer in this World, and his valiant Successors are imbroil'd in Quarrels themselves, which will leave them but little Sense of ours.*

The Lady without Question would have said more, if *Demetrius* by chance had not shewed himself a little, and by that sight interrupted their Conversation. When he saw he was discovered, he resolved to make his addresses to that Stranger, and assure her that amongst *Alexander*'s Successors she should still find that Generosity which made him protect the miserable, and the oppressed. At his coming toward them, the fair Stranger raised up her Head, and observing something that was great and noble in *Demetrius*'s Face, she believed him to be a Man of Quality, and thought her self oblig'd to rise, to repay part of his Salutation. *Demetrius* had no sooner cast his Eyes upon her, but he was in a manner blinded with the Lustre of that marvellous Beauty, and calling to mind the Remembrance of the most accomplish'd one he knew, he was of Opinion, that he had seen nothing in the Faces of the Princess *Berenice*, or of Queen *Statira*, which might not be equall'd in that of this young Stranger. The whitest and smoothest things in the whole World, came nothing near the Delicacy of her Skin, all the Lineaments of her Face were form'd, as it were in Emulation, with the most exact Proportion Nature could possibly bestow, and

and her Eyes had something in them that was extreamly moving, but moving with so much Sweetness and Majesty together, that 'twas impossible to bear the Glances of them without being dazled. They inclin'd toward black, and her Hair was of the same Colour; her Neck, her Hand, her Stature left nothing to be desired for their Perfection, and the amazed *Demetrius* found so many Causes of Admiration in that lovely Object, that he lost part of his Confidence, and could not approach so divine a Person, without extraordinary Fear and Respect. Yet did he draw near her with a very low Obeysance, and when she had returned, what the greatest Strangers thought due to his graceful Fashion; *Madam*, (said he) *the Liberty I take, would not be pardonable, if the Cause of it were not very lawful; nor had I interrupted your Conversation, but to put you out of the Doubts you have of* Alexander's *Successors. My nearest and best Friends hold some Rank amongst them, and I shall not be disavow'd by the better part, when I protest to you, that they will receive the Occasions of doing you service, as the most glorious Fortunes that can befal them.* *Demetrius* spake these Words with such a Grace, that the fair Stranger found little less Reason of Astonishment in him, than he had met in her, and knowing both by his Words, and by many Marks of Greatness which shone forth visibly in him, that he was no common Person, she received his Discourse, and answered him with much Civility; 'Whosoever you are, (said 'she) that with such goodness offer your Assistance to 'afflicted Persons, your Countenance gives much Credit 'to your Words, and I shall never doubt but that such 'a Man as you are, must needs be one, and one of the 'most worthy Successors of *Alexander*. I am one of the 'least considerable amongst them, (replied *Demetrius*) but 'I have confidence enough in their Friendship, and in 'their Vertue, to offer you all the succour you can desire 'of them, and to interest them in your Quarrel, with 'a Zeal which will make them forget their own to serve 'you. Their Affairs, (answered the Stranger) are so 'great and so important, that the Interests of a miserable Woman ought not to withdraw them from them, 'neither is it my Intention to make them any uncivil

'Request

'Requeſt, but only to demand a Retreat againſt my cruel Enemies, who having deſtroyed an illuſtrious Family, allied many ways to that of *Alexander the Great*, do proſecute the wretched Relicks of it with an unparallel'd Inhumanity. You may obtain all that you can deſire of them without demanding it, (ſaid *Demetrius*) and they that could refuſe any thing to the very Look of a Perſon like your ſelf, would be unworthy of the Memory of *Alexander*. The Alliance of your Family to that great King will be very conſiderable among them, who acknowledge all their Glory, and all their Fortune from him, but your Beauty will perſuade them more powerfully than any other Argument whatſoever.' The fair Stranger, extreamly ſatisfied with this firſt Encounter, which by *Demetrius*'s Civility, made her judge favourably of that of his Companions, was already paſſionately deſirous to know him; and her Deſire, which ſhe durſt not expreſs, was beginning to appear in her Face, when ſome Officers of the Army paſſing by, and ſeeing *Demetrius*, came towards him with much Reſpect; whereby ſhe learned the Greatneſs of his Quality, but not being fully ſatisfied with that, ſhe made ſign to the old Man, who accompanied her, to inform himſelf more particularly. *Theogenes* had no ſooner heard from one of thoſe Men, and the fair Stranger from *Theogenes*, that it was *Demetrius* the Son of *Antigonus*, whoſe Name was known thro' all *Europe* and *Aſia*, but coming to him, Sir, (ſaid ſhe) I by ſo many Marks of Greatneſs as appear in you, might certainly know you to be a Prince, and I was already confident of it, before I heard you were the Son of Prince *Antigonus*; his Name is not unknown in our Countries, neither was his Perſon to the King my Father: Your Youth hath not hindred your Reputation from extending it ſelf as far as the place of my Nativity, and I cannot but thank my Fate, for having ſo happily given me this firſt Encounter. *Demetrius* anſwered with very low Submiſſion, and reiterated the Offers he had made her, with ſo much Affection and Reſpect, that ſhe thought ſhe was obliged to diſcover her ſelf to him, and to give him a perfect Knowledge of her Fortune.

For

For which purpoſe, *Sir*, (replied ſhe) *if your Generoſity incites you already to comfort my Misfortunes, I hope when they are known to you, you will not loſe thoſe charitable Deſires; and the Obligation I have to your Goodneſs, will not ſuffer me longer to conceal the Name, nor the Life of this unfortunate Woman, whom you have thought worthy of your Aſſiſtance. The recital of my ſad Adventures may perhaps be tedious to you, but if you pleaſe to grant them an Hours time, I hope I ſhall intereſt you in my Fortune, and I ſhall make Confeſſions to you, which I cannot do without Shame, nor without ſhewing my Acknowledgment for your Civilities, and the confidence I have in your Vertue.*

Demetrius confounded at ſo obliging a Diſcourſe, could not find Words to expreſs the Senſe he had of it, and the Sight, and ſweet Converſation of that divine Stranger, having in part ſuſpended his Remembrance of *Hermione*, he prepared himſelf for Attention, with a reſpect ſuitable to the Favour he received; and having teſtified how conſiderable it was to him, he ſat down with her, by her Command, and making Sign to the Officers to retire, he lent a greedy Ear to her Relation, which ſhe began immediately in theſe Words.

The

The History of Deidamia.

I Shall not injure Modesty, if I tell you, that there is no Blood more illustrious, than that whereof I am descended, since indeed it draws its Original from the Gods, and that from Father to Son without any interruption, we fetch our Pedigree from the great *Achilles*: He was the Father of *Pyrrhus*, who after the Siege of *Troy*, being driven out of his Country, came to inhabit among the *Molosses*, where he established the Monarchy of the *Epirotes*. His Son succeeded him, and his Posterity has reigned after him in a right Male line to King *Arimbas*, the Father of *Alexander* my Uncle, King of *Epirus*, of *Æacidas* my Father who succeeded him in that Kingdom, and of Queen *Olympias* the Wife of *Philip*, and Mother of *Alexander* the Great. By this short touch of our Genealogy, I have let you see the Kindred that was between the late King *Alexander*, and us; and moreover you without doubt have heard, how to augment that Alliance between our Families, King *Philip* gave his Daughter *Cleopatra*, whom he had by a former Wife, in Marriage to *Alexander* my Uncle, who by that double Affinity became both his Son-in-Law, and his Brother-in-Law.

After this Knowledge of my Quality, I will tell you, that I was born of Prince *Æacidas* and of the Princess *Plotia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Menon* the *Thessalian*, who acquired so great Reputation in the *Lamaick* War. I was bred up in the Court of King *Alexander* my Uncle, and he seeing himself Childless, and loving the Prince his Brother very dearly, caused great Care to be taken of my Education, the Princess my Mother contributing on her side, whatsoever could be expected from so tender an Affection, as that she bore me.

I will not entertain you with the particulars of my l
fancy, among which there is nothing worthy to be tc
you, and 'twill be sufficient to let you know I passed
without any Trouble, and that was the only Time whe
in I tasted any Sweetness or Tranquility. I was as mu
made of by the King my Uncle, and by the Queen l
Wife, as if I had been their own Daughter, and t
Marks of a reasonable good Nature which were observ
in me, rather than the Appearances of a growing Beau
wherewith some began to persecute me, gained me t
Affections of the whole Court. I lived on this manne
(since I must abridge the recital of matters of small i
portance) until my thirteenth Year, which was the l
of the calm, and quietness of my Life. The King n
Uncle, in whom the Fame of the other *Alexander* l
Brother-in-Law, and his Nephew, begot an Emulatic
and who was neither behind him in Ambition, nor
Courage, imagined himself to be born for great Enter
zes as well as he; and did not despair of obtaining
glorious Victories as his. With this Design, he raise
potent Army, and aiming at the Conquest of the W
he passed into *Italy*, after having put the Governmen
his Kingdom into the Hands of my Father, who took
Care of it upon him at his Desire, and bearing a g
Affection to his Brother, used that Confidence he hac
him with a perfect Fidelity, and acquitted himself w
out reproach of the Charge that had been given
The Kingdom for a certain Time remained peaceab
nough, but within a while after, some of the *Mo*
who naturally are a stirring seditious People, rose
Arms by the secret Practices of *Antipater*, whom *Alex*
the Great had left in *Macedonia*, and who contrary t
Master's Intentions, strove to make himself great in E
at the cost of his Neighbours, and Allies: To some
Rebellion of the *Molosses*, he underhand furnished
with Men and Money, and by his Assistance they
so powerful, that at last they made War openly.
mighty Army on foot, and marched streight towar
cidas, with an Intent to give him Battel. My I
who at first had been a little negligent of that R
was extreamly unprepared; yet having a very goo

nage, he with all possible speed drew together those Forces he had, and giving Order for new Levies, had not the Patience to stay till they were in a readiness to serve him, but went to meet the Rebels with a handful of Men. He trusted to the Justice of his Cause, and believed that his Enemies, half conquered by their Guilt, would never have the boldness to stay his coming; but he found himself deceived in that Expectation, and having given them Battel very unseasonably, his Army weaker by the half than theirs, was utterly defeated, and scarce was he able with a small remainder of his Men, to save himself in *Ambracia* the Metropolis of the Kingdom, where the whole Court did still reside. Then it was that he saw the Fault he had committed, in fighting so rashly; and that foreseeing the continuation of that War, and the Progress the Enemies might make if they knew how to lay hold of their Advantage, he sent Dispatches on all Sides to his Allies to demand their Assistance, and in the interim labour'd to fortify the Town, and gather'd together all the Forces he had caused to be levied. While he was thus employed, the Rebels made themselves Masters of the Field, under the Conduct of one *Tharritas* a valiant Commander, and finding no more resistance, came audaciously and laid Siege before *Ambracia*, where we were all retir'd: My Father had already put it in a Condition to make Defence, and to wait for the relief of his Allies, and 'twas that Knowledge that made him expect the Enemy without Fear. The Approaches of that Siege were very bloody, and the first Events thereof were doubtful; there were many Men slain on either Side, but our Losses were more considerable than theirs, and while our Numbers decreased, theirs grew more potent every Day.

The little Understanding I have in War, hinders me from making you a long Discourse of it, and I the more willingly pass over the Relation, because 'tis of little consequence to the Knowledge of my Life. Among those that held out the Siege with us, was *Neoptolemus*, the cruel Author of our Misfortunes, a Prince of the Blood of the *Æacidæ*, as we were, and who next to the Royal Family, was the chief in all *Epirus*; tho' he wanted a Crown,

Crown, he wanted not a Desire to have one, and to attain that sovereign Dignity, he would neither have left any thing unattempted, nor have thought any thing difficult to his Ambition. He from my earliest Years had applied himself to serve me, and at that Time was diligent enough to let me see it, whether it were that he really was in Love with me, or that in our Alliance he found Advantages, and Means to support himself in the State. *Æacidas* suffer'd him to proceed without being offended at it, because of *Neoptolemus*'s Quality, which at that Time was little disproportionate to ours; but yet he had no great Desire to that Match, whether it were that he lik'd not *Neoptolemus*'s Person; or having but one only Daughter, with whom he flatter'd himself, and of whom he had conceiv'd too good an Opinion, he had some higher aim for her; or that perhaps he was willing to comply with my Inclinations which were no way bent to love *Neoptolemus*: Indeed I saw nothing in his Person that was not unpleasing to me, and I had taken such an Aversion against him, as made me receive all the Proofs of his Affection as so many Injuries. He was extreamly busy in the Siege to make himself considerable to us, and undertook sometimes to Sally forth upon the Enemies, but he was always beaten in again, and succeeded so ill in all his Enterprizes, that our Condition was thereby much impaired. In the mean Time our Enemies had great Advantages over us, they had taken our Out-works, stopt all Passages of Victuals and Relief that might come to us, and had shut us up in our Walls, with little Hope of the Event of that War. My Father was like to have died for Grief, and knowing that the King his Brother was too far off, and too deeply ingaged in his new Conquests (the Noise whereof had often come to our Ears) to expect any Assistance from him, and that he had no News of Help from his Allies, upon which he had depended, he knew not what to resolve upon, and for a cruel surcharge of his Afflictions, he heard that the Forces he had given Order to raise in his Provinces, were cut in pieces by our Enemies, who went to meet them, and that on every Side all Hope was forbidden him. This Knowledge put the whole Court in very great Perplexity, and began so

to deject the Soldiers Hearts, that it was very hard to make them labour for their own Defence; our Provisions also began to fail us, and in short, we saw our selves reduc'd to very great Extremity.

Æacidas would not capitulate with his Enemies, whether it were that he resolv'd to be faithful to his Brother even to the utmost, or that he distrusted the Words of those Rebels. We no longer had any Hope but in the Assistance of Heaven, when Heaven gave us Proof that it had not forsaken us, and sent us Relief in a Time, when without its Arrival we were in no possibility of Safety. All the Passages, as I have said already, were so close block'd up, that no Intelligence of it could any way come to us; and 'twas from the tops of our Towers that we perceiv'd a Dust, and saw the Arms of our Allies glitter against the Sun; we waver'd between Hope and Fear, and could not discern whether those Forces were Friends or Enemies, when we from far discover'd them fighting with our Besiegers, and within a little after, we receiv'd a more perfect Assurance by some of their Horsemen, who having slipt aside during the Skirmish, had found means to get near our Walls, and to shoot Arrows into the City, at whose Heads there were Letters fastned, which were brought to my Father, containing Words to this Effect.

Agis *King of the* Lacedæmonians *to Prince* Æacides.

'I Come to your Relief with ten Thousand *Grecians*, able to subdue your Rebels; expect an infallible Victory over them, and to facilitate it, Sally you forth upon their Backs, while we are Fighting with them on the other Side, this double Assault will without doubt put them in disorder, and I hope we shall in one Day make an end of the War.'

These

Theſe Words cauſed ſuch a joy in my Father, and in all the Beſieged, as can very hardly be expreſſed, and raiſed their drooping Courages ſo ſuddenly, that they demanded nothing more but Arms, to make a Sally upon their Enemies. By my Father's Orders, *Neoptolemus* at the Head of two Thouſand Men, went forth of the Gates to fall upon thoſe that were left to guard the Trenches, and did it ſo ſucceſsfully, that they were conſtrain'd to quit them, and retire to their Companions, who already were ingag'd in a ſharp Encounter with the *Grecians*; *Neoptolemus* purſued them, and when all the Forces were join'd, they fought a cruel and a bloody Battel; they of our Party who came off, aſſur'd us afterward, that they had ſeen the valiant *Agis* do Actions that ſurpaſs all Belief, and all Imagination; that all the Deeds of *Achilles*, and of other the moſt renowned Heroes which Fame hath deliver'd to our Times, could hardly equal thoſe prodigious ones he did that Day.

To ſay Truth, he fought ſo well, and was ſo bravely ſeconded by his Men, that our Enemies, tho' more than they by a third part, were utterly Defeated, their General kill'd by the Hand of valiant *Agis*, and the Reliques of them that eſcaped the Slaughter, retired in diſorder to certain Places that were at their Devotion. Never was there ſeen ſo gallant, nor ſo ſudden an Execution; and when they brought us News of it, and we heard we were Conquerors, and freed from a Siege, which but Four Hours before threatned no leſs than our total Ruin, we at firſt could hardly give Credit to thoſe Miracles; yet were they ſoon confirmed to us when we ſaw our valiant Deliverer approach our Walls. *Æacidas* went forth to meet him, and to honour him the more would needs have us keep him Company, attended by all the Ladies of the Court, who prepared themſelves with Joy to ſhew their compliance to his Deſires. We met him a few Furlongs from our Gates, and as the effects of his Valour had aſtoniſhed us, we found new Cauſes of admiration in his Perſon; and would it had pleaſed the Gods I had only admired him, and that Acknowledgment and Eſteem had been the only Recompences I had given him, both for the General, and my particular Safety. Ah! Remembrance,

brance, thou Enemy to my Repoſe, (continued the Princeſs, breaking forth into Tears) why doſt thou repreſent my valiant *Agis* to me in the Condition he firſt appear'd before my Eyes? And ſince that of his Loſs can never be wip'd out of my Mind, why doſt thou bring him again into it with all thoſe Advantages, which made him a Thouſand Times more dear to me than this deplorable Life which I ſhamefully and miſerably languiſh out after his Death?

This fair Princeſs was conſtrain'd to ſtay in this part of her Narration, to give Leiſure to her Tears to vent themſelves, and to her Speech to reſettle it ſelf in a Condition to proſecute her Diſcourſe. *Demetrius*, who began to be highly concern'd in her Affairs, who had a tender Heart, and an excellent good Nature, and who beſides had often heard tell of the prodigies that valiant King of the *Lacedæmonians* had done againſt *Antipater*, bore the Princeſs Company in that ſad Employment, and was going to ſpeak ſome Words of Comfort to her; when after having wip'd her Eyes, ſhe went on with her Story thus:

Pardon, Sir, this Confeſſion which is ſhameful in a Princeſs; 'tis true, (ſince I muſt avow it to my Confuſion) I have been ſenſible of a Paſſion, but I was too much Miſtreſs of it, and therein lies my Ingratitude, and the blackeſt of all my Crimes: I'll tell you then, that I ſaw my valiant *Agis* at the Heads of his Forces, his Arms were all beſmear'd with Blood and Duſt, but his Head was uncover'd, and I obſerv'd certain Features in his Face, of which I ſhould ſay, I had never ſeen any thing like them, if I had not ſeen that of *Demetrius*: His graceful Carriage was hardly to be match'd in the whole World, and the heat of the Fight had added a Colour to his Complexion, which gave new luſtre to his natural Handſomneſs; he was but two and Twenty Years of Age, yet had he already done a Thouſand Actions, the Reputation of which began to ſpread it ſelf much beyond the narrow limits of *Greece*; I was already ſo diſpoſed to wiſh him well, for the good Office he had done us, that he appear'd to my Eyes with all manner of Advantage, but I thought him much more lovely, when at our Meeting he alighted

alighted from his Horſe, and came with great Humi
to ſalute Queen *Cleopatra* my Aunt, the Princeſs my M
ther, and my ſelf; he receiv'd *Æacidas*'s Thanks
Praiſes with an unparallel'd Modeſty, and entertain'd
Ladies with a Civility, which viſibly ſhew'd him to
a Prince extreamly well bred, and made appear the
vantage the *Lacedæmonians* had above all other Natio
whoſe Education and Diſcipline are very different fi
thoſe of *Sparta*: After we had given a very honour
Reception to our valiant Defender, which he accep
with a wonderful Modeſty, he went into the Town w
us, and was loged in the faireſt Quarter of the Pal
all the People conſidered him as their tutelary An
and he could not paſs thro' the Streets without be
crouded by the Throng, and made deaf with the Ac
mations which ecchoed to the Sky. The reſt of the
wherein he had done ſo much, and ſo ſucceſsfully to
Advantage, was allowed to his Repoſe; but he a
ward confeſſed to me, he taſted but very little
Night, and that the Sight of me had cauſed ſuch Diſqu
in him as he never had felt before. I know not how
became ſo blinded as to think there was ſomething lo
in me, but in effect he ſaw me, and lov'd me, and
the firſt Sight of him, I cannot deny but that I had ſt
Inclinations to love him alſo; this is a free kind of
feſſion, but the Perſon of *Agis* was ſuch, and our O
gation to him ſo conſiderable, that it was hard for
to defend my ſelf againſt thoſe Thoughts he imprint
my Mind: I perceiv'd the Birth of it, by ſome
Cares which began to trouble me more than ordi
and remembring that I had often ſeen his Eyes fixt
my Face with a particular Attention, I flatter'd m
with an Opinion that perchance I might be indiffer
him; I was then ſo young, and had till that Tim
bred up in ſuch a way, that all Thoughts of this I
were utterly Strangers to me, and yet I let my
incline toward them, with a Facility whereof I
never have ſuſpected it. I do not repent my ſelf,
liant *Agis*, for never did Prince better deſerve th
ction of a Princeſs; I bluſh not for Shame of hav
ven it you, and am ſo far from thoſe ſeverer Th

that I ſhall Bluſh, and Weep ſo long as I live, for Shame and for Grief that I lov'd you not enough. The next Day when he had waited upon the Queen, and the Princeſs my Mother, he came alſo to viſit me in my Chamber; his Face and Cloaths were not then covered with Blood and Duſt, but tho' being in another Dreſs, he ſeem'd more handſom than the Day before, methought he was leſs confident; and as Bold and Eloquent as he was, he then was in ſuch a Silence, and ſuch a Confuſion, that I could not chuſe but partake with him in it; all his Diſcourſe was nothing but Civility, yet he accompanied it with Looks and Sighs, which ſtrengthned thoſe Suſpicions that began to ſettle themſelves pleaſingly in my Mind. He ſtaid two Days longer with us, during which time he had not the Confidence to diſcover his Intentions; but when he could no more conceal them, he declar'd them in a very gallant and a very extraordinary manner.

He had already propoſed to my Father, that it was neceſſary to proſecute the remainder of the Rebels, and that without giving them time to recruit, it was beſt to make our ſelves Maſters of all the Country, and recover the Places they had taken from us, before they had put themſelves in a Condition to defend them.

For the execution of this Deſign, after having given only three Days to the refreſhing of his Forces, he reſolved to take the Field with eight Thouſand of his Men, that ſtill were left, and four Thouſand *Epirotes* under the Command of *Theogenes*, this old Man you ſee here with me, whoſe Quality is conſiderable in *Epirus*, and whoſe experience in War has ſhewed it ſelf in many Employments of that Nature. *Agis* would by no Means ſuffer *Æacidas* to ſtir out of the City, whether it were to prevent inteſtine Rebellions, or that he might have the Glory alone of having ended that War, and ſaved the Crown of *Epirus* from manifeſt Ruin.

The Army was already drawn up in the Field, and their valiant General was in the Palace-Hall, where he was taking his leave of my Father, and of the whole Court, which was there aſſembled, after he had loudly promiſed my Father, that within two Months he would

make

make him peaceful Master over all *Epirus*. *Æacidas* more obliged to him than can be expressed, both for his past Actions, and for what he was going to undertake in Favour of that Kingdom, knew not which way he should thank him sufficiently; but after having exalted his Praises to the Clouds, By what means (said he) O the most valiant, and the most generous of all Princes, by what means shall we be able to acknowledge our Engagements to you, and what worthy Recompence can we offer to the Defender of our Lives and Liberties? Certainly, the Gifts of this Crown you have preserved, and the Blood of all that are Subjects to it, would be too light a return for what you have done for them; and if in your gallant Actions, Glory were not your only Aim, you would leave a Country Peaceable and Triumphant, indeed, by your Valour, but generally afflicted for its want of Power, which will keep it for ever in a forced Ingratitude.

Agis taking occasion by this Encouragement to declare his Intentions; Do not think, Sir, (said he to his Father) that I am so perfectly generous as to quit the hope of Reward you promise to my Services; I began to do you them out of a Duty which binds us to our Allies, and out of that consideration of Glory which you alledg; but in what I have yet to do for you, suffer me a little to consider my own Interest, and since you judge me worthy of some Recompence give me leave to demand it, and to hope for it particularly from your self. By all the Gods (cried *Æacidas*, lifting up his Hands to Heaven) King *Agis* shall never pretend to any thing from me, which shall not be granted him, and I shall not think my self less happy in requiting his great Obligations, than I have been in receiving them.

If it be so (replied *Agis* with a contented Look) I am the most glorious, and the most fortunate of all Men living, and since it is not possible for me longer to conceal the favour I desire from you, I demand a Price, Sir, which is infinitely above my Services, and that is no other thing but the Permission to serve the Princess *Deidamia*. All the Company was surprized at this Discourse, as much as you can imagine; *Æacidas* was in a manner astonished, and I was struck into a Confusion which I

am

am not able to repreſent; yet he having already won the Affections of the whole Court, the whole Court intereſted it ſelf joyfully in his Demand, and teſtified their Senſe of it by Cries, and clapping of Hands, which confirm'd my Father in the Knowledge of the Advantages he ſaw in that Propoſition; and to ſay Truth, he received it very handſomly, and breaking the Silence, in which that Surprize had held him for a while, he turn'd toward *Agis*, and diſcovering his Intention by a Countenance more chearful than ordinary; Sir, (ſaid he) my Daughter hath no way merited the Honour you do her, but if you have found any thing in her worthy of your Eſteem, I find no leſs Advantage to my ſelf by this laſt Obligation, than this whole Kingdom has to you for your former ones; If I could give her Empires for a Dowry, I ſhould accept of your Alliance with greater Joy; but ſince that, ſuch as ſhe is, you have not diſdain'd her, I command her to receive this Honour with all that Reſpect and Acknowledgment which is due to a Prince like your ſelf.

And I (replied the Prince) do here declare, that I will not abuſe your Goodneſs, nor the Command you impoſe upon her; for pretending to nothing from you, but the Permiſſion of ſerving her, I leave her fully at Liberty, to make what Judgment ſhe ſhall pleaſe of my Services: When the Kingdom is ſettled in Peace, I will come to lay them at her Feet, and if by them I can obtain a confirmation of the Favour you ſhew me, I will beg the continuance of it, which I ſhall prefer both before all the Empires of the World, and before all the ſublimeſt Fortunes. As he ended theſe Words, he bent one Knee to the Ground before me, and taking one of my Hands, which I could not refuſe him in that Company, eſpecially after my Father's Command; Madam, (ſaid he) let the violence of my Paſſion gain Pardon for my Inſolence; Reſpect made me demand the conſent of the Prince your Father, before its Declaration, but I'll draw no Advantage thence which can diſpleaſe you, and will never ask that by his Authority, which I ſhall not be able to procure by my Services; grant me the Favour to ſecond his approbation of them, and to accept the Gift I make you, of a Life which ſhall never be but the Princeſs *Deidamia*'s.

When

When he had ended these Words, he kissed my Hand, and both by that Action, and by what he had said, drew a blush into my Cheeks, and put me into a Confusion, which left me not the power to answer him; neither was it necessary I should, and the Princess my Mother being willing to help me out of that trouble, spoke for me, and addressing her self to the King, who already was risen from his Knee; Sir, (said she) you will be pleased to spare *Deidamia* a Declaration, whereof her Age is uncapable, and give me leave to assure you for her, that she will ever be most ready to acknowledge the good Inclinations wherewith you honour her, both according to the merits of so great a King, and according to the command of the Prince her Father.

Agis appeared transported at this Reply, and having saluted the Princess my Mother in the same manner as he had done me, he received the endearments of *Æacidas*, and of the whole Court, with demonstrations of a perfect Contentment; and not making any longer stay, after he had taken his last Farewel, he went out of the Palace, and so out of the Town, and having hindred my Father's Intention, which was to wait upon him part of that day's March, he placed himself at the Head of his Army, and advanced directly toward the Enemy.

It would be no easy matter for me to represent what my Thoughts were really at that time; but I may well confess to you that they inclin'd toward Joy, and that as young as I was, I found nothing in this Encounter but occasions of Satisfaction; the surprize of *Agis*'s unexpected Proceeding, had put me a little out of Countenance, but my being already disposed to wish him very well, quickly obtained his Pardon for it, and reflecting upon the excellent qualities of his Person, I in that Conquest found all manner of Contentment and Advantage to my self. I considered that the way he had gone was full of an exceeding great regard to me, and that in asking my Father's Approbation, before he made me acquainted with his Love, he had shew'd the respect he bore our Family, and had freed me from all the blame a Princess might receive, by giving way to a secret Pretender. In short, both for all these Reasons, and the remembrance

of his Merit, I began to love him in good earneſt, and the will of my Friends affords excuſe enough to my Affection, to give me liberty to own it to you. I ſaw nothing in his Perſon that was not lovely to the higheſt Degree; nay, I could not ſo much as wiſh for any thing that was not to be found moſt advantageouſly in him. This Affection which I felt take birth, without making any Oppoſition to hinder it, began to cauſe diſquiets in me, to which I had not been accuſtomed, and the effect abſence uſes to produce in the Hearts of thoſe that love, entring inſenſibly into mine, Grief for his being away, and Fear for thoſe Dangers whereinto he was going to caſt himſelf, found place in it very quickly, and I made no Prayers to Heaven, without employing part of them for his Safety, and for his ſpeedy Return. The Prince my Father, and the Princeſs my Mother, who ſaw real Advantages both to them and me in his Alliance, confirm'd me in thoſe Thoughts themſelves, and the whole Court to his united Intereſts, thro' the preſent remembrance of thoſe important Obligations it had to him, rung his Praiſes eternally in my Ears, and fortified me in my Affection by all manner of Reaſons. Only *Neoptolemus* was diſcontented at it, but diſcontented even to Rage, and not being able to diſſemble his Reſentments, he murmur'd loudly at the Injuſtice that was done him, in preferring a ſtrange Prince, whom they hardly knew, before a Prince of the Blood of *Æacides*, and in ſuffering him in one Day to carry away the recompence of the Services of his whole Life. He made his complaint to my Father, but reap'd very little Satisfaction; nay, he complain'd of it to me my ſelf, but in ſuch inſolent Terms, that I was forced to tell him he had no reaſon to envy *Agis* his Fortune, for tho' my Father had not diſpoſed of me in favour of that Prince, his Condition had been never a whit the better; and in ſhort, that tho' there had never been ſuch a Man as *Agis* in the World, *Deidamia* would never have been for *Neoptolemus*. He was not much contented with this Anſwer, but not being in a Condition to let his Reſentments break out further, while *Agis* was buſied for the ſafety of *Epirus*, which was wholly indebted to him for it, he ſtrove to diſſemble them till another Seaſon, that

might

might be more proper for him to take Satisfaction. In the mean time our valiant Defender drew the War gloriously to a Concluſion; I underſtand it too little to enlarge my ſelf in the particular Relation thereof, and 'twill ſuffice me to tell you, that within three Months he gain'd another Battel over the Rebels, perfected the Defeat of them in ſome other Encounters, which were all favourable to him, and either by Force, or by the Terror of his Arms, made himſelf Maſter of all the Places they had gotten to their Party. Still as we received News of theſe Succeſſes, I receiv'd Letters from him alſo; I will not trouble you with relating what they contain'd, moſt of them I have forgotten, and only remember the very firſt, which was in theſe Words:

King *Agis* to the Princeſs *Deidamia.*

WHAT will not the fortunate Agis, *inſpired with the remembrance of the Princeſs* Deidamia, *be able to do for the Tranquility of* Epirus? *And what may not be hoped for from a Heart animated with ſo glorious a Paſſion? I would it pleaſed the Gods I were as certain of the Victory over my Princeſs's Mind, as over the Enemies of this State; but what Victory can he hope for who begins by his own Defeat, and who declares himſelf conquered before he has Fought? In this Condition of my Fortune, the ſucceſs of this War could not be to my Advantage; but that which others may find in Conqueſts, and in Triumphs, is found by happy* Agis *in the Glory of being vanquiſhed by* Deidamia.

This was the firſt Letter I receiv'd, and by my Father's Command I wrote him an Anſwer, which my Mother dictated, and which as I remember was in theſe Terms:

The Princeſs *Deidamia* to the King of the *Lacedemonians*.

BOTH to conquer the Enemies of Epirus, *and to conquer the Mind of* Deidamia, *King* Agis *hath Arms which promiſe him an infallible Succeſs; his Valour alone is ſufficient to defeat the Rebels; and as touching the Victory he deſires over my Mind, he ought to hope for it, not only from the Will of them that have Power to diſpoſe of me, but from that they have left unto my ſelf, which ſhall ever make me acknowledge as much what my Friends owe to his Generoſity, as what I am indebted to his Merit and to his Affection.*

I received many others, as I have already told you, but within a while after we receiv'd himſelf, Crown'd with Lawrels, and laden with the Spoils of his Enemies, whoſe remainders he had ſettled in an Obedience, which left not ſo much as any appearance of Trouble in the Kingdom. You may eaſily judge how he was welcom'd, and can imagine without my telling it, that all the Magnificence the *Epirots* could poſſibly ſhew, was to be ſeen when he made his Entrance; we went a good way forth to meet him, and that Interview paſſed with demonſtrations of Joy and Affection, which it would be very difficult to repreſent; but our particular Meeting ſtirr'd up more tender and more preſſing motions in our Hearts than in the reſt of the Company; and I confeſs, that in that ſecond Encounter, I in the Perſon of *Agis*, found a thouſand new inducements to love him.

That firſt Day was ſpent in Triumphs, and in Rejoycings for his return, and for the happy ſucceſs of his Enterprizes. He came to viſit me at my Lodging, and gave me a thouſand conſirmations of his Love, with a grace in which it was impoſſible, not only for the prepoſſeſſed *Deidamia*, but even for the moſt inſenſible Woman of the World to defend her ſelf. I come not (ſaid he) as a Conquerot to demand a Recompence for what I have done to

ſecure

ſecure this Kingdom, but as a guilty Perſon that waits at your Feet to expect what Puniſhment you will inflict upon his Preſumption; and I acknowledge that I have leſs defended *Epirus* with my Forces, than I have offended *Deidamia* by my audacious Thoughts: But I was not Maſter of that noble Paſſion, which totally poſſeſſing my Soul with an abſolute Empire, left me not the leaſt power in the World over my ſelf; and I believ'd, that putting my ſelf into the hazard of dying for you, there was too much Glory in my Deſtiny to forbear to publiſh it; 'twas that that made me haſten a Declaration, which perhaps you have not forgiven me, and though I am not able to repent it, I accounted my Temerity ſo worthy to be condemned, that I ſhall think what Sentence ſoever you pronounce againſt it, to be both Juſt and Merciful. As he made an end of theſe Words, he fix'd his Eyes on mine with ſuch a paſſionate Action, that his Silence expreſſed his Thoughts more eloquently than they had done; and knowing that I ſhould neither diſpleaſe *Æacides*, nor injure the Modeſty of my Sex, by giving him civil Proofs of my Affection, I made no difficulty of taking a little liberty in Favour of him, and of following the Command of my Friends, the Wiſhes of the whole Court, and the Incitements of mine own Inclination; Sir, (ſaid I, after I had ſtaid a while without reply) your Services are moſt important, and your Offences very light, and that Declaration, whereof you accuſe your ſelf as of a Crime, was made with too much Reſpect and Freedom, to leave me any matter of Complaint againſt you; I think it a moſt judicious Courſe for Perſons of your Quality and mine, and my Father's approbation gives me the liberty to conſider your good Will; upon which I ſhould not have been able to have caſt my Eyes, without the Knowledge of his; I will confeſs to you moreover, ſince this Confeſſion is due to the Merit of your Perſon, and to that of the great Obligation you have laid upon us, that in the order he gave me in Favour of you, I found no repugnance in my ſelf to obey him, nor while I live will I ever have any to acknowledge your Affection. *Agis* was quite tranſported with Joy at this reply, and lifting up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, O Fortune, (*cryed he*) thou

thou doſt but play with my Deſtiny, and theſe Favours are too great to be of any long continuance; thou, in the beginning of my Services, haſt given me a Prize, which could not be due to the moſt obſequious endeavours of my whole Life; and without doubt thou wilt forſake me when I have merited part of it by my Fidelity.

He ſpake theſe prophetick Words, and many others, with ſuch raptures of Joy, as viſibly expreſſed the greatneſs of his Paſſion; and afterwards made me a thouſand Proteſtations of an inviolable Conſtancy, with ſuch ſweet and moving Language, that there are but few Hearts in which they would not have left a deep Impreſſion. He continued frequently to make me the like Viſits, but being deſirous to ſtay in our Court, without being burdenſom to the People of *Epirus*, he ſent back his Forces into *Greece* under the Conduct of one of his Commanders, and kept only with him his menial Servants. He proteſted publickly that he would not abuſe *Æacidas*'s Goodneſs, and that he pretended not to his Alliance, but when he ſhould have merited it from me, and that I ſhould know him ſo well, as he might hope for that through my Inclination, which I as yet paid him out of Obedience.

This manner of Proceeding was extreamly civil and obliging to me, but it was very imprudent for him, and gave him Cauſe enough to repent it afterward. In the mean time he ſerv'd me with ſo great Aſſiduity, and with Marks of ſo true and ſo reſpectful a Paſſion, that all that the moſt ardent and moſt skilful Lovers ever practiſed to make themſelves be lov'd, muſt yield to the proofs I receiv'd of his Affection; he comply'd ſo perfectly with my Deſires, and reſign'd himſelf ſo abſolutely to my Inclinations, that he ſeem'd to be inſpir'd only by my Thoughts, or rather to be enliven'd only by my Soul; and indeed he made as fair a Progreſs in his purpoſe as he could have wiſh'd; and I am oblig'd to confeſs to you, that never Man ſucceeded better than he in the Deſign of making himſelf belov'd by a Perſon of my Humour and Condition.

It is true that I lov'd him, but with ſo ſtrong and ſo real an Affection, that it hardly was Inferior to his. All the World approv'd it, and all thoſe that knew of it

thought

thought it so well grounded, that it never was condemn'd but by *Neoptolemus* alone; that Prince indeed, inrag'd that *Agis* was preferr'd before him, murmur'd publickly at it, and left nothing unattempted to cross our Affairs; he made use of a thousand Inventions to cause Dissention between us, and so exasperated *Agis*, that if I had not expresly forbidden him, he would without doubt have punish'd him for the Plots he contriv'd against him: What, Sir? (*said he one Day to my Father*) do you imagine that the Alliance of the King of *Sparta* can be advantageous to you, of a King of one City, and of a City whose Sovereigns are Slaves? Are you blinded with a little Valour, and a little handsomness in his Person? And will your Condition be e're the better for having a handsom Son-in-Law in *Greece*? If he have done any Service to this State, does it belong to you to recompence him? And is there not a King of *Epirus* who is wholly oblig'd to him for it? If the King your Brother, to whom I have the Honour to be nearly ally'd, were here, do you think he would prefer this petty Prince of *Greece* before a Prince of the Blood of *Achilles*, as he himself is; before a Prince whose Birth, whose Person and whose Fidelity are known to him? He used many Discourses of this Nature, which my Father pardon'd in regard of his Passion, and of his Birth, but which wrought no effect at all upon him. One Day he was in my Chamber, where he had talk'd a great while to me upon that Subject, whereby he got but little Satisfaction, when *Agis* came in, but *Neoptolemus*, who could not endure his Presence, went out without giving him any salute, and before he departed, casting a furious Look at me, I leave the Place to the more fortunate, said he aloud; rather to the more worthy, answered *Agis* briskly. *Neoptolemus* stung with that Reply, was going to return Words which would have incensed them more, if I had not prevented it by expresly injoining them Silence; and that very Day my Father having been advertised of it, prest them with so earnest Entreaties to pass their Words to him, that neither of them could refuse to promise he would be quiet.

In short, *Agis* had obtain'd what he demanded, and having won my Heart according to his Desire, expected

nothing for the Consummation of his Love, but the return of a Man whom *Æacidas*, oblig'd to that Respect by all manner of Reason, had sent to the King his Brother to demand his Permission for our Marriage; but while they were in this Expectation, and that I liv'd with my dear *Agis* as a Person who was upon the point of giving her self wholly to him, his Fortune suffer'd a very strange Revolution; News came, and but too true for our Repose, that King *Alexander* my Uncle, after having made such a Progress in *Italy* as promis'd him the total Conquest of it, was defeated in the Country of the *Brusians*, and slain upon the Place, with the greatest part of his Forces.

All *Epirus* was most sensibly concern'd in the Loss of that King, who was a Man of admirable Parts, and of a boundless Courage; but *Æacidas* was comforted by the Crown, which by that Death was set upon his Head. *Alexander* had no Issue, and there was no Body in *Epirus* that could dispute the Succession with my Father; neither was it disputed, but with a general Consent he was crown'd in our capital City; and of a Prince's Daughter which I was before, I became a King's, and the probable Inheritrix of the Crown.

The Gods are my Witnesses, that all the Joy I felt at that Augmentation of my Fortune was absolutely in regard of *Agis*, and that I had no other Satisfaction in seeing my self exalted, than that I was more worthy of his Affection, and in a Condition one Day to add another Crown to his, if the Gods sent not *Æacidas* a Son. *Agis* look'd upon this Alteration of my Fortune with great Equanimity, and never shew'd himself concern'd in it but for my sake. Many Days were spent as well in the Obsequies of the deceased King, as in the Crowning of my Father; and during that time, *Agis* continued in his usual Estate, without labouring for the Advancement of that Happiness he pretended to by my Possession: But when he had allow'd the time that was necessary for the Funeral Pomps, for the change of the Soveraign, and for those Affairs that happen at a new coming to the Crown, he then began to think of himself, and demanded of the King my Father, the utmost Testimonies of his good

Will,

Will, and the accompliſhment of his Promiſe; he hoped that the King would receive his Propoſition with the ſame Affection he had expreſſed ever ſince his arrival, and ever ſince his Declaration, but he found him colder than ordinary, and he fell into no little Aſtoniſhment when he heard the King demanded him a Month's Delay, alledging ſome poor Excuſes to cover the Alteration of his Humour.

In effect, it was chang'd with the Change of his Condition, and not conſidering that Ingratitude is the blackeſt of all Vices, and the moſt unworthy of a Prince, he had given ear to *Neoptolemus*, and a pack of other Flatters, to the prejudice of his Word, and of what he ow'd to the Services of valiant *Agis*. Theſe wicked People had with Succeſs perſwaded him, that the King of *Sparta* was a good Match indeed for the Daughter of Prince *Æacidas*, but not for the Daughter of the King of *Epirus*, and the probable Heireſs of the Kingdom; that in truth his Quality was equal to ours, but that great heed was to be taken of contracting an Alliance which ſubmitted *Epirus* to the Juriſdiction of *Sparta*, and to the Tyranny of its *Ephori*; that it was the greateſt Misfortune could befal that State, and that of Free-men which they were, or only Subjects to their lawful Sovereigns, the *Epirots* would become Slaves to that *Grecian* People, whoſe Yoke was inſupportable to all Nations; that they ſhould loſe all their Privileges, and all their Wealth, and ſhould betroth themſelves to the Condition of certain Peopls ſubject to the *Athenians*, who drained of their Money, and of their Forces, were even deprived alſo of their Liberty, and employed in nothing elſe amongſt them but baſe and ſervile Uſes; they alledged many other Arguments which altogether wrought their Effect upon the Mind of weak unthankful *Æacidas*. By the Coldneſs of his Anſwer, *Agis* had ſome Apprehenſion of his Misfortune, but he did not abſolutely believe it, and could not at firſt imagine, that a King ſhould be capable of Baſeneſs and Ingratitude, which Titles he might juſtly give to my Father's Change; and I offend not the Reſpect I bear him, in repeating the very Terms of that poor unhappy Prince; He came to me with a Countenance in which his Grief

was naturally repreſented, and imprinting part of his Sadneſs in my Heart at his very coming in, made me preſage a part of our Misfortunes. *What do you ail* (ſaid I) *my deareſt* Agis, *and with what Diſquiets will you afflict me?* *I am tormented* (anſwered he) *with a mortal Apprehenſion, and if my Suſpicions are true, I am upon the very brink of Ruin.* Theſe Words pierc'd me to the quick, and made me preſs him to let me know the Cauſe of them.

He with extraordinary Agitations of Mind told me the Conference he had newly had with my Father, which recital gave me Thoughts but little different from his, and brought many Particulars into my Head whereby I might have obſerved a Coldneſs in my Father towards him: the Reflection I made upon them began to trouble me exceedingly, and the knowledge I had of the King's Humour ſtruck me into a very ominous Fear; yet did I ſtrive to conceal it from him, and diſſembling my Opinion as well as poſſibly I could, I endeavour'd to abate his Sorrows with ſome Conſolation. Fear not, dear *Agis*, (ſaid I) fear not a Change which cannot enter into a Prince's Heart, and believe that the King my Father asked you this Delay, and received your Diſcourſe more ſeriouſly than he was wont, only to render that Formality to his new Honour; there is no likelihood he ſhould forget what he owes to you, and that he ſhould loſe the Remembrance of thoſe Commands he has given me to love you; ſuch a Lightneſs would be too odious, and of too ill an Example, to ſuffer me to believe he can be capable of it, nor can I have any ſuch Apprehenſion, without receiving moſt expreſs Teſtimonies thereof. I ſaid many other Things, to which he lent ſufficient Attention, but they were not able to withdraw him from his Sadneſs; I eaſily found it, when looking upon me with Eyes that had ſomewhat a fatal Aſpect, Madam, (ſaid he) I am undone, and this beginning of my Miſery ſuits ſo directly with ſome ſcurvy Dreams, and other ill-boding Preſages which of late have diſquieted me, that I cannot recover the Frights they have put me in; Fortune has hitherto uſed me but too favourably, and ſuch a ſtrange unſhaken courſe of Proſperities threatned me with an infallible De-

Deſtruction. Well, (continued he a while after) I muſt loſe *Deidamia*, but if I loſe her, I'll loſe my Life at the ſame time, and perhaps will accompany it with ſo many others, that that Loſs ſhall be made known thro' all parts of *Europe*. He brought forth theſe Words with Marks of ſuch a violent Grief, that I was touched with it to the very Heart, and being willing to let him ſee how much I was concerned in his Affliction; If you loſe *Deidamia* (ſaid I) no other Man ſhall ever have the Advantage to have taken her from you, and I proteſt by all that we account moſt holy and ſacred, that ſo long as *Agis* loves me, I never can be capable of a ſecond Affection. If it be ſo, (replied *Agis*) I'll out brave all the Obſtacles that threaten me, and all the Powers of the World are not able to do me any harm while *Deidamia* is on my ſide. But, Madam, remember the Promiſe you make me, and believe, that in the Extremity I ſhall demand extream Proofs of your Affection. I was going to anſwer, when our Converſation was interrupted by certain Ladies who came to viſit me. We had many other Diſcourſes upon that ſubject, and in the mean time, *Agis* every Day found new Confirmations of his Fears in the King's Countenance; I was little leſs afflicted at it than he, but I diſſembled part of my Sadneſs, that I might not redouble his. We continued many Days in an Uncertainty, full of Apprehenſion, but at laſt our Misfortune was but too plainly diſcovered to me, and the King being one Day come into my Chamber, took me alone with him into my Cloſet, where he ſpoke to me on this manner; *Deidamia*, when I commanded you to love the King of the *Lacedemonians*, I was obliged to do ſo by many Conſiderations, which rendred that Alliance advantageous to us; and truly our Obligations to that Prince, and the good Qualities of his Perſon diſpoſed me towards it with Joy; but our Condition is changed, and we had not then more Reaſons to approve that Match, than we have now to diſapprove it. In ſhort, for many Cauſes which are above your Age and Knowledge, and wherein my whole Kingdom is concerned, *Agis* cannot be your Husband, and you ought betimes to withdraw your ſelf from that Affection you bear him, to diſpoſe of

it

it, in favour of ſome other, whom the Maxims of State ſhall make Choice of for you. You know that the Daughters of Soveraign Princes marry for other Conſiderations than thoſe of Love, and you alſo know too well what Reſignation you owe your Father, to make any Difficulty of being guided by his Will. I was half dead before the King had ended this Diſcourſe, and he eaſily ſaw by my Face into what Perplexity I was reduced; I had neither Strength to ſpeak, nor Confidence to look upon him, and he had ſo much Patience as to wait till I was reſettled, that he might receive my Anſwer: but when he had vainly continued a long time in that Expectation, and ſaw me ſtill keep a Silence full of Trouble and Confuſion; Speak, *Deidamia*, (purſued he) and give me ſome Aſſurance of your Intention to obey me without Repugnance.

I was ſo ſtruck and caſt down, that I knew not which way I ſhould be able to reply; yet did I uſe my utmoſt Endeavours to recover a little Courage, and recollecting my Spirits to explain my ſelf, Sir, (ſaid I) what Qualities ſoever there are in the Perſon of the King of the *Lacedemonians*, and what Service ſoever he has done this State, I had not loved him if you had not enjoined me; nor ſhould I have licenced my ſelf to an Affection, which your Command alone can authorize; 'Twas out of Obedience only that I caſt my Eyes on the Good-will he bore me, and I have ſo religiouſly obſerved it, that your Majeſty could not deſire more Acknowledgment from me, nor more Affection to our Deliverer, than I have really given him: 'Tis true, Sir, that I have loved him, and I loved him ſtill by your Orders by a moſt powerful Inclination, and by a juſt Knowledge both of his Worth, and of what he has done for us; but my Reſignation to your Will has rooted theſe Thoughts too deeply in my Heart to be ever able to pluck them thence; and I was too ready to comply with your Deſires; to love *Agis* with a light Affection, or with ſuch a one as can be taken off, and placed upon another; that is a thing, Sir, whereof I feel my ſelf no way capable; and if in this Declaration your Majeſty find any matter of Complaint againſt your Daughter, be pleaſed to conſider, 'tis but

for

having been too obedient that I now am disobedie
he King hearkened impatiently to this Reply, and
ceeding ill satisfied with it, yet since he had not dou
but he should meet with some difficulty in my Mi
id that he found a great deal of Reason in my Wo
would not fall into Passion, but contented him
ith saying, What, *Deidamia*, will you persist t
whether I will or no in an Affection which is Disadv
geous to you, and which I disapprove? My Affect
Agis (answered I) shall never make me do any th
hat can bring you Shame, or that can justly give
orrow, but it shall always be strong enough to keep
rom forgetting him, and from giving that to another wh
he has so well deserved, and which he holds only fr
your self. You shall have a little Time (replied
King) to perswade your self to follow my Comman
in which interim, see that you resolve to do so, and
me find no more Resistance in you, upon pain of a
pleasure which would not be to your Advantage.
King, after these bitter Words, staid not for an Answ
but going out of my Closet, left me in the saddest C
dition I had ever been in all my Life. I loved *Agis*
deed equally to my self, and this unjust forbidding
to love him appear'd so cruel to me, and so tyranr
that it left me neither Sense nor Words, but to accus
King of Injustice and of Ingratitude. My Tears ler
a great Relief in that Occasion, and 'twas by them
gan to complain of the Violence that was used upon
two of my Maids, to whom I trusted my most
Thoughts, and which are these you now see wit
kept me Company in that sad Employment, and w
was the most deeply buried in it, unfortunate *Agis*
into my Chamber; The Entrance of it was alway
to him, and notwithstanding the severe Resolutic
was taken against him, they still remembered b
Quality, and what he had done for *Epirus*, and th
in Appearance he received the same Usage he wa
to have. As soon as ever I saw him, my Grie
sensibly redoubled, and I could not hinder my se
sending forth a Cry, wherein he instantly found t
Confirmation of his Suspicions; he made a stop

Chamber Door, with his Arms acroſs, and ſeeing me all in Tears upon my Bed, and theſe two Maids buſied in comforting me; he was like to have loſt both his Strength and his Underſtanding, and all he could do in that Condition, was to lean againſt the Wall to keep him up, and caſt Looks at me in that ſorrowful Poſture, which made me almoſt die with Grief, and with Compaſſion. Well, Madam, (cried he, after a long Silence) is it certain then that I am ruined? I had not the Power to anſwer him at firſt, but when he had repeated theſe Words two or three ſeveral Times; It is true; (ſaid I) my deareſt *Agis*, I am forbidden to love you; but 'tis alſo true, that 'tis impoſſible for me to obey that Command. If you hold that Reſolution (replied *Agis*) my Fortune is not deſperate, but if you forſake me with your Friends, there is no kind of Death ſo dreadful but is to be preferred before my Condition, and wherewith I would not ſacrifice a Life, which I will not keep one Moment after the loſs of my Hopes. I am moſt firmly reſolved (anſwered I) to love no other Man in the World but *Agis*, and if I be taken from him, they ſhall never give me any thing but my Grave. *Agis* found ſome conſolation in this Diſcourſe, and recovering a little Confidence by the hopes I gave him, he drew nearer, and beſought me trembling to tell him the laſt Confirmations I had received of his Misfortune. I related all that the King had ſaid, with great Expreſſions of Sorrow, and thereby put him into the Condition that would have touch'd his moſt implacable Enemies with Pity; that great Courage which was wont to lead him on in Fight abandoned him for ſome Moments in this Encounter, and ſcarce had he enough remaining to keep him from ſinking under the weight of his Affliction; out of theſe Faintings he fell into ſuch a Rage, as I never had believed him capable of, and which nothing but his Paſſion alone could be able to excuſe. After he had vented all that the impetuouſneſs of his firſt motions put into his Mouth, What, (*continued he*) ſhall it be true then that the Word of a Prince ſhall be unworthily revoked, and that my Services ſhall be ſo ungratefully requited? Will not this State which I have ſaved from manifeſt Ruin, cry loudly againſt the Injuſtice that is done me, and will

not

not the Gods themſelves, who are concerned in the Juſtice of my Quarrel, take my part againſt perjured and unthankful *Æacidas*? Will he then ſo lightly forget by what Actions I had merited the Hopes he gave me? Or if he can remember out of what Extremities I have freed him, will he prefer the Vice-roy of *Macedon's* Son before me? Theſe laſt Words made me interrupt him, to ask what preferring that was he ſpoke of about the Vice-roy of *Macedon:* Yes, Madam, (anſwered he) 'tis to *Caſſander* the Son of *Antipater* that you are deſtin'd; and I have newly learnt that 'tis by his Alliance your Father intends to ſecure himſelf againſt *Antipater*'s Practices, and to unite himſelf with him, who under the Authority of *Alexander* had made himſelf potent and conſiderable in *Greece.* That Man who is not born a Prince, and who draws all his luſtre but from the Glory of another, robs me of *Deidamia*; and the King your Father, out of ſome unequitable Reaſons of State, prefers a particular Man, a Man whom he knows not, and a Man who ever was his Enemy, before a King, who ſo liberally has expoſed his Life to ſerve him. But let him look for no Succeſs of ſo wrongful a Deſign, and let him believe, that the Gods have not inſpired him with it in Favour of *Caſſander*, but for *Caſſander*'s Deſtruction.

I'll kill him, that unjuſt Uſurper of my Happineſs, I'll kill him in the very Arms of *Antipater*; and though *Alexander* himſelf ſhould come in his Defence, *Agis* deſpiſes his own Life enough to ſacrifice many other to his lawful Reſentment. He ſaid divers other Words tranſported with an exceſſive Fury, but when his firſt Violence was a little over, Dear *Agis*, (ſaid I) if the firmneſs of my Affection to you can give you any Hope or Conſolation, be certain, that neither *Caſſander*, nor any other Man in the World, ſhall ever be preferr'd before you by *Deidamia*, and that if ſhe cannot be yours, ſhe never will be any Body's; perhaps our Affairs are not ſo deſperate as we believe them, and if you put the King in Mind of what he owes unto his Promiſe, and of what he owes to the Actions you have done for us, I do not think he will have the Confidence to perſiſt in his unworthy Reſolutions. I'll go and make that Trial, (replied the afflicted Prince)

Prince) but, O Gods, with how little Hope is it, and with how little Succeſs (without doubt) will it be! At theſe Words he went out of the Chamber, being reſolved to go to the King to know his laſt Determination from his own Mouth; the time he had demanded to give his Anſwer was already expired, and that poor Prince had not the Patience to defer it any longer; he ran directly to the King whom he found in his withdrawing Room, with certain Princes, and other Perſons that were conſiderable in *Epirus*. Being blinded with his Paſſion, he could not diſſemble his Thoughts before that Company, but having deſired the King to grant him a particular Audience, he ſtept to him with a troubled Countenance, yet ſtriving to keep his ill Humour from breaking out, he endeavour'd to compoſe himſelf to a moderation whereof he was not capable, and having by the manner of his coming in, and by his Action, ſuſpended all that were preſent, *Sir*, (ſaid he to the King) *if your Majeſty's Promiſes had not been Publick, and if the Alliance wherewith you intend to Honour me were not known to this whole Kingdom, I would not have demanded the Accompliſhment of them in ſo great a Company, nor ſtrive in this Place to cure my ſelf of the diſquiets that Torment me. I do not doubt, Sir, but that you obſerve ſome Trouble in my Face, and I have not cunning enough to diſſemble Thoughts, that are of the Nature of mine, but yet I know the King of* Epirus *well enough, not to let my Mind yield to the Impreſſion which they would give me of my Misfortune; I know that he is of too Illuſtrious Blood to violate his Word, and that he has too royal and too grateful a Heart to forget my Services? How unworthy ſoever I am of the Poſſeſſion of* Deidamia, *your Majeſty has loudly and ſolemnly promiſed it me, and I ſhould think I did you a mortal Injury, if I could believe what they would perſuade me to the prejudice of your Word, which I account inviolable between ſuch Princes as the King of* Epirus *and the King of the* Lacedemonians. King *Agis* held his Peace after he had ſaid thus, and the whole Company kept a quiet Silence to hearken to *Æacidas's* Anſwer, who when he had bethought himſelf a while, gave it in theſe Terms; I do not deny, Sir, but that Prince *Æacidas* highly oblig'd both for *Epirus*, and for his particular conſideration, to the valiant King

the *Lacedemonians*, approv'd of his Affection to his ighter, and desired his Alliance as much as Gratitude . the Merit of that Prince could oblige him to do. is Truth is known through all *Epirus*, but you are not orant also of the Revolution which hath happen'd in Royal Family, and you know well enough, that the nsiderations of a whole State ought without Question be valued above any particular ones. The Gods are Witnesses, that if my Inclinations were followed, *idamia* should never be match'd to any Body but the liant King of *Sparta*, and that I would prefer his Alli- ce before that of all the greatest Monarchs upon Earth;), I have not lost the remembrance of the gallant Acti- s he did in favour of us, nor have I lost the Knowledge the admirable Qualities of his Person. But my whole ate opposes my Intention, and the *Epirots*, whose Crown yet belongs in Reversion to *Deidamia*, cannot resolve bear the Yoke of the *Lacedemonians*: They are frighted ith the Example of many Nations, who are become aves unto the *Greeks*, and they protest aloud, that they ill not exchange their free Condition for Servitude. I ould it pleased the Gods, that either I had more Liber- to dispose of my Family, or that you could find such ecompence amongst us, as might acquit part of our Ob- gations to you; dispose of our Estates which you have scued out of the Rebels Hands, dispose of this Kingdom hich you have delivered, and which by your Valour ou have acquired unto your self; but leave the disposing f *Deidamia* to the *Epirots*, since it cannot be taken from hem; they will needs sacrifice her to their Security, and he is not happy enough to pretend to the Fortune which had destin'd her, and whereof I was as desirous as your elf could be. *Agis* had hardly Patience to hear all this, nd interrupting the King who would have spoken more, What, Sir, (*said he*) is it true then that I shall not have *Deidamia*? And will you pay the real Services I have done you, with a few false Reasons, invented by those that envy me? Can you excuse the violation of your Word by the change of your Condition, and have you re- ceiv'd any Dignity by becoming King of *Epirus*, which was not already in the Person of the King of *Sparta*? Is this

this State, whose will you alledge, so ingrateful as to forget that I have sav'd it? And are not these *Epirots*, which would rob me of *Deidamia*, the same whose Blood I spared by shedding of mine own, and who yet upon their Fields may see so many Marks of what I have done to buy their Safety? If they fear the domination of *Sparta*, I freely quit all those Pretensions the marrying of *Deidamia* might give me to this Crown, and provided I may have her, let them make whom they will King of *Epirus*, and dispose of their Monarchy according to their own desires.

'Tis not by this Kingdom you offer me, that the loss of *Deidamia* can be recompensed: I too much despise the Authority over a rebellious unthankful People; and if I have a desire to inlarge my Territories, I wear a Sword well known to the *Epirots*, a Sword which has defended their Country well enough, to make them see 'tis capable to Conquer others; yea it can give me greater Empires than that of my fore Fathers, but it can much more easily preserve what it has lawfully acquired me; 'tis by it in part that I pretend to *Deidamia*, and 'tis with it I will defend my Right even to my latest Breath, and that with Rivers of Blood, I will dispute it against those that would take her from me.

Agis pronounced these Words with a Tone that struck Terror into many of the By-standers, the King was extreamly nettled with them, and his Anger appear'd in the alterations of his Countenance, but knowing there was a great deal of Reason in what he said, and feeling some remorse of his Ingratitude, he kept his Thoughts from breaking forth, and only answered with a very serious Face, *They that take* Deidamia *from you are not in a Condition to fear your Threatnings, nor would be of an Humour to suffer them from any other but their valiant Defender; he may freely make use of these Privileges, which so many worthy Actions, and so many fresh Engagements have given him amongst us; and instead of returning his menaces in a Place where I might have some Power to do it, I'll confess there was a great deal of Justice in his Reproaches, if the Injury I do him were a voluntary Action; the contempt you shew of this our Kingdom is an effect of Generosity, which would not excuse*

cuse the Epirots *from the Yoke they fear, and in what manner soever you renounce this Crown, after the Death of* Æacidas, Deidamia's *Right to it were not to be disputed.*

Believe it, Sir, 'tis with a most sensible Grief I declare this *Truth, and this hard necessity of my Condition; that I might be in one to content you. I could wish this Crown were yet upon the Head of another Sovereign, and if for your Satisfaction you desire only what absolutely depends on me, I shall think nothing difficult to testify how great a Sense I have of the General, and of my particular Obligations. O Gods!* (cried out transported *Agis*) *Gods that are Enemies to Injustice and Oppression! Gods that are Revengers of Perjury! Gods that are Protectors of the Persons of Kings! Can you suffer this high Abuse without darting your Thunders upon forsworn ingrateful Heads? And you,* Æacidas, *can you recal to Mind the Condition out of which I freed you, and not die with very Shame and Confusion? These Traitors to whose Counsels you give Ear, to the Prejudice of your Faith, and of your Honour; those base Men, whose Advice you prefer before the Safety of unfortunate* Agis, *did they ever rescue you from such Extremities as those you were reduced to when I came to your Relief? Nay, rather, are not they themselves indebted to me for that shameful Life which I preserved for the Destruction of mine own? Was it from* Antipater, *and his Son you received that Assistance? And is the Price of my Services which you deprive me of, due to the Injuries which they have done?*

The King, who did not think his Design of an Alliance with *Antipater* had been known to *Agis*, appear'd much astonished at this Discourse; but as he had prepar'd himself against all the events he was probably to look for from his Change, he recollected himself presently, and replied without falling into Passion; I will never prefer *Antipater*, *Cassander*, or any other Prince in *Europe*, before your self; but if my Kingdom has Designs for its own Quietness, and for the Establishment of that Tranquility it desires, I know not how to oppose them without making my self unworthy of the Crown they have set upon my Head, nor without making a People, most inclinable to revolt, take Arms once more against me. *Let 'em rather take Arms* (interrupted furious *Agis*) *for their own Defence, against an Enemy which they cannot, and which they ought*

ought not to despise; and since they undervalue me for Cassander, *a private Man and a Man whose Name and Family are unknown, but by their perfidiousness, and by the Glory of their Master, let 'em take Arms for his Relief, as I have taken Arms for theirs. That audacious Fellow shall not quietly enjoy what he unjustly would ravish from me: and since neither Compassion of an unfortunate Lover, whom your Ingratitude precipitates into utter Despair, nor the remembrance of this Crown, which is the cause of all my Misfortunes, and which you owe to none but me; nor the consideration of Honour which is interested in the violation of your Word, can dissuade you from the cruel Resolution you have taken against me, Remember, King of* Epirus, *remember that I shall be able to do as much for my own Quarrel, as I have done already for yours, and that this unjust* Cassander *shall either sink under my lawful Indignation, or make* Agis *fall with the better part of* Greece. *That's the first Expedition I'll prepare for, and if the Gods grant me the Success which is due to the justice of my Cause, you shall quickly see those Arms,* Æacidas, *glittering in* Epirus, *in a hostile manner, which once you look'd upon with so much Joy, when they came to bring you Safety; they know already how to conquer the* Epirots, *and shall overflow their Fields with that same Blood, which heretofore they unluckily have preserved.* At these Words, the King could no longer contain himself within the limits of Moderation, and seeing all those that stood about him murmur at *Agis*'s Declaration; *Hitherto* (said he) *in regard of your Resentment, and in remembrance of what you have done for us, I have passed by all your Provocations; but since you openly declare War against me, I accept it, and charge you within three Days to depart this Country, where you cannot be look'd upon as other than an Enemy.* *'Tis as an Enemy,* (replied *Agis* hastily) *'tis as an Enemy you shall see me return into't, and all the most cruel and most horrible Effects that Fire and Sword can bring along with them, shall be the sure Rewards of Perjury and Ingratitude.*

These Words were not well over-heard by the King, who already was retiring another way, and furious *Agis* going out of the Room at the same time, took his way directly towards his Lodging.

The

The Noiſe of this Diſorder was immediately ſpread through the whole Court, and there was no other talk in all *Ambracia*, but of this unexpected Change, and of the Events it might produce. Opinions were divided, and if thoſe that were concern'd, found, or endeavoured to make others find Reaſon in the King's proceeding, they that judg'd of it without Paſſion or Intereſt, condemn'd him of a high Ingratitude; but the number of the baſe minded Men, and Flatters, was greater than that of generous Perſons, and the ſame *Agis*, who a few Days before was followed and adored by the whole Court, ſaw himſelf generally forſaken, forſaken in a moment, and attended only by thoſe he had brought out of his Country. When this News was told me, I was like inſtantly to have died for Grief, and though the Queen my Mothey labour'd to give me ſome Conſolation, and to cover the King's Action with ſome Pretences, I found nothing in her Diſcourſes but new Occaſions of Afflictions: *Let not the King hope,* (ſaid I) *no, let him never hope, that my Heart can be chang'd, and ſince he would needs have me love King* Agis, *let him prepare himſelf to ſee me love him in the Grave; an Affection, which ſuch expreſs Commands, ſuch important Obligations, and ſuch admirable Qualities have kindled, is not ſo eaſily to be quench'd, and the King my Father ought not to think it ſtrange, though I owe my Life to him, that my Soul nevertheleſs is different from his. I muſt love* Agis, *Madam, for ever, and although I have Power enough over that Paſſion, to keep it within the Limits which my Birth hath preſcribed, it will have Power enough over me, to make my Heart incapable of a ſecond. Ah! my dear* Agis, *rather let Death, accompanied with the moſt rigorous Tortures, ſeparate me from thee for ever, than that I ſhould afford room to a Succeſſor in this Heart, which never was, nor ever ſhall be any Body's but thine.* I accompanied theſe Words with ſuch a flood of Tears, that the Queen was deeply touch'd with them; ſhe eſteem'd *Agis* infinitely, and did no way approve my Father's Maxims; but he govern'd not his Affairs by her Advice, and ſhe was much too weak to oppoſe his Determinations. I paſſed the reſt of that Day, and all the Night in ſighs, in ſobs, and in half deſperate Actions, and the next Morning

ing my poor *Agis* being resolv'd to go away that very Day, came to receive his last Farewel of me. The King, who could neither forbear to consider him, nor think upon him without Remorse, denied him not that small Satisfaction; and his entrance into my Chamber was as freely permitted as before.

He came in with a Countenance, which had almost nothing of his wonted Features, and whose Looks had something so fatal in them, that Death appear'd there most naturally painted; and I beheld him with Eyes, which sufficiently testified the Part I bore in his Misfortunes. For a long time he was not able to get out one Word, and for a long time I also was in no Condition to begin that sad Entertainment. Our Eyes talk'd a great while for us, and when fainting *Agis* thought himself strong enough, to help them to express his Mind, after having begun with many Sighs; *Madam*, (said he) *behold this disgrac'd, behold this banish'd Man, behold this Enemy of* Epirus, *and he who in this Court has appear'd with such a Lustre, and with so high a Fortune, departs now from it without any other Consolation, than that of being able to take his Leave of you: 'tis the only Favour that's not refused me, and 'tis in it alone I have established my latest Hopes; you are too generous, my fair Princess, to square your Thoughts by those of the King your Father, and though I be hated by your Friends, I hope that you will not consider me as the Enemy of your House. I consider you,* (said I, interrupting him) *and will consider you all my life, as that which I love most dearly in this World; and as that only which I can, and will love in it. The Gods be praised* (replied *Agis*, lifting up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven) *since my Princess is not chang'd, neither my Fortune; and since she still will love me, I out-brave the tyrannical Power of a Father, and all the Oppositions of unthankful* Epirus. *Well then, my Princess, if you love me; if you love me*——said he again within a little after, and made a stop at these Words, as not having the Confidence to proceed. I perceived his inward Disturbance, and being willing to ease him in it; *Yes* Agis, (added I) *I love you, and I will give all the Proofs you can demand of my Affection. If it be so,* (replied he) *I no longer have any Reason to complain of my Destiny; but dearest Princess, how*

extreamly

extreamly do I fear you'll change your Resolution, and how I tremble at the Proposition I am going to make you? In a less Extremity I should not have a tempted it, but since 'tis the only means of Safety I now have left, I must of Necessity follow it, and beg Proofs of your Affection which are above my Services, and above the Merit of my Person, but may peradventure be due unto my Passion, and to the Promise you have made me. Since the King opposes my Fortune, or rather since he opposes my Life, be pleased, fair Princess, that I may hold it from your self alone, and that I may live only by you, since I cannot live but for you. If the King refuse me Deidamia, *let me receive her from* Deidamia *her self, and to follow the Fortune of a Prince that adores her, let her fly from a Prince that would sacrifice her to the Capricio's of his State. Your Condition shall not be so miserable at* Sparta, *that you should need to bewail your leaving this unthankful Country, and as much forsaken as I am, I want not means to carry you from hence, if you will have the Goodness to quit it for me.* *Agis* would have gone on with his Perswasions, but I would not suffer him to prosecute his Discourse; I found matter enough in it of Offence to me, but I lov'd him enough, and was enough oblig'd to him, to pardon it as an Effect of his Passion, and to content my self with refusing his Demand, without being angry with him for it. 'Tis enough, (said I) my dearest *Agis*, 'tis enough, and I am exceedingly afflicted, that you have desired no Proofs of my Affection, but such as neither are fit for me to grant, nor you to ask.

Would it had pleased the Gods, you had rather demanded the better part of my Blood, or that you had desired my Life it self, and they are my Witnesses, I would have given you them without any trouble; but to perswade me to Faults so unworthy of a Princess, and so contrary to my Duty, and to my Reputation; Ah! dearest *Agis*! if you lov'd me, could you suffer such a Thought? I make you Judge your self of the Unfitness of your Demand, and I conjure you to tell me truly, if your self could approve the thing you counsel me.

What

What will you then do for me? (cried that afflicted Prince) and what Fruit can I expect from that Affection, wherewith you would have me flatter my self in my Misfortune? What Proofs then shall those be you offer me of it? and in this last Extremity, what Advantage can I draw from your lateſt Promiſes? All that you can hope for (replied I) from a Princeſs that loves you, but from a virtuous Princeſs, and one who like your ſelf, would prefer Death before any mean unworthy Action. I will teſtify my Affection to you, by preſerving it to my very grave; I for your ſake will diſobey the King my Father, if he ſhall command me to forget you; I'll diſobey him if he ſhall oblige me to a ſecond Affection, for in the Obedience I owe him, I know no Rules that can compel the Inclination: but if he ſhould forbid me to marry you, or if he ſhould forbid me to ſee you, I cannot perſiſt in that Deſign without doing an irreparable Injury to my Reputation. What Injury ſhall you do it (ſaid *Agis*) by following a Husband of a Quality equal to your own, and a Husband whom you lov'd only by the Injunction of your Friends? When I ſhall receive him from them (anſwered I) I'll follow his Fortune to the utmoſt part of the World, and will prefer the Poſſeſſion of him before that of the whole Earth together; but to take him, or go along with him without their Conſent, is that I cannot do without making my ſelf unworthy both of my Birth, and of your Eſteem, and 'tis in ſhort, a thing, which if you love me, you ought not to propound. If this ſlight offend you, (replied he) ſuffer me at leaſt to return arm'd into *Epirus* to demand the accompliſhment of the King your Father's Word, and to labour with my Sword for my Satisfaction, or for my Revenge; and that in brief I may ſtrive to win you by thoſe Arms to whoſe Succeſs you formerly were granted; perhaps by their means, Events may come to alter Reſolutions, and when the *Epirots* ſhall ſee the Deſolation of their Country, and that the King your Father ſhall be reduced to ſuch Extremities, as thoſe I ſaw him in before, they both may recede from thoſe proud ingrateful Thoughts, which Proſperity has given them; I for ſuch gallant Pretenſions, will arm all the Men of Courage that *Greece* contains, and at the

the Head of them the *Epirots* ſhall ſee an invincible Enemy, and an Enemy, who will requite their Breach of Faith, with an univerſal Ruin and Deſolution.

Agis made a ſtop when he had ſaid theſe Words, and ſeeing he waited for my Anſwer; I hate *Epirus* enough (ſaid I) to behold the Miſeries of it without Sorrow, and my want of Power may have left me too little Credit with you to diſſwade your Reſolutions; but I am too much obliged to tell you, that no Senſe of Virtue, nor Rule of Decency, will ſuffer me to love a Man in Arms againſt my Country, or to offer any Prayers in favour of him. Not that I will oppoſe your Indignation, nor that in the Condition our Affairs now ſtand, I would ſtill keep a tyrannical Power over you, which might hinder you from following its Incitements; do whatſoever your Paſſion ſhall think beſt for us; but remember that *Æacidas*, as ungrateful as he is, is yet my Father, and that all the Laws of Duty forbid his Daughter to love his Enemy.

The Prince loſt Patience at this Diſcourſe, and looking upon me with Eyes as full of Anger as of Love; What, and you too Madam, (cried he) have you alſo forſaken me? Ah! this is my utmoſt Misfortune, this is the higheſt point of my Affliction, without which I could not have accounted my ſelf miſerable; but ſince *Deidamia* holds Intelligence with her Father to deſtroy me, *Deidamia* ſhall infallibly be ſatisfied; no, Madam, I will no longer preſerve any Reſentment againſt *Æacidas*, and ſince in his Uſage toward me, he follows but your Inclinations, I will no more accuſe him of Ingratitude; let him die, this unfortunate *Agis*, who has not been able to merit your Affections, and that he may die with the greater Innocence, let him die without uſing any Reproaches againſt you. Theſe, (*replied I, being touch'd with thoſe Words to the very Heart*) theſe are the moſt cruel, and the moſt bloody ones you can invent, and if you really ſuſpect me of that Baſeneſs you upbraid me with, you are more ingrateful your ſelf, than thoſe whom you complain of. I love you but too well for my Repoſe, and too well for my Duty, and I give you not ſo ſlight a Mark of it as you believe, in openly reſiſting the Pleaſure of my Father, and of my King, and in paſſing, for your ſake, the

Bounds which Modeſty and Obedience preſcribe me. Let it ſuffice you, that you ſhall never ſee another Man in the place I have given you, and that if the King my Father will not ſuffer me to be yours, you ſhall have this Conſolation to know I will never be another's. Content your ſelf with this Aſſurance, if you can, ſince 'tis impoſſible for me to do more, and that I may proteſt to you, by all the things that are moſt ſacred, our Misfortunes are equal, and my Grief is not at all inferior to your own.

Ah! vain and light Conſolation! (*cried the Prince, quite tranſported*) Ah! falſe Hopes! ah! deceitful Appearances, how unworthily have you betrayed me! Well, Madam, (purſued he, caſting himſelf at my Feet, and waſhing them with a ſtream of Tears) ſince neither the remembrance of your Promiſes, nor the deplorable Condition in which you ſee me, are able to mollify you, and that you neglect the Conſervation of my Life, out of light Conſiderations, which ſerve only for a Pretence to cover your Hard-heartedneſs toward me, I muſt diſengage you from your Promiſes, and by my Death ſet you at Liberty, to follow the Motions of the King your Father. I'll die, 'tis infallibly reſolved, I'll die, but not alone, they that drag *Agis* to his Grave, ſhall perhaps go thither with him, and it ſhall be by their Blood, and by that of many Thouſands, he'll make his Funerals renowned to all Eternity. At theſe Words he would have riſen from before me, but I let my ſelf ſink upon him with ſo much Weakneſs, that I fell down on the Floor cloſe by him, who as fainting as he was, took me into his Arms, where he ſaw me loſe both my Senſes and my Underſtanding; my Maids fetch'd me to my ſelf again, by the help they gave me, and then, looking upon *Agis*, with as dying an Eye as his, Leave me *Agis*, (ſaid I) leave me, and ſince you cannot content your ſelf with what I am able, and with what I do ſatisfy you, ſuffer me to undergo my wretched Deſtiny with Patience. Farewel—— (purſued I, caſting my Arms about his Neck, and drowning his Face in a Sea of Tears) farewel my deareſt *Agis*, leave this ingrateful Country, which hath nothing left in it worthy of you, and without inquiring what

Effect

Effect your Remembrance ſhall work upon me, uſe mine the beſt way you can for your own Repoſe. With theſe Words, not being longer able to bear his Preſence, without breaking forth into Violences very contrary to Modeſty, I embraced him once again for the laſt time of all, and turning my Eyes away from his Face, I retired into my Cloſet, where I ſhut my ſelf up, with a Reſolution not to ſee him any more. Alas! (continued *Deidamia*, melting into Tears) that was my laſt ſight of him indeed, and 'twas but too truly that I bid him adieu for ever; the Pangs I felt at that cruel Separation, were but too certain Preſages of our extreameſt Misfortunes; and that parting went too near my Heart, not to make me judge that it would be Eternal. I was not preſent at the laſt Actions of my poor afflicted Prince, but I heard ſince, that after he had fallen into Swoonings, which brought him almoſt to his Grave, and that he had uttered Words which cloſt the Hearts of my grieved Maids with pity, he went out of my Chamber, and reſolving not to ſtay a minute longer in *Ambracia*, took Horſe with all his Retinue to depart. They who ſaw him paſs through the Streets in that Condition, and who could not forget they were indebted to him for their Safety, were not able at that Sight to forbear lamenting, and expreſſing by their Cries how much they diſapprov'd that unjuſt Uſage of their valiant Deliverer. When he was in the Market-place, where he ſaw a Company of Men together, he turn'd toward them with an Action which ſufficiently ſhew'd the trouble of his Mind, and looking upon them with a threatning Eye, and an Eye kindled with a juſt Indignation, People of *Epirus*, (ſaid he) remember your Ingratitude, and when you ſee your ſelves again in the Dangers from which I freed you, bewail at leaſt the loſs of your Defender; his help ſhall fail you in your time of need; nay, and perhaps you ſhall ſee thoſe ſame Arms endeavour your Ruin, with the ſame Succeſs they had for Deliverance. Theſe Words were followed with a murmur amongſt thoſe that approved the Juſtice of his Complaint, and the valiant *Agis* had no ſooner ſpoken them, but turning his Back upon that unthankful People, he went out of the City, and took his Journey toward *Sparta*;

sa, by the ſame ways he had cleared from Enemies, and which he ſtill ſaw full of the Marks of his unconquered Valour.

Which way, my Lord, ſhall I be able to relate the Extremity of my Affliction? certainly it is not in my Power; and in what Terms ſoever I ſhould do it, 'twould be impoſſible for you to comprehend it. A Body divided from its Soul may have ſome Reſemblance with the Condition I was in at that time, and ſorrowful *Deidamia* was the true Picture of Deſolation. The laſt Words, and the laſt Actions of that poor Prince, had pierced my Heart ſo deeply, that I was utterly uncapable of any Conſideration, or of any other Remembrance but his; my Affection to him was ſo increaſed by thoſe unhappy Accidents, that it was riſen to the higheſt degree of Paſſion, and if before I lov'd him as I was oblig'd, I loved him then a Thouſand times more dearly than my ſelf. Alas! with how many Tears did I lament that fatal Separation, and what Reproaches did not I utter againſt my Father's Ingratitude, whenſoever he open'd his Mouth to condemn my Grief? I loſt part of the Reſpect I owed him, to take the liberty to tell him of his Injuſtice; and as often as he went about to perſwade me to accommodate my Thoughts to his, and to receive Impreſſions for *Caſſander*, to whom he deſtined me indeed, I ſhewed ſo little compliance to his Will, that he gave over all hope of being able to bend my Mind to it. Let your Majeſty be contented (ſaid I) with having ſwaid my Heart once to your Deſires, and with having introduced an Affection, whoſe Birth I ſhould have oppoſed, had I not feared to diſobey and to diſpleaſe you; I know not how to change ſo lightly, and I teſtify my Reſignation to your Will ſufficiently, in taking my ſelf away from him to whom your Command had given me, without your forcing my Inclinations a ſecond time, for a Man whom I neither know, nor ever will; I confeſs I went beyond Reſpect, in ſaying thus to the King my Father, but 'twas the leaſt I owed to my poor *Agis*, and he well deſerv'd that for his ſake I ſhould do ſomething more than Modeſty in ſtrictneſs would allow. Wherefore at ſuch times as I was alone, or only in the Company of thoſe whom I ſuſpected not,

not, I suffered my Resentments to break forth in such a manner, that I forgot not any Word a lawful Passion could put into my Mouth. In the interim *Antipater* sent Commissioners to my Father, to press the Proposition of our Marriage, but notwithstanding all the King's Attempts, by Gentleness, and by Violence, it was impossible for him to shake my Resolution, and when he went to terrify me with his Threats, Let your Majesty cause me to be put to Death (said I) and I shall be cured of a Remembrance more cruel than all the Pains you can inflict upon me. The King was extremely moved at these Words, and was sometimes upon the very point of letting loose his Anger; but he loved me very tenderly, and his Knowledge of the Unjustness of what he demanded, wrought something upon him, and did a little moderate his Indignation. *Antipater*'s Commissioners thinking themselves mock'd, return'd very much discontented, after they had publickly complain'd of their Master's being ill dealt withal, and having at their Departure expressed that he would not be insensible of it. I was also persecuted by *Neoptolemus*, who taking his Advantage upon the Ruin of *Agis*'s Pretensions, and upon my Averseness to the Marriage of *Cassander*, left nothing unattempted, either with my Father, or with my self, to advance his old Designs; but the King answered him with my Obstinacy, and I with such strange kind of Usage, that the very spite he conceived, made him leave the Court, with an Intention to stir up some Trouble in the Kingdom, and for that Purpose to make use of the Peoples ill Opinion of *Æacidas*.

About that time, the News came to us, that my valiant *Agis* with an Army more powerful through the Courage, than the Number of Men it consisted of, was entered into the Countries that were subject to *Antipater*; where by the beginning of his Exploits, he shewed Marks both of his Valour, and of the Animosity that guided him. We heard that in many Encounters he had gained all manner of Advantages, that he had taken many Places by storm, and that after having made himself Master of the Field, he had laid siege to *Megalopolis*, whither *Antipater* was marching against him with an Army much more

potent than his, becauſe it was made up, not only of his own Forces, but of many of his Allies, and where *Agis* ſtaid for him, contrary to the Advice of all his Commanders, being leſs deſirous of Victory than of Death, but moſt firmly reſolved, to ſell his Life at the deareſt Rate, and to make his Deſpair remarkable by Actions which Poſterity never ſhould forget.

This News made me ſend forth continual Wiſhes in his Favour, and all the Prayers I made unto the Gods were only for his Safety; yet was I tormented with extraordinary Fears, and thoſe mortal Apprehenſions were the true Preſages of my Misfortune. Alas! they were but too true indeed, and ſince I muſt abridge a Relation which has nothing now in it, but ſorrowful and unpleaſing Events, in ſpite of all my Prayers, and in ſpite of all my Wiſhes, I heard ſhortly after with all *Epirus*, that in a bloody Battle, whoſe iſſue had been diſputed by almoſt all the Blood of either Party, my beloved, my valiant *Agis* had loſt his Life upon thouſands of Men whom he had ſacrificed to his lawful Rage. Although this Report was confuſedly brought us, you may judge nevertheleſs what Effect it wrought upon my Heart, and you imagine by the Knowledge this fatal Story has given you of my Love, that I was little leſs dead than he himſelf. Indeed all ſigns of Life forſook me, and Complaints not being capable to expreſs the ſmalleſt part of my Affliction, they left that office to Faintings and Swoonings, which carried me almoſt into the very Bowels of the Grave.

I had continued many Days in a Condition, which made my Life to be much doubted of, when that I might be utterly overwhelm'd, they brought a Man to me, whom I inſtantly knew to have belonged to that poor Prince, and to have been the moſt beloved of all the Servants he had; as ſoon as ever I ſaw him, though it was in the Preſence of the Queen my Mother, I ſent forth a cry of a deſpairing Perſon, and preſently after fell into a ſwoon, in the Arms of thoſe that were about me. When with ſeveral Remedies they had fetched me to my ſelf again, as I open'd my Eyes I caſt them upon that Man, and forcing the Sighs which ſtopped the Paſſage of my

my Words; *Agis* is dead, (cried I) *Agis* is dead, *Archidamus*. Yes, Madam, (anſwered he) the greateſt, and the moſt generous of all Princes, is dead indeed, but he ſhall never die in the Memory of Mankind; at his Death he has raiſed himſelf a Monument, which would render his Condition worthy to be envied, if he were not dead in your Remembrance. In my Remembrance (replied I, quite tranſported) Ah! *Archidamus*, *Agis* ſhall never die in my Remembrance, and 'tis only by the Remembrance of him that *Deidamia* now lives her ſelf. He commanded me (continued *Archidamus*, very ſadly) to bring you the lateſt Marks of his, and if you be ſo pleaſed, I will acquit my ſelf of the laſt Commiſſion he ever gave me.

My Grief made me unable to reply, and all I could do, ſeeing him put forth his Arm to give me a Letter, was to lift up my Hand to receive it, and to imploy the reſt of my little Strength to open it. There were but very few Words in it, but they were written with his Blood, and that ſight ſtruck ſuch a chilneſs into mine, that I was hardly able to ſpeak or ſtir. Ah! my dear *Agis* (cried I, kiſſing that Blood before I read the Words) with what diſmal Characters have you ingraven theſe laſt Expreſſions of your Love? and why have you been ſo prodigal of this noble Blood, ſo dear to *Deidamia*, and which ſuſtain'd my Life more than your own? Saying thus, I caſt mine Eyes once more upon it, but they were ſo drown'd in Tears, that for a long time I was not able to ſee, and 'twas with much ado that in the end I read theſe Words:

Agis to the Princeſs *Deidamia*.

YOUR Ingratitude has not had Power to make you loſe your Empire over me; I die yours, Deidamia, *and it is to aſſure you of it, that I imploy the remainder of my Blood, and of my Strength.*

And I'll die thine, (cried I, kiſſing thoſe Words again) yes, die thine, my too too faithful Prince; and I'll confeſs at the Extremity of my Life, I was as unworthy of theſe laſt Marks of thy Affection, as thou wert worthy of a more fortunate Deſtiny. Theſe Words were followed with a Sea of Tears, whoſe flowing whole Hours could not aſſwage; and if I had not been withheld by thoſe that were about me, I ſhould without doubt have made theſe Hands of mine to act ſome Violence againſt my Life. After having been a good part of the Day in this Condition, I deſired to know the Particulars of his Death, and though I was certain that relation would ſurcharge my Grief, the Reſolution I had taken to bury my ſelf abſolutely in it, made me ſeek that new Occaſion to afflict my ſelf; and therefore turning towards *Archidamus*, Tell me, I pray you, (ſaid I, with a Voice interrupted by my Sighs) tell me, *Archidamus*, in what manner your valiant Prince loſt his Life; but do not ſpare my Sorrow, nor conceal the moſt deplorable Accidents of it from her, whoſe Deſpair is uncapable of receiving any Addition. *Archidamus* with much ado refraining Tears, ſatisfied the Requeſt I made him, on this manner.

In the Condition I now ſee you, Madam, I will not make you a long recital of the Life my Maſter led after your Separation; and ſince 'tis only an Account of his Death that you demand, I ſhall deliver it to you in a very few Words. I will not repeat what his Deſpair made him ſay during our Expedition; the knowledge you have of his Paſſion, may make you eaſily judge; he uttered whatſoever a violent Affection, and a juſt Senſe of his Misfortune could put into his Mouth. He would never hearken to one Word of Comfort, and having nothing in his Mind but the Ruin of *Caſſander*, he never talk'd to us of any thing, but the Revenge he intended to prepare againſt him. When we were come to *Sparta*, hardly would he tarry there three Days, either to take a little Reſt, or to put thoſe Forces he found there in a readineſs to March. He would not ſtay for any Recruits, and his Impatience was ſo great, that it made him run headlong

long upon an Enterprize, under which, being ſo weak in Men as he was, he in all Probability was like to ſink. Yet did he march with as much Boldneſs, as if he had been followed by a Million of Men, and being entered into the Territories that obey'd *Antipater*, he left moſt bloody Marks there of his lawful Fury; the Forces that defended the Frontier were all cut in pieces, and whatſoever oppoſed his Paſſage met the ſelf ſame Deſtiny.

I will not trouble you with the Particularities of that War at length, but only tell you, that after having defeated whatſoever came in our Way, ta'n divers Places by Aſſault, and made ſuch progreſs in few Days, as might have demanded whole Years to equal it, we ſaw our ſelves forced to beſiege *Megalopolis*, which was an obſtacle to our Paſſage. 'Twas not the intention of our valiant King to fix us upon Sieges, but his Deſign was to march directly to *Caſſander*, and make him lay down his Pretenſions to you, together with his Life; being ingag'd before that Place, we heard that *Antipater* and his Son were coming towards us with Colours flying, and an Army half as ſtrong again as ours. This Intelligence could not terrify the King; who contrary to the Advice of his Commanders, who counſel'd him either to retire or intrench himſelf, raiſed his Siege, and went to meet the Enemy with a Reſolution to give him Battel. Why ſhould I hold you longer? The two Armies fac'd one another, and having ſhew'd an equal deſire to Fight, the chief Officers drew them up according to their wonted Order, and according to the ſituation of the Places, and the numbers of their Men; which done, they preſently began the Battel.

There was a great deal of Blood ſhed on both Sides very quickly, and our Prince incourag'd us by ſo admirable an Example of Valour, that we ſhould certainly have conquered with him, if he had not rather ſought for Death than Victory; but he abandon'd all Care of his Men, to think of his particular Satisfaction, and ſeeking *Caſſander* in the thickeſt of his Squadrons, he brake thro' all of them to get to him, and charging him in the midſt of a thouſand Swords and Javelins, he laid him on the

round together with his Horſe; immediately after he diſmounted *Antipater*, and if his Fury had not been ſtopt by a valiant Stranger, whoſe Strength was little different from his, without Queſtion he would have perfected his Revenge. He did not all theſe prodigious Actions without receiving a great number of Wounds, and in the end he was ſo weaken'd by them, that he no longer was able to ſit upon his Horſe, but had fallen off among the Dead, if we had not broke in to him, and reſcu'd him from among a multitude of Swords which he deſpiſed, and into the midſt of which, he with the fierceneſs of a Lion had precipitated himſelf. Having drawn him out of the Throng whether he would or no, I put him into a Litter, and carried him a little out of the heat of the Fight; but his Litter was preſently full of Blood, which ran down from an infinite number of Wounds, and my magnanimous Prince, knowing he was near his End, would not ſuffer me to ſtir from him any more, but drawing Paper from ſome Place about him, where I believe he carried it for that purpoſe, he pull'd out the head of a Javelin that ſtuck in his Body, and with the bloody Point of it, he with great Difficulty writ thoſe Words whereof I have been the fatal Bearer. As ſoon as he had done, *Archidamas* (ſaid he, giving them to me) carry theſe laſt Aſſurances of my Affection to *Deidamia*, and make her the Relation of my Death. Scarce had he impoſed that Command upon me, when he ſaw our Forces retire; defeated more by the abſence of their General, than by the courage of our Enemies, who mingled Pall-mall amongſt them, and were eager in the Proſecution of their Victory. Our valiant King who would not dye without reſiſtance, nor fall alive into his Enemies Power, with the remainder of his Strength got out of the Litter, and with his Sword in his Hand, went to meet Death with a miraculous Boldneſs. In that concluſion of his Life, Madam, he did things which Poſterity never will believe, and though even at firſt he was not able to ſtir out of his Place, and that within a while after he fought but upon his Knees, I may proteſt to you with Truth, that his very Preſence alone ſtopt whole Squadrons, as it had routed them in the beginning of the

Battel,

Battel, and that the moſt daring of them, aſſaulted him only with Darts and Arrows, which the valiant Prince tore out of his Body with an invincible Courage, and threw them back at thoſe by whom he had been wounded. 'Twas in this manner of Combate that he ſpent the remnant of his Strength; which being no longer able to keep him up, he let himſelf ſink gently upon his Shield, over which he lean'd, yielding up the Ghoſt, rather like a Man that was weary, or falling into a Sleep, than one that was Dying.

I ſcarcely heard the laſt Words of *Archidamus*, for I fell into ſo deep a Swoon at the end of his Recital, that all the Company believ'd I had breath'd out my Soul to follow *Agis*. All Remedies ſeem'd helpleſs for my Recovery, and notwithſtanding all the Care they could take to fetch me again to my Senſes, I continued all the reſt of the Day with ſo little ſign of Life, that many Perſons fear'd I had really loſt it; the King my Father ſaw me in that Condition, and the Affection he bore me made him in that Encounter find occaſion enough to repent of his Ingratitude; he already felt a remorſe for it that tormented him, nor could he remember what he owed to the Memory of *Agis*, without being troubled in his Conſcience; the Queen my Mother, as much as ſhe reſpected him, could not forbear to reproach him with it, and all the honeſteſt People in *Epirus* had taken ſuch an Averſion againſt him, ſince the Uſage he had given their brave Deliverer, that the leaſt occaſion in the World would have ſtirr'd them up to Revolt. It was a good while within Night when I came to my ſelf again, and I no ſooner open'd my Eyes, but my Mouth alſo was open to pour forth ſuch Lamentations, as were due from me to ſo dear, ſo precious a Memory. I ask'd for *Agis*'s Letter, and as ſoon as it was given me, I fix'd my Lips upon thoſe Relicks of his Blood with Tranſports that came from nothing but Deſpair, and ſaid Words that were not to be excuſed, but by ſuch a Loſs as that I had ſuffer'd. 'Twould be impoſſible, my Lord *Demetrius*, to repreſent the exceſs of my Affliction, yet I ſhould be to blame to talk to you any longer of the greatneſs of my Sorrow, ſince it was not ſtrong enough to carry me to my Grave.

It

It is true, I died not; whether it were by Reason of the Care that was taken to keep me from it, or of the Anger of the Gods, who would not let me expiate so great a Fault, with the Pain of so short continuance; no, I died not, but the Life I have led since then, has differ'd from Death in nothing else but the sensibility it has left me of the Miseries I have undergone.

When the Queen's Tears, and the King's Importunities, had obtain'd a Promise from me that I would not make my self away, I shut my self up in a Chamber hung with Black, where all the Objects were mournful, and suitable to the Condition of my Mind, and where I hardly receiv'd the Visits of the King and Queen; the Sight of all other Persons was troublesom to me, and I may protest to you with Truth, that during the space of a whole Year, I scarce saw Day-light twice; and when the King perswaded me, or got the Queen to do so, that I ought to change my manner of Life, and dispose my self for a Husband, I broke into such Violence at that Proposal, that the King, fearing that Perfecution would drive me to my Grave, was constrain'd to give it over, and to lose both the Hope of winning me to it, and the Design of tormenting me any further.

Let the King content himself, (said I) with having by my Obedience to him, made me the most unfortunate Princess in the World; I sacrificed my Liberty to his first Commands, and to his last I sacrific'd my poor *Agis*, and with him all that had Power to make me love my Life; for all they were so unjust, for all they were so cruel to me, I blindly obey'd them, and if I had been less obedient, I should have been less guilty, and less ingrateful.

Ah! my dearest *Agis*, (continued I with a Torrent of Tears, wherewith my Words were usually attended) thou whose Image never parts from my Remembrance, should I be able to give thee a Successor in this Heart which was so lawfully thine own, and should I be as capable of this baseness, as I have been of this Ingratitude thou upbraid'st me with? I will not justify my self of it before thee, and tho' thro' the considerations of my

Duty,

Duty, it might find some Excuses, it has produc'd too dismal Effects to 'scape the censure of being criminal.

I will never be but thine, Dear Prince, and if my Tears are light Reparations for the Fault I have committed, I will accompany them with that ardent Affection, and that inviolable Fidelity which I will keep to thee till my lateſt Breath. Theſe were my ordinary Diſcourſes, but while I liv'd on this manner, the Queen my Mother, contrary to the hope of all *Epirus*, of the King, and even alſo of her ſelf, became with Child.

This News was no ſooner publiſh'd, but the *Epirots* made Bon-fires, and in the expectation of having a Succeſſor of the Blood of *Achilles*, which yet that Monarchy had never fail'd of, they made their Joy appear by all ſorts of Expreſſions; but they gave themſelves over to it a great deal more, when within a few Months after, according to their wiſh, they ſaw her ſafely deliver'd of a Son, in whoſe Perſon they found that Prince they had ſo much deſir'd. The King and the whole Court was tranſported with Joy, and I my ſelf was fain to leave my ſolitary Retirement, to bear a part in that ſo general Gladneſs. The Gods are my Witneſſes, I was ſo far from being troubled for loſing the hopes of a Crown, that I receiv'd a great deal of Conſolation by it, as well by reaſon of the Condition I was in, which render'd me incapable of any other Deſire ſave that of Death, as of the belief I had, that I ſhould be freer in my Deſign of preſerving my ſelf intirely for the Thoughts of *Agis*, and that being no more tormented to provide *Æacides* a Succeſſor, to whom the Gods had given one, I ſhould paſs the reſt of my miſerable Life at quiet. That Child being come into the World, brought with him, by the report of all thoſe that underſtand Phyſiognomy, all the Tokens of an extraordinary Greatneſs. He was called *Pyrrhus* after the Name of his illuſtrious Predeceſſor; and the famous Oracle of *Dodona*, which is in our Country, having been conſulted at his Birth, ſpoke prodigious Things to his advantage, and promiſed to theſe *Æacidas* had ſent, that that Prince ſhould be the greateſt Man that had been ſeen for many Ages, that his Valour ſhould not be paralleld in the whole World, and that if he were

were but as fortunate as *Alexander*, he ſhould obſcure the fame af all his gallant Actions. Theſe Promiſes of the Gods raiſed *Æacidas* to marvellous Hopes, and they began to breed up young *Pyrrhus* with ſo great Care, as ſhewed the Intereſt of the whole Kingdom in him.

Epirus continued a Year in Joy, and in Tranquility enough; but the Ingratitude of *Æacidas* had too highly incenſed the Gods to expect any long continuance of Proſperity, nor could their Juſtice chuſe but break forth in the end upon his miſerable Family. The firſt Blow of Fortune he received was the Death of the Queen my Mother, whom a violent Fever took away from us in a very few Days, and whoſe Vertue left a moſt honourable Memory among the *Epirots*. *Æacidas* was as ſenſible of that loſs as was poſſible for him to be, the whole Court put on Mourning with him for ſo good a Princeſs; and notwithſtanding I was prepoſſeſſed with ſo violent a Grief, as ſeemed to have made me incapable of Sorrow for any other Loſs, this Cauſe found room ſtill in my Heart for a new Affliction, and I was as deeply touched with it as it was fit for me to be: The Tears I ſhed for my Mother mingled themſelves with thoſe which yet fell daily from mine Eyes, for the Remembrance of my poor *Agis*; but the King had ſcarcely dried up his, when he received new matter of Grief, and ſaw his utmoſt Loſſes through the Anger of the Gods, whom the violation of his Faith had made his Enemies. Pardon me, *Æacidas*, if I cannot forbear to reproach thy Memory, and believe however that the Remembrance of my Misfortunes never hindred me from loving thee, and lamenting thee as I am obliged. *Neoptolemus* defeated of all his pretenſions to the Crown, firſt by my refuſal to Marry him, and afterward by the Birth of *Pyrrhus*, had chang'd his Ways, though he had ſtill the ſame Deſign, and making uſe of the Contempt which the greateſt part of the *Epirots* had of their King, he turned his Thoughts to uſurp that Crown, which he no longer lawfully could hope for. With that Intent he was retired to the *Moloſſes*, whom he found exceeding ready to Revolt, and being inform'd of *Antipater*'s Diſcontents, and of his Hatred to *Æacidas*, he had made him acquainted with this Purpoſe, and the means

he

he had no Revenge him. *Antipater*, who conceived himself ill dealt withal, and mocked by *Æacidas*, lent an Ear to *Neoptolemus*'s Solicitations, and joyfully offered to give him his Assistance; yet durst he neither bring nor send him any *Macedonian* Forces, knowing he should not be favoured by *Alexander*, who considered our Family by Reason of the near Alliance that was between us; but he furnished him with Mercenary Strangers, whom he levied upon the Frontiers, and supplied him under-hand with great Sums of Money to support the Charges of his Enterprize. Negligent *Æacidas* slighted the first Notice that was given him of this Commotion, but when he went to try some Remedy, the Misfortune was gone so far, that all his Endeavours were unprofitable to hinder it. *Neoptolemus* did not only raise the *Molosses*, but sowed Rebellion through all parts of *Epirus*, and made a Party even in *Ambracia* it self, which quickly became stronger than the King's.

I never could comprehend which way *Neoptolemus* met with so much facility in his Design, for tho' I know the *Epirots* are the most inconstant and the most wicked People of all *Europe*, I cannot imagine what Advantage they could find in basely forsaking their natural King, to cast themselves into the Hands of an Usurper. 'Tis certain that in any other Country, *Neoptolemus* could not so easily have effected his Design; but how faithless soever ours is, I could never attribute the Ruin of our Family to any thing, but a manifest Judgment of Heaven upon it. Perfidious *Neoptolemus* declared himself, as soon as he was strong enough, and coming before our Towns with a mighty Army, he in a short space brought them under his Obedience without striking a Blow: his Forces encreased daily, and when he was Master of all the Country, he marched directly to *Ambracia*, where he knew he was waited for by the greater part of the Inhabitants. *Æacidas* then made some attempts to remedy his last Misfortunes, but he found the Courage of the *Epirots* so cold, that after having unsuccessfully tried to make them take Arms for his Defence, he began to lose both Heart and Hope together. Then it was that he vainly called for *Agis*'s Assistance, and that he bewailed his Ingratitude

with

with Tears of Blood; he in his own Destruction saw the Truth of that poor Prince's Predictions, and after his unworthy Usage of him, had not the Confidence to demand Relief from his Allies. For mine own part, I can assure you, there were but two Reasons that augmented my Affliction in this Misfortune; I was troubled for my Father's Disasters, though he had drawn them on his own Head, and I was afraid of falling into the Hands of *Neoptolemus*, whom I mortally hated. Yet did I resign myself to the Will of the Gods, and being as it were dead to all manner of Contentment in the World, 'tis certain I was less touch'd with our Disasters than I should have been in another Season. My Father seeing himself reduced, by the Fickleness of his Subjects, to one only Town, resolved to defend it, and there to expect Succour from some of his Neighbours, or to lay his Bones in the Ruins of it. But when *Neoptolemus* was come within two Days March of us, those that took part with him in *Ambracia* being the stronger, and knowing that they were so, declared themselves publickly; and taking Arms began to march up and down the Streets, crying, Long live King *Neoptolemus*. In this utmost Extremity the King summoned up all the remainder of his Courage, and did all he possibly could to animate those to his Defence, in whom he believed there was yet any Fidelity; but their Number was so small, that he was able to do nothing with them, and saw himself compel'd to yield to his Destiny, and to follow the Counsel of those few Friends he yet had left. They all persuaded him to get out of the City, with his Family, before *Neoptolemus*'s Arrival, and take Refuge to some one of his Neighbours, where his Person and Family might be secur'd from the Persecutions of his Enemy, who would do all that he possibly could to destroy him, and that after he had put himself in some friendly Sanctuary, he might go and ask Relief from his Nephew *Alexander the Great*, who, in Consideration of their Nearness of Blood, and of the Injustice that had been done him, would without doubt give him his Assistance, and establish him in his Throne again. The sad King hearken'd to this Proposition, and taking Gold and Jewels with him, he caused certain

Chariots

triots to be made ready, and being guarded by a small mber of trusty Friends, he in the Night got out of Palace, by a Gate which had free passage into the ld, without going thro' any part of the City. Our ape was not so secret, but that the *Epirots* might have vented it if they had desired our Ruin; but those that re less exasperated against *Æacidas*, withheld the rest, ling them they might be satisfied with depriving him his Kingdom, and not hinder him from saving his Life he could possibly. Our Company consisted of the ing my Father, young *Pyrrhus* my Brother (who was en but two Years old) my self, two Maids, *Theogenes*, *ndroclides*, *Angelus*, *Hyppias*, *Meander*, *Androclion*, and me others, whose Names were not so known in *Epirus*, nd who would not abandon us in our Disasters Sor- owful *Æacidas* quitted not his Town and Kingdom ithout Tears, and detesting the Infidelity of his People, ttered Imprecations against them, and Complaints of his Misfortunes, able to have touch'd his very Enemies with ity. The Sun was hardly risen when our small Train vas increased by a few Men, who coming up to us, gave is Notice that we were pursued, and that we must hasten our Flight with greater Diligence, if we intended to ave our selves. *Æacidas* grew pale at this Intelligence, and not being able to forsake me, nor to fly himself with greater speed, he was extreamly desirous to save little *Pyrrhus*, whom he believed to be the principal Aim of his Enemies Pursuit; and therefore having taken him in his Arms, and kissed him a great many times, bathing his Face in Tears, he put him into the Hands of *Androclion*, *Hyppias*, and *Meander*, who were mounted upon fleet Horses, commanding them to carry him to *Glaucus* King of the *Illyrians*, his ancient Friend, to whom he would entrust that which was most precious to him in all the World. These three faithful Servants took charge of my little Brother, and promised the King that to their latest Breath they would with Fidelity acquit themselves of the Commission he gave them. When he had seen them depart, we prosecuted our Journey, but left the Highways, and under the Conduct of trusty Guides, travelled

travelled thro' the moſt unknown Places toward *Byzantium*, where the King determined to paſs over into *Aſia*, and to go to *Alexander*.

I will not entertain you, Sir, with the frivolous particulars of our Journey; it pleaſed the Gods we were not overtaken by our Enemies, and that after a tedious wandring we in the end arrived at *Byzantium*: There we remained unknown, the King reſolving to ſtay for *Meander*, who, by the Order he had received, was to bring him an account thither of the Child that had been truſted to him.

Meander came and eaſed the King of part of his Diſcontents, by giving a Relation of the Succeſs of his Embaſſy: He told him, King *Glaucus* had taken the Child into his Protection, that he had given Charge he ſhould be bred up with as much Care and as much Affection as his own; that he had publickly ſworn he would aſſiſt him with all his Forces towards the Recovery of his Kingdom; and that he complained, that the King himſelf had taken Sanctuary any where elſe but with him. *Æacidas* was joy'd at this recital, but he was come to the concluſion of his Miſeries, and as the Gods would have it, to o'er-whelm the unfortunate *Deidamia*, he fell ill the next Day after, and felt himſelf ſo weaken'd with his Griefs, that he had not Strength enough to reſiſt his Sickneſs; upon the ſixth Day he died, and I remained in the moſt ſad and lamentable Condition that ever Princeſs was reduced to. I make you judge of it, my Lord, without going about to make a Deſcription of it, and you may eaſily imagine in what Perplexities a Maid might be, who, after having loſt what was deareſt to her in all the World, ſaw her ſelf deprived of her Parents, deſpoiled of all ſhe had, without Refuge and without Support, under the Conduct of a few helpleſs Men. Certainly 'tis very hard to fancy a more miſerable Eſtate than mine, and all the Tears in the World were not ſufficient to deplore a part of my Diſaſters. I will not tell you what Torrents I poured forth, but content my ſelf with letting you know, that after the King my Father's Obſequies, when once the Condition we were in would ſuffer us, we conſulted the Oracle of *Mars*, who by the Mouth of his

ieſt gave us order to proceed according to our for-
Reſolution, and promiſed me, that upon the Banks
phrates I ſhould find Repoſe, and an end of my
ortunes. I received little Conſolation by that Pro-
the Gods had given me, knowing I could not hope
he Performance of it any other way, than by the
of my Life; yet was I determined to obey their
mands, and by the Advice of *Theogenes* (to whoſe
duct I had reſign'd my ſelf) we continued on our
ney toward *Alexander*, who was then at *Suſa*, be-
ing that the Queens would afford me a ſafe Retreat
an honourable Sanctuary. The Gods can tell, 'twas
any deſire to ſave my Life, nor to return to the Qua-
whence I was fallen, that made me undertake ſo
ıful a Journey, but only the fear of falling into *Neop-*
mus's Hands, and my willingneſs to comply with the
ires of thoſe faithful Perſons, who had abandoned all
y had to ſerve me, and who expreſs'd ſo great an Af-
ion to the miſerable Relicks of our Family; 'tis un-
their Protection that I have travelled thro' ſo many
untries; but a long and dangerous Sickneſs I had at
ſa (whence the King was gone ere we arrived) hin-
ed the effecting of our Reſolutions, and before I was
le to leave my Bed, we heard the fatal News of the
ıch lamented Death of the greateſt Man that ever came
to the World. By this laſt Misfortune I was perſuaded
at the Gods aimed abſolutely at my Deſtruction, ſince
ey over-whelm'd me daily with new Afflictions, and
opped up all the Paſſages to that Safety and to that Re-
oſe I wiſh'd for; whereupon I would have given my
lf over to Deſpair, if *Theogenes* and his faithful Compa-
ions had not kept me from it; and being deſirous in
ne Extremity to which I was reduced, to have me try
ll manner of ways, they were of Opinion I might ob-
ain the ſame Relief and the ſame Protection from *Alex-*
nder's Succeſſors, and from his Family, which I before
ad hoped for from himſelf. This was the Reaſon, Sir,
hat brought us to this Place, where the ill Chance of
his War you are all ingaged in began to make me loſe
the Hopes which your Goodneſs has reviv'd, and which
I now will cheriſh, ſince I have had the Happineſs in my

firſt

first Encounter to light upon so generous a Man as Prince *Demetrius*.

Thus did the fair Princess *Deidamia* finish her Narration, wherein *Demetrius* was so concerned, that his Tears for a great while kept company with those she shed at the End of her Discourse; but when her Silence invited him to speak, looking upon her with Eyes which testified a Sensibility in him that went something beyond Compassion; Madam, (said he) the Causes of our Affliction are so great, that they cannot justly be disapprov'd; but in the Loss you have sustain'd by the Death of the valiant King of the *Lacedæmonians*, the Destiny of this unfortunate Man that speaks to you has no small Conformity with yours. I weep, as you do, for a Person who is no longer in the World, and tho' my Passion were neither so long settled, nor upon so reasonable Grounds as yours, it has fortified it self by Circumstances, which have something in them most strange and more unusual. I'll weep with you whensoever you please to let me bear you Company in that sad Employment, and in this Encounter of our Fates, perhaps we may find some Consolation: In the mean time give me leave to wait upon you to the Retreat you have demanded, and bring you to a great many Princesses, who know how to pay what's due unto your Birth and Person: You shall not fail of the Protection you hoped to receive from *Alexander*; no, nor of Revenge for the Wrongs that have been done you; for here are many Princes that will embrace your Interests with more affection than their own; and our War shall be no sooner ended, but you shall find us ready to begin it again for your Quarrel. *Demetrius*, whose sad Remembrances were a little moderated by the sight of that admirable Princess, pronounced these Words with such a Grace, and his Handsomness did so powerfully second his Persuasions, that the Princess and all her Followers, charmed with the marvellous Advantages of his Person and Language, could not resist his Desires, but answered his Offers with the like Civilities. *Demetrius*, after some obliging Words, entreated her to get up into her Chariot; and having placed himself by her, *Theogenes* and her Maids came in after them, and the rest followed the

Chariot

Chariot on Horſe-back, they went to *Polemon*'s Houſe, being guided thither by *Demetrius*. When they were at the Gate, he alighted firſt, and being deſirous to prepare thoſe Perſons that were within to receive *Deidamia* according to her Quality, he pray'd her to expect his return but a few moments, and in the interim ran to advertiſe *Apamia*, *Arſinoe*, and the other Ladies that were with them, of her arrival; and having in a few Words told them her Name, her Quality, and ſomething of her laſt Adventures, they all went down to meet and to receive her with all manner of Reſpect and Civility. This Interview cauſed a mutual Admiration in them; and as *Deidamia* found ſomething that was charming in the Faces of thoſe Princeſſes, they on the other ſide believ'd that they had never yet ſeen any thing that excelled hers. Their Converſation was in very ſubmiſſive Terms, and when the Ladies had confirm'd thoſe Promiſes to *Deidamia* which *Demetrius* had made her, they entered together into the Houſe, where they obliged her to take a Lodging with them.

The End of the Firſt BOOK.

CASSANDRA.

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK II.

DEMETRIUS having left *Deidamia* with the Ladies, went to his Father, and then with him to *Oroondates*'s Tent, whither all the Princes flock'd to take their Share in his Joy, and to inform themſelves of thoſe marvellous Events that were come to paſs there. Indeed, the Face of all Things was wonderfully chang'd; for Hatred, Rage, and Jealouſy, which had ſo abſolutely reigned there ſome few Hours before, had now yielded their Place to gentler, and quite contrary Paſſions. *Oroondates* was even loſt in the Tranſports of his Joy, both for the Life of his dear Brother, for whom he had ſhed ſo many Tears, and for the Innocency of his before ſuſpected Princeſs; he teſtified

ified thoſe ſweet Raptures by ſuch moaning Words, d that pleaſing trouble of his Mind broke forth ſo exmely in all his Actions, that ſo ſudden a Change had de him hardly to be known by his moſt particular iends: With how great Repentance did he reflect upall the Complaints he had made of *Caſſandra*'s Infidey, and with what Remorſe did he recal into his Meory, thoſe cruel Deſigns he had fram'd againſt the Life his moſt loved *Arſaces*? Which way, dear Brother, ried he before all the Company) which way, dear rinceſs, ſhall I be able to repair what I have ſaid, and hat I have attempted againſt you? and what Blood do not owe to the Expiation of thoſe bloody Injuries, and f thoſe cruel Intentions? Thou guilty Mouth, which aſt ſo often blaſphemed my adored Princeſs, and thou acrilegious Hand, which haſt ſo inhumanly ſhed the nole Blood of my moſt worthy Brother, what will you ay? what will you do to give Satisfaction for your rimes? That admirable Virtue I ſo much wrong'd by ay unjuſt Suſpicions, and thoſe deep Wounds which my ngrateful Sword has made in the Body of a Brother, to vhom I ſtood indebted for all my Happineſs, do they not ry aloud for Vengeance againſt me? Ah! no (ſaid he gain, after a little pauſe) fear nothing for innocent Faults; thoſe between my Brother and me are mutual; f I have drawn part of his Blood, he hath poured forth lmoſt all mine; and ſince *Artaxerxes* is revived, and *Statira* is not inconſtant, we ought to caſt away all fatal Remembrances, and baniſh all matters of Affliction. *Artaxerxes* will pardon the Fury that tranſported me, if he conſider the Violence of that Paſſion, whoſe beginnings he favour'd with ſo much Goodneſs; and my Queen will without doubt be ſo indulgent, as to excuſe a Jealouſy grounded upon ſuch ſtrong Probabilities, and a Jealouſy which has been violent enough to precipitate me into Deſpair, but not to leſſen my Affection. If *Oroondates*'s Words were theſe, *Arſaces*'s Thoughts were the very ſame, but he could not expreſs them with his Tongue, becauſe *Oroondates*'s Entreaty, and *Berenice*'s abſolute Command, made him obſerve the ſilence that was enjoin'd him: Yet did he by a beſeeching Geſture, and

by

by Looks which ſpoke ſufficiently for him, beg Pardon of *Berenice* for the Injuries he had done her; and that fair Princeſs, who at her Brother's deſire was ſet down by his Bed's-head, ſhew'd plainly enough by hers, that he had obtain'd the Pardon he demanded, and that her former Affection was augmented by thoſe Offences whereof he accuſed himſelf. This Aſſurance cauſed Motions in joy'd *Arſaces*, which raiſed him above himſelf, and which made him conſider that ſudden Revolution of Fortune with an inconceivable Extaſy.

While he contented himſelf with expreſſing it in that mute Language, his Recovery was endeavour'd with extraordinary Care; and Prince *Lyſimachus*, who next *Oroondates* was more concern'd in it than all the reſt, employed ſo many to ſeek that ſovereign Herb, which had lately been ſo favourable to him, that after a great deal of Difficulty, ſome few Roots of it were found upon the neighbouring Mountain. They were ſo ſooner applied but they wrought their uſual Effect, and gave the Chirurgeons certain hope of a ſpeedy Cure. The next Day he was viſibly amended, but tho' the Phyſicians allowed him to diſcourſe a little with his Friends, they would not ſuffer him to engage himſelf in the long Narration which was deſired of him, and only ordained that he ſhould defer it till the Day following. *Oroondates*, who knew not *Arſaces*'s Intentions, and believ'd that perhaps he might be unwilling to make himſelf known to ſo many Perſons who had been Enemies to his Father, who had labour'd for the Deſtruction of his Family, and who had made themſelves great, only by thoſe Territories which ought to have been his, took ſuch a courſe by the means of *Lyſimachus* and *Araxes*, that his true Name was not publiſhed ſo ſoon, and he only diſcovered it to *Thaleſtris*, *Ptolomeus*, and ſome of thoſe in whom he had a more ſpecial Confidence. *Arſaces* prayed *Oroondates* to make him the relation of that part of his Adventures which was unknown to him, and the Prince gave him an exact Account of them, which cauſed him often to fall into ſuch Admirations, and Praiſes of his Virtue, as the Prince's Modeſty could not ſuffer. Part of the Day was beſtowed in this recital, and the remainder paſſed in a delightful

lelightful Converſation, wherein the Princeſs *Deidamia*, vho, with the other Ladies, was come to viſit the Prin-es, appear'd like a fair Star, and made ſome of the Company doubt whether *Berenice* had any Advantage over ier. That lovely Princeſs had already given her a large place in her Affection; *Thaleſtris* had not been ſparing to ier of hers, and all the Princes (charmed with her Beau-y, and with her admirable Qualities, and touch'd with he ſad Events of her Fortune, and with the Ruin of her Houſe) had with much Joy and Civility promiſed her hat Protection and Aſſiſtance ſhe demanded of them. *Demetrius* intereſted himſelf more in that Buſineſs than ll the reſt, and his Father began already to obſerve, hat he beheld that Princeſs with Eyes leſs drown'd in Tears than ordinary, and that he was not altogether ſo nuch fix'd upon the ſorrowful Remembrance of his *Her-nione*. This was the laſt Day of the Truce, which obliged the Princes to ſpend the remnant of it carefully n putting the Army in order; either to Aſſault, if they aw Occaſion; or to Defend it ſelf, if it ſhould be aſſaul-ed. Thoſe great Soldiers were too skilful in their Trade, to be ignorant of any thing that could ſerve for heir Advantage; but after having viſited the Camp, they hought themſelves not in a Condition to attempt any hing for ſome Days, and the Knowledge they had that heir Enemies were altogether as unfit for Action, made iem only prepare for their Defence, or to avoid thoſe urprizes which too great a Negligence might occaſion; nd in the mean time they were extremely diligent in aſtning the Cure of their wounded Men, and in cauſing ioſe that were well to work at their Trenches. The ext Day *Arſaces* was ſo much better, that he himſelf ould hardly believe the ſudden return of Strength he elt; and *Oroondates*, as ſoon as he was awake, having sk'd him how he did; *I am ſo well*, (ſaid he) *Brother, at I find my ſelf able to ſatisfy the deſire you have to learn y Adventures; you have more Intereſt in the recital of em than any Body in the World, and our two Lives are ſo ain'd to one another, that 'tis almoſt impoſſible to ſeparate em.*

I loſt one half of mine (replied *Oroondates*) *when I thought I had loſt you, and the other ſubſiſted only by the love I bore my Princeſs. I ow'd that part of* Oroondates *to her, and but for that, I ſhould have ſacrificed it all to my ſorrow, for the Death of* Artaxerxes. *But, O Gods! is it poſſible you ſhould have lived ever ſince, without giving this afflicted Brother any knowledge that you were alive? Theſe Words drew ſome Sighs from* Arſaces, *and when he was going to anſwer him, they ſaw the fair* Thaleſtris *come into the Chamber, and with her, Prince* Lyſimachus, Oxyartes, *and* Artabaſus.

As ſoon as they had bidden the two Princes good-morrow, and that they with Joy had heard from them the State of their Health, *Oroondates*, turning towards *Arſaces*, Brother, (ſaid he) theſe Perſons are not to be ſuſpected in the Relation I have demanded of you, and I believe 'tis partly that deſire that brought them hither.

If I am ſuſpected (added *Lyſimachus*) I ſhall not take it ill, if you think fit I ſhould retire, and leave you in a more abſolute Liberty. No, *Lyſimachus*, (replied the Prince) you ſhall never be ſuſpected by me, and I ſhall be extremely afflicted, if you preſerve not that Friendſhip to *Pariſatis*'s Brother, which you have already promiſed to *Arſaces*. He detained Queen *Thaleſtris* with the ſame Civility; but *Oroondates* deſired their Entertainment ſhould be limited to that number of Perſons, and *Lyſimachus* gave Order at the Tent door, that the Princes ſhould not be diſturbed that Morning. *Arſaces* was going to begin his Story, when *Oroondates*, fearing he ſhould be oblig'd to ſpeak too loud by reaſon of the diſtance between their Beds, had a mind to go into his, but the Preſence of *Thaleſtris* hindred him; which *Lyſimachus* perceiving, led her for a while into the next Camber, and at their return they found the two Princes in *Arſaces*'s Bed, link'd in a very different Embrace from thoſe they had given one another not many Days before. Theſe illuſtrious Perſons took their Places cloſe by the Bed, and *Arſaces*, having held his Peace a while, broke Silence in theſe Terms.

The Hiſtory of ARSACES.

O Gods! with what Face can I own my having been alive, while *Alexander* over-ran my Country, deſtroy'd my Family, and triumph'd over y Father's Life and Empire? Which way ſhall I be able make this ſhameful Confeſſion, and what Excuſes can find in my Love, and in my Misfortunes, to juſtify my lf of ſuch a ſeeming Cowardiſe? 'Tis true I lived ring all the Loſſes of my Friends, and the Miſeries of y Country, but I lived in a Condition, which if it nnot make me abſolutely Innocent, may perhaps obtain me Pardon amongſt you, and leave you ſtill in a Belief, at if *Arſaces* had been free, he would not have been ſo ſe as to ſee the Deſolation of his Country, without rying himſelf in its fatal Ruins. I ſpeak this before u, *Lyſimachus*, whom I ſhall ever be able to diſcern om the Enemies of our Houſe, and I call this Remem-ance into my Mind, without keeping any Heart-burn-g againſt many of our generous Friends, who have w taken Arms for the remnant of our Blood, and who retofore, while they ſerv'd their King, and laboured r their own Glory, oblig'd *Darius*'s Family by moſt nſiderable Services, and have now left in his Son ither any Animoſity againſt them, nor any Diſcontent r ſeeing them Poſſeſſors of thoſe Countries which were e King my Father's, and which ought to have been my ominions at this preſent, if by the Anger of the Gods is Empire had not been overthrown from the higheſt tch that ever Human Greatneſs attained to.

I cannot think of this ſad Remembrance (continued *Arſaces*, with a ſigh or two) without ſhewing ſome Tokens that I am ſenſible of the Ruin of our Houſe; but for all I am an Exile, for all I am diveſted of an Empire, whoſe ſcattered Pieces make ſo many Soveraigns, the Gods are my Witneſſes, that I ſhall never bewail that Loſs, if I may but keep *Berenice*, and if with thoſe Scepters which Heaven's Wrath has put into other Hands, I loſe not alſo that worthily adored Princeſs, for whom I freely did forſake them all. Theſe Words drew Tears from the Eyes of all the Hearers, and *Arſaces* having wip'd away his, proſecuted his Diſcourſe on this manner:

I died not, Brother, in that bloody Battle, wherein you thought you had loſt a Brother, to whom you were a thouſand times more dear than his own Life, and three Days ago I ſhould have ſaid, that I lived to my Misfortune, but my recovering of *Berenice*, and of your ſelf, baniſhes all thoſe ingrateful Thoughts out of my Heart, and cannot ſuffer me to complain of my Deſtiny without Blaſphemy, and without Injuſtice. 'Tis true, I died not, but I remained in a Condition that was but little different from Death, and if you believed I was ſo, 'twas upon ſuch apparent Grounds as might have deceived all the World. Night was already ſhut in when the *Perſians* quitted the Field, and the *Scythians* were ſo weak, that they contented themſelves with keeping it, without attempting to purſue their Enemies in the dark. I lay in a ſwoon all that Night, which was one of the ſhorteſt in the Year, and during which the Soldiers were not ſuffered to pillage nor to ſtrip the Dead. As ſoon as Day appear'd, that Liberty was granted them, and then they began to pull off all our Arms and Cloaths. My Arms, if you remember, were as fair and rich as ever had been worn, and the Luſtre of the Stones they were ſet withal, which ſparkled in ſome places, in ſpite of the Blood that covered them, drew many *Scythians* to pillage me; preſently one among them took off my Caſk, and while he amuſed himſelf in conſidering the Beauty of it, another ſtooping to me would have unbuckled my Cuiraſs, but his Companion, who knew the Prize was wholly

ly his, becauſe he had ſeiz'd upon me firſt, oppoſed his Intention, and tho' they ſay the *Scythians* deſpiſe Riches, it is true nevertheleſs, that then they were powerful enough to ſet a Quarrel between thoſe two Soldiers, and to make them diſpute their Booty with their Swords: Some of their Friends, drawn thither by that Noiſe, took part on either Side, according to their Affections; and then there began a little Scuffle about me, in which Blood would have been drawn but for the arrival of *Theodates* Prince of the *Sarmates*, who commanded part of the Army. As ſoon as he made himſelf known to the Soldiers, they retired with Reſpect, and *Theodates* being willing to be judge of their Differences, they began to diſpute the Matter before him. He had no ſooner ſeen my Cask which a *Scythian* ſhew'd him, and then my Cuiraſs, and the reſt of my Arms, but he preſently believed the Perſon that wore them muſt needs be of a conſiderable Quality among the *Perſians*. This Opinion made him caſt his Eyes the more heedfully upon me; my Face was pale, and my Hair (all matted with Blood) hung confuſedly upon the Ground, which was red all round about me. I know not whether it was my Youth, or ſome Belief of the Greatneſs of my Birth, which at firſt moved Compaſſion in *Theodates*; but in effect, as I have learn'd ſince, he began too look upon me with ſome Senſe of Pity, and after having beſtow'd a Sigh or two on my Misfortune, he was going to appoint me Burial, and was beginning to decide the Quarrel among the Soldiers, and to command them to carry me from amidſt the dead, when he perceived me ſtir and open my Eyes a little, ſhewing many ſigns that I was alive. *Theodates* at that ſight felt ſome kind Joy, and drawing nearer to my Face to find whether I breathed or no; This young Man is not dead, (ſaid he) and without doubt he deſerves Aſſiſtance; the Gods forbid I ſhould neglect the Occaſion to give it him; carry him into my Tent with his Arms; if he die, they ſhall be yours; and if he recover, I'll pay you for them as much as you can deſire. *Theodates* was highly reſpected among the Soldiers, and (the *Scythians* being religious Obſervers of the Commands of their ſuperior Officers) they obey'd without murmuring,

and going after him, carried me to his Tent, which was not very far from thence: He immediately gave order that I ſhould be put to Bed, that my Wounds ſhould be ſearched, and that all thoſe Remedies ſhould be applied to me which could have been uſed in the like Extremity to his own Perſon. The Chirurgions who ſearched my Wounds found them very deep, and a great many, but they were all in ſuch favourable Places, that only my loſs of Blood gave them any Apprehenſions, and they told *Theodates*, that it alone was enough to make them deſpair of my Recovery. Yet did they endeavour it with great Care and Skill, and labour'd with ſuch ſoveraign Remedies to draw me out of my Swoon, that I came perfectly to my Senſes again, and opening my Eyes wide, I began to diſcern ſome of the Objects that were before me.

I was a long time nevertheleſs before I was capable of Reaſon; and they dreſſed all my Wounds, I ſtirring but very little all the while, and having but a very imperfect Knowledge of what was done to me; not many Hours after, I grew ſomething better, and had Strength enough to turn my Head a little, to roul my Eyes on every ſide, to call Things paſt into my Memory, and to queſtion my ſelf touching my preſent Condition. I had a confuſed Remembrance of the Battel, and of part of what I had done there, but I could not imagine in what Place I was, nor which way I came thither. I began to be deſirous to know, when *Theodates* came to my Bed-ſide, and ſeeing that I looked attentively upon him; Whoſoever you are (ſaid he) fear nothing, but believe you are fallen into the Hands of a Man that will not conſider you as an Enemy, and who will labour as much for your Safety as for his own. He went away not ſtaying for an Anſwer, and ſhutting the Curtain of my Bed, left me at liberty to digeſt his Words, and to think of the State I was in. I was not ſo weak, nor ſo little come to my ſelf, but that I underſtood what he had ſaid, and after I had reflected upon it, I conjectured ſomething of the Truth. I knew I was a Priſoner; but tho' that Condition ſeem'd hard to me, I had Courage enough to ſupport it, and by the firſt Uſage I received from this Enemy,

Enemy, I began to hope for all manner of Courteſy from him. This Knowledge ſweeten'd my Diſcontent, and as at that time I was void of any Paſſion that could make me hate my Life, I joyfully receiv'd the Aſſiſtance that was given me for the Conſervation of it. The ſecond Day I was a little ſtronger, and the next after that, the Phyſicians aſſured *Theodates*, that by the Favour of the Gods, there was hope of my Recovery. The third Day, when they had fir'd the Camp to burn that great number of dead Bodies which the *Scythians* left upon our Fields, they repaſſed the *Araxis*, to march back toward *Iſſedon*; and *Theodates*, who did already intereſt himſelf very much in my Safety, not being able to oppoſe that Neceſſity, would have me brought along in the moſt commodious manner he poſſibly could, and for that purpoſe cauſed a cloſe Hand-Litter to be made, and to be carried by a great many Men appointed for that Office, who eaſing one another by turns, removed me very gently, and eaſily kept pace with the Army, which by reaſon of the number of the wounded Men, moved leiſurely, and made but very ſhort Marches. We came on this faſhion into *Scythia*, and arrived at *Iſſedon*; but *Theodates*, who for particular Reaſons deſired to keep me conceal'd, would not let me be carried into that City, but to a Houſe of his which was not above five or ſix hundred Furlongs from thence. I was already in a Condition which gave the Chirurgions certain hopes of my Recovery, but my Wounds were ſo great, that long Time, and much Patience were neceſſary for my Cure; nor did they fail to labour in it with ſuch extraordinary Care, that I could not then imagine any other thing, but that *Theodates*, having had ſome Knowledge of my Quality, was ſo induſtrious to procure my Health, out of hope to get a mighty Ranſom for me. I wrong'd his Virtue in that falſe Opinion, and I have ſince had very good Reaſon to know, that nothing but mere Generoſity inſpired him with all thoſe favourable Inclinations to me. He had viſited me often during our March, and he ſaw me divers times at that Houſe of his, where he forgot no kind of Civility or good Uſage, to ſweeten the Diſconſent I might have either for my Wounds, or for my

Captivity. I had learn'd his Name and Quality of them that waited upon me, andthat Knowledge obliged me to pay him what I thought due to a Prince, to whom I was ſo highly indebted. He never had asked me any thing concerning my Name or Birth, and I judg'd it not convenient to diſcover that I was *Darius*'s Son, knowing what a mortal Hatred the King of *Scythia* bore our Family. But one Day when he was by my Bed-ſide, he with a great deal of Civility entreated me to tell him ſomething of them, aſſuring me, that let me diſguiſe it as much as I would, I could not put him out of the Opinion he had conceived of the Greatneſs of my Quality. I all my Life had a great Averſion againſt Lying, and beſides, eſteeming *Theodates* extremely, I deſired to tell him Truth without diſcovering my ſelf; and remembring the former Names our Family had born before my Father attain'd the Crown, I am called *Arſaces*, (ſaid I) my Father's Name was *Codoman*, and you were not deceived, when you believed me to be ſomething above the common Rank of Men; for indeed I am born a Prince, in one of thoſe Countries that obey *Darius*, and I have the Honour to belong to him by ſome Alliances which are not very remote; I make this Confeſſion to you, upon the Knowledge I have of your Virtue, and tho' Captivity be hard to Princes, I ſhall bear mine with Patience, and not think my Condition miſerable, becauſe I am fallen into the Hands of ſo generous a Prince as *Theodates*. When you are once in ſuch an Eſtate (replied *Theodates*) that you can make uſe of the Eſteem I have of you, you will find I have no Intentions you can complain of, nor ſhall the Knowledge you give me of your Quality, be any way to your Diſadvantage. Yet is it neceſſary it ſhould be unknown to the *Scythians*; for if the King ſhould know I had a Priſoner of ſuch Importance, it would be hard for you to recover your Liberty before the end of our Wars. You may lie here conceal'd till you are well, and when you have recovered your Health and Strength, I will certainly give you Cauſe to continue your good Opinion of me.

We

We had ſome other Diſcourſe upon this Subject, and during all the time my Wounds kept me in Bed, I had a thouſand new Occaſions to acknowledge his Civility. While I led that kind of Life, (very tedious to a Perſon of my Humour) my Thoughts travell'd as far as *Perſia*; and I may truly proteſt to you, Brother, that nothing in my Captivity troubled me ſo much as our Separation. I was uncertain whether you had eſcaped the Battel in which I fell, and into which I had ſeen you ruſh headlong with ſo little regard of Danger; and really that Apprehenſion was the greateſt of my Diſcontents. Yet did I receive ſome Conſolation, in that among ſo many Bodies as were ſtript, yours, whereof the whole Court of *Scythia* had the Idea moſt preſent to their Memory, had not been found, which made me hope with a great deal of likelihood, that you were not ſlain in that Day's Service. Your Conſideration alſo gave me a deſire to make ſome ſtay among the *Scythians*, tho' I had had Liberty to return; and my dear *Oroondates* was too high in my Eſteem to leave his Country without ſeeing the King his Father, and that Siſter, whoſe admirable Beauty was ſo loudly fam'd, and whereof I had heard *Araxes*, and many other Perſons in *Scythia*, ſpeak with ſome of thoſe Praiſes which are her due. I heartily wiſh'd for ſome Occaſion, wherein I might pay your Houſe ſome ſmall part of what you had done for ours, and the Gods know I would have purchaſed it with the better part of my Blood. In fine, not to hold you longer in this tedious part of my Life, I recover'd my Health, but I was not able to ſtir out of my Chamber for above three Months after our arrival in *Scythia*; I ſaw my ſelf at Liberty as ſoon as cur'd, there were no Guards to hinder me from going away, and generous *Theodates* did not ſo much as demand my Promiſe for Aſſurance. I rather would have loſt my Life, than abuſed that Goodneſs, nor would I have taken ſo much Liberty, as to have walked into the Garden, if he had not earneſtly entreated me himſelf, and if within a few Days after, he had not told me that I was a free Man, and that if I had a mind to retire into my Country, he would furniſh me with means to get out of *Scythia*. This great Civility of *Theodates*, put me

into a Confuſion which I cannot repreſent, but I would by no means accept his Offers, and I let him ſee I knew too well how the Rights of War engaged me towards him, to make ſo ill a Uſe of his noble Favours; I told him that I knew the Obligations I had to him were invaluable, but alſo that with what Wealth the Gods had left to my diſpoſing, I had a Life, which I held from none but him, and which I with a perfect Satisfaction would beſtow on him that had ſo generouſly preſerved it. *Theodates* judging by my Diſcourſe that I was not of an Humour to continue engaged in ſo great Obligations, redoubled his Affection to me, and proteſted, that he never would receive any thing but my Friendſhip for the Price of my Liberty, and of what he had done to ſave my Life. And I (replied I) will never receive my Liberty upon ſuch Conditions, and if it be an Offence to Prince *Theodates* to offer him Riches for a Reward of his Generoſity, he cannot at the leaſt refuſe *Arſaces* himſelf, who gives himſelf abſolutely to him, and who will not leave his Preſerver, and his Maſter. Our Converſation ended with a great many Embraces, and *Theodates* told me I ſhould oblige him infinitely, by the deſire I had to make a longer ſtay with him, and that he had already conceiv'd ſuch an Affection towards me, as would not ſuffer him, to let me depart from him without Diſcontent. He promiſed me afterwards that he would carry me to ſee the King, the Princeſs, and the whole Court, in ſuch a way that I ſhould run no hazard of being known, and that if my Face were taken Notice of, he would eaſily make me paſs for a Stranger, whom deſire of Glory had brought into thoſe Places where it was to be gotten; and the ſame Day, after he had inſtructed his People how they ſhould behave themſelves towards me, and what they ſhould anſwer if they were queſtion'd about me, he took me along with him to *Iſſedon*; when we were alone he uſed me as a Prince, and as a Man of Quality equal to his own; but before thoſe who might obſerve our Actions, he, at my requeſt, carried himſelf towards me as an inferior Perſon, and one that had Dependence on him; otherwiſe it would have been very hard for me to have ſtaid long at Court without being ſuſpected. The

ſecond Day after our arrival, I ſaw the King in the Temple, and tho' he was my Father's Enemy, and without doubt mine alſo, I could not look upon the Father of *Oroondates* without ſome touches of Affection. His Garb methought was extreme warlike, and extreme amorous both together, and there was *Arſacomes*, and many other Princes attending on him; but the next Day, going with *Theodates* into a Wood, where the Princeſs *Berenice* uſed to walk every Evening, I ſaw her, that admirable Lady; I ſaw her, and in that I think I have ſaid all, ſince to ſee her, and to loſe that Liberty for her which I had ſo long preſerved, was but one and the ſame Thing; neither indeed is *Berenice*'s Beauty one of thoſe that ſtand in need of long time to make a Conqueſt; for, to ſupport her very firſt Looks without yielding, is wilfully to hold out in a guilty, and in an unſeemly Reſiſtance. I ſaw her with Arms againſt which it was not poſſible to defend one's ſelf, and they amongſt you, whoſe Paſſion gives them advantageous Opinions of thoſe they love, muſt pardon me if I ſay, that all I had ſeen till then was but ill-favoured in my Conceit, compar'd to *Berenice*. Scarce had I caſt mine Eyes upon her, but I was already in a Flame; and in ſhort, Brother, no longer time was requiſite for *Berenice* to make her ſelf Miſtreſs of *Artaxerxes*'s Heart, than, according to your Report, *Statira* had to win the Affections of *Oroondates*. This Reſemblance of our Deſtinies came preſently into my Mind; nay, and I think, that tho' its Aſſiſtance was utterly unneceſſary, yet did it help toward my firſt Engagement: O Gods! how fatal was that moment to my Repoſe! how many Sufferings has it coſt me, but withal how happy was it to me! ſince in ſpite of all my Pains, in ſpite of all my Loſſes, and in ſpite of all my Misfortunes, it hath made me taſte a Bliſs, the leaſt part whereof was not to be purchaſed with all my Pains, Loſſes, and Misfortunes put together. The divine *Berenice* was alighted from her Chariot, to walk under the Trees with Princeſs *Theomitis* her Couſin, and ſome other Ladies of her Attendance; and tho' I only kept along with the Train at a good diſtance, I obſerved ſuch Beauties in her

Fortune; and in this glorious Deſign which keeps thee in *Scythia*, *Theodates*'s Friendſhip will not be unprofitable to thee. I reaſon'd thus a long time, ſometimes flattering my ſelf with Hopes, and ſometimes afflicting my ſelf with Difficulties; but in the End, I overcame them all to take my final Reſolution. Why doſt thou ſtand wavering (purſued I) in a Thing thou canſt not poſſibly avoid? 'Tis a Decree of the Deſtinies, from which all the Conteſtations in the World can never free thee. Deliberate no more whether thou ſhould'ſt love *Berenice*; but deliberate of the Means thou ſhould'ſt uſe to make her ſuffer thy Affection. If it pleaſe the Gods, it may but one Day be acceptable to her, all the moſt happy Perſons that ever were, never knew Felicity in any degree comparable unto thine; and if thou dieſt in ſerving her, thy Death will be a thouſand times more glorious than thy Life.

Here it was I fix'd, and no longer doubting whether I ſhould love or no, I thought only what courſe I ſhould take to make my ſelf be lov'd. I reſolv'd to uſe *Theodates*'s Friendſhip for my ſtay in *Scythia*; but I ſettled a firm Determination not to preſent my ſelf to the King, nor to the Princeſs his Daughter, till I had done ſome Action for their Service, which might introduce me handſomly to their Knowledge. In the interim I often ſaw my adored Princeſs, but 'twas in Temples, or in ſuch Places where ſhe could not take Notice of my Face, and every time I diſcovered new Beauties in her, and felt inconceivable increaſes in my Paſſion. In ſhort, (Brother) I lov'd her with all the Violence that can be found in the ſtrongeſt Affections; and I lov'd her with ſo abſolute a Reſpect, and ſo perfect a Knowledge of her Excellencies, that I never cheriſh'd any Hope of making my ſelf worthy to ſerve her. I learn'd with much Diſcontent, that audacious *Arſacomes* had raiſed his Thoughts to her, and that abuſing the King's Love to his Siſter, he was ſo impudent as to own his to the whole World, and to give the Princeſs publick Demonſtrations of it. The Inſolence of that indiſcreet Subject, animated we with a juſt Wrath, and with a lawful Indignation againſt him; and if I had been in a Condition to have ſhewn them, I

ſhould

ſhould not have ſuffered a Preſumption that diſpleaſed my Princeſs. That was it wherein I found ſome Conſolation, for I no ſooner knew that *Arſacomes* was in love with *Berenice*, but I heard that *Berenice* deteſted *Arſacomes*. I ſtaid ſome few Months at *Iſſedon* on this manner, and in the end, the Gods made me depart from thence upon thoſe Occaſions I had ſo ardently deſir'd, and ſo impatiently waited for.

The *Nomades* and the *Hylenus* roſe up in Arms, and making themſelves Maſters of all that lies near the Lake of *Buges*, drew a potent Army into the Field, and began to make ſuch Havock, that the Noiſe of it came preſently to the King's Ear. He was deſirous to apply ſome ſpeedy Remedy to thoſe Troubles, and ſetting an Army on foot, worthily made Choice of *Theodates* to Command it. I bleſſed that favourable Occaſion a thouſand times, and prepared my ſelf with an incredible Joy to march along with that generous Friend, upon an Expedition, wherein I poſſibly might find Opportunity to make my ſelf appear with ſome Reputation to the King of *Scythia*, and perhaps ſome Occaſion, wherein I might repay ſome part of what I ow'd to *Theodates*. I expreſſed to him the Contentment I receiv'd by that Employment, and told him the Reſolution I had taken, either to loſe that Life he had ſav'd, in fighting by his ſide, or elſe to do ſomething for his Service, that might hinder him from repenting the Affection he had ſo blindly given me. I love you (anſwered *Theodates*) with ſo perfect a Knowledge of your Merit, that I cannot be accuſed of Blindneſs in my Friendſhip; and in performing marvellous Exploits, you will do nothing beyond the Opinion I have of you. *Theodates* accompanied theſe favourable Words with many obliging Endearments; and we made ready for a departing, which by reaſon of the preſſing Neceſſity of Affairs, was very ſudden and precipitate. I in that Separation ſhould have felt all the Diſcontents a cruel Abſence can throw upon a Perſon that moſt ardently loves, if I had not found my Conſolation in the Hope I had of ſome Advantages that Expedition might procure me. We went from *Iſſedon*, and took long Marches toward the Enemies. At firſt I would by no means accept of any

Command,

Command, but contented my ſelf with fighting near *Theodates*'s Perſon; but in the firſt Battel that was given, I was ſo happy as to do him ſome Services, which obliged him to beſtow Employments on me that were above the reach of my Capacity.

Arſaces's Modeſty cauſed him to paſs lightly over the Occaſions wherein he had made himſelf remarkable; but *Oroondates* perceiving it, and being deſirous to ſpare him the pains of telling them ſome of thoſe Things they had heard already from *Berenice*; Brother, (ſaid he) we have learn'd part of thoſe gallant Actions you did in that firſt Battel; we know you ſav'd *Theodates*'s Life two ſeveral times, and that ſeeing your Squadrons waver, you ſeiz'd upon the formoſt Standard, re-animated your frighted Troops by your Words, and by your Example, and by your only Valour turn'd the Victory to your ſide, which was already declaring it ſelf for your Enemies. We know, that after all theſe Wonders, *Theodates* gave you the Command of part of the Army, that with it you took Places of great Importance by Aſſault, and that with eight thouſand Horſe, you perfected the Defeat of the Rebels near the Lake of *Buges*, with ſuch marvellous Effects of Valour, and good Conduct, that the Memory of them will never be loſt among the *Scythians*. You have been told a great deal more than what I did (replied *Arſaces* modeſtly) and 'tis with much Injuſtice they would rob *Theodates* of part of that Glory, which was totally due to him. We have heard moreover, (continued *Oroondates*) how you were preſented to the King, by *Theodates*, the Reception you had from him, the beginnings of your Favour, and of the Reputation you acquir'd among the *Scythians*, the progreſs of your Credit with the King, your generous and affable Carriage, which gain'd you the Heart of all the Court, the firſt Diſcourſes you had with *Berenice*, and *Stratonice*'s Marriage to the King; and in ſhort, the Adventure which made my Siſter diſcover your Paſſion for her. She was relating theſe Paſſages to me when you came into our Camp, and we were interrupted juſt as ſhe began to tell the Converſation you had with her in an Arbour of the Garden, where by *Cyllenia*'s Mediation you obtain'd the Audience

you

ou had demanded. Theſe Princes that hear you, learn'd
iem not from *Berenice*, but I made them the Recital
eſterday, and they know enough of all to eaſe you of a
rouble, which in your preſent Condition would be no
nall one.

Since you are ſo well inſtructed in theſe Particulars,
purſued *Arſaces*) I will not repeat what you have heard
lready from my Princeſs; but before I come to the Place
here her Narration was interrupted, I'll tell you ſome
hings in a few Words, which at that time were not
ome to her Knowledge. She might be able to tell you
ie Diſcourſes I had with her, but ſhe could not repreſent
o you what I felt inwardly for her, and tho' in that I
m more knowing than any other Body, even I my ſelf
hall find the expreſſing of it to be a very difficult Mat-
er. After the time that I had the Honour to have acceſs
o her, and that together with her outward Beauties, I
vas permitted to contemplate part of thoſe which adorn'd
er Mind, when her tranſcendent Virtue, her charming
Converſation, and her excellent Goodneſs, were as well
nown to me as her Face, of a paſſionate Man that I
vas before, I became an Idolater, and grew quite tranſ-
orted, having ſcarce Power enough left me over my ſelf,
o keep that violent Paſſion from breaking forth, which
ad made it ſelf Miſtreſs of my Soul with a moſt abſo-
ute Empire. That perfect Knowledge I had of her ad-
nirable Qualities, check'd my aſpiring Hopes, and I
ould not conſider *Berenice*, in that ſublime degree of
Perfection to which the Gods had raiſed her, without
emembring my ſelf to be but a Man, and therefore ut-
erly unworthy to ſerve her. This Reflection cauſed
Diſquiets in me, which often were obſerved in my Face,
nd tho' I was loaden with Honours, and favour'd by
he King beyond my deſert, that inward Diſcontent made
ne but little ſenſible of any outward Happineſs, and hin-
ired me from taſting thoſe Advantages, which the moſt
eminent Perſons in all *Scythia* could not look upon with-
out Envy. *Theodates*'s Friendſhip toward me was ſo aug-
mented after thoſe light Services I had done him, that he
ſeem'd to live only for my ſake; and he took ſo great an
Intereſt in thoſe Favours I receiv'd from the King, that

my

my Fortune seem'd really to be his own; and to say the Truth, I made use of it as much as possibly I could to his Advantage, and imploy'd a great part of the Confidence the King had in me, to recommend the Person of *Theodates* to him; but these Marks of my Affection seem'd light in me, in respect of what I ow'd to his, and I believ'd that after the Proofs he had given me of it, I not only might tell him who I was, but that I could not without Ingratitude conceal my self from him any longer. Besides, in the Condition I then was, I stood in need of a Person to whom I might communicate my Thoughts, and amongst all those that were most discreet, and most affectionate to me, I could not have chosen one more worthy than he of so important a Trust. *Theodates* loves me too well (said I) and *Theodates* is too generous to betray me, and besides the Shame his Treachery would be to him, he could reap no manner of Advantage by my Destruction. I ended these Words with Repentance for having distrusted *Theodates*'s Virtue, and following the Resolution I had taken, one Day when I had shut my self with him into a Closet, I discovered my true Quality to him, and the true Cause of my abode in *Scythia*. I made him acquainted with my Love as well as with my Birth, and shew'd him how by that Declaration I put that Life into his Hands, over which he had a great deal of Power before.

I should have much ado to represent the Greatness of *Theodates*'s Astonishment; after this Discovery, he had so good Opinion of me, as not to doubt the Truth of my Words, and both my Face and Actions, as he said to flatter me, persuaded him sufficiently that my Birth was higher than ordinary; but he thought this Adventure so little common, that upon the Report of another Body, he could hardly have given Credit to it. Tho' he appear'd amaz'd, he appear'd not chang'd, and he believ'd that by that Testimony of my Friendship, he was deeply oblig'd to persevere in his. I oppos'd those Submissions which that Knowledge of my Quality would have obliged him to render me, and after I had most expressly intreated him to live in the same Freedom with me as he was wont, he made such Protestations to me, and promised

niſed me his Aſſiſtance in my Deſign with ſo great Affec-
ion that I did not think I had any Reaſon to repent me
f the Confidence I had in him. From that time forward
e comforted me in my Diſcontents as much as poſſibly he
ould, ſought means to let me ſee my Princeſs often, and
rocured me that little Picture which gave her the Know-
edge of my Love. While I liv'd at *Iſſedon*, in a very
anguiſhing manner, and that I could not obtain Permiſ-
on of my Reſpect to declare my Paſſion, the Truce was
ropoſed and concluded between the King of *Scythia*,
nd the King my Father; but the Cauſe of it was ſad to
oor *Darius*, and 'twas about that time we heard that the
ieutenants were defeated at the Paſſage of the *Granicus*,
hat part of his Dominions had follow'd the Fortune of
onquering *Alexander*, and that afterward *Darius* himſelf
ad loſt the Battle of *Iſſus*, and with it a great many of
is Provinces, and all his Family, who were taken Pri-
oners. You may eaſily judge, that (for all I was ſo
repoſſeſſed with a Paſſion, which made me inſenſible of
ll Things elſe) I could not receive this News without
moſt deep Diſcontent, and a great deal of Shame. It
vrought a ſtrange Alteration in my Hopes, nor had Love
o totally ſeiz'd upon my Heart, but that it had left ſome
lace in it for the Conſiderations of Honour. What
ſaid I) ſhall I languiſh then at the Feet of a Perſon, to
vhom my Sufferings are not ſo much as known, and ſhall
live in *Scythia*, as a Man to whom the Misfortune of
erſia were Things indifferent, while *Alexander* lays our
Country deſolate, uſurps our Territories, and perſecutes
ur Houſe? Ah! *Arſaces*, *Arſaces*, remember that thou
rt ſtill *Artaxerxes*; caſt off this Perſonage which Love
as diſguiſed thee with, to take up that again to which
hine Honour recalls thee, and conſider that *Berenice* her
elf would not eſteem thee, if thou couldſt linger out
hy Life ſo ſhamefully at her Feet. I never ſtood waver-
ng about what Reſolution I ought to take, and how
reat Violence ſoever my Love made me feel at that Se-
aration, to which I was to diſpoſe my ſelf, the care of
ny Reputation, and the tender Affection I bore to my
wn Blood, made me Maſter of that Paſſion which fought
gainſt my Duty with its utmoſt Power. When once my
Honour

Honour is satisfied (said I) we'll suffer Love to work, and I may better serve *Berenice*, when I shall have freed my self from a Shame that would render me unworthy of her; when we have repel'd that Enemy, who equally destroys my Father's Kingdoms, and my Hopes, we'll return into *Scythia*, and with a freer Confidence demand that of *Berenice*, which we should not dare to aspire to, being depressed with Infamy. This was my final Determination, and I imparted it to *Theodates*, who was most sensibly concerned in my Afflictions, and who resolv'd to keep me Company in that Journey, and to follow my Fortune over all the World. Tho' he comply'd exceedingly with my Passion, he could not disapprove my Resolution, and he confessed that in the Extremity our House was reduced to, I could not give my self over to my Love, without blasting my Memory for ever with an irreparable want of Spirit. My Departure therefore was concluded in spite of all the Oppositions of my Love; but yet I was not a little troubled to leave *Scythia*, without giving my Princess some Knowledge of it. I contrived several ways in my Imagination, but my Fortune took care of it, and 'twas about that time my little Picture spoke for me, and discovered that unto my Princess, which my Respect had forc'd me to conceal. I am not able to describe at length, with what a Grief I was afflicted, when I received the Sentence of my Condemnation by the Mouth of *Cyllenia*; notwithstanding the Astonishment that appeared in my Face, I did not think it very strange, and I had ever believed that the Princess would not without Displeasure receive a Declaration of Love from a Man unknown as *Arsaces*, who passed in the Court of *Scythia* but for a private Person; but I was extremely grieved I had offended her by my Presumption, and that at my Departure I should carry away with me the Sorrow of having incurred her Anger. I had a desire she should believe I knew *Berenice*'s Merit too well, to permit her to be serv'd by a Man of obscure Birth, and I judg'd that peradventure she would find less Ground of Offence in the Passion of the Prince of *Persia*, than in that of an unknown *Arsaces*; this was the Reason that made me demand that Audience by *Cyllenia*, which I had so

nuch ado to obtain, and which I covered with other tences than thoſe of my Love, knowing very well, t without entertaining the Princeſs with it, I (by the courſe I had to make) might blot out part of the In- y I had done her. I'll not ſpeak a Word to her of my ve, (ſaid I to my ſelf,) nor is it neceſſary, ſince ſhe is ll enough inſtructed in that already; that perhaps I y get her to approve it, by the Example and by the membrance of *Oroondates*; and when I ſhall join the erceſſion of that Friend to the Knowledge of my Qua- , I may perhaps ſeem leſs faulty in my Princeſs's Opi- n. 'Twas upon this Hope I preſſed the demand I had de unto *Cyllenia*, and when I had obtain'd the Favour eſir'd, I came into the Garden, after I had premedita- what I would ſay, and how I would behave my ſelf. re *Arſaces* making a little pauſe, *Oroondates* told him ere his Siſter's Recital had been interrupted, and then *ſaces* went on with it on this manner: Since my Prin- 's has told you the firſt Words of our Converſation, it ll ſuffice me to let you know the reſt: After that by r Command I was riſen from my Knee, I fixt my Eyes on her Face, and tho' ſhe, out of Reſentment, turn'd ray hers from me, I forbore not to ſpeak to her in theſe rms:

I ſhould hot have deferr'd to obey you, Madam, but ould have left a Country, in which you no longer hold me but with Indignation, if I could have done it ithout deceiving a Perſon, who heretofore was worthy your Friendſhip, and who honour'd me particularly ith his; I have taken the Charge upon me, to let you ow what is become of him, and to draw you by the lation of his Adventures, out of a great many Diſcon- nts, wherein the Ignorance of them may have retain'd u. But before I tell you the Name of that illuſtrious rſon, be pleaſed, Madam, to behold a Pledge he gave e of his Friendſhip, and perhaps the ſight of it will epare you to lend more Credit to my Diſcourſe. At eſe Words, Brother, I ſhew'd her a Ring which you d beſtow'd upon me, and which you had received from r ſelf. It was a Stone of very great Price, and Luſtre, on which two Hearts were ingraven, tied together

many

many ſeveral ways with certain Bands, and in the *Greek* Tongue this Word, *Inſeparable*. The Princeſs ſtruggled with her Anger, to caſt her Eyes upon that Ring, and ſhe no ſooner ſaw it, but ſhe knew it immediately. Ah! *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) this Ring was the Prince my Brother's. Yes, Madam, (replied I) and 'twas from him that I receiv'd it. O Gods! (cried the Princeſs) in what part of the World was it you knew him? and what News do you bring me of him? I can give you a very particular Account (purſued I) if you will allow me a favourable hearing. I ſhall hearken diligently to you without doubt (ſaid *Bereïnice*) and you cannot ingage my Attention by a more pleaſing Entertainment, nor by any wherein I can have a greater Intereſt. O my deareſt Brother! (continued ſhe with a tranſport of Affection) what Province can retain you now, and how great is your Inhumanity in abſenting your ſelf ſo long from thoſe, to whom your Abſence is a Death? After this ſhort Exclamation, ſhe diſpoſed her ſelf to hear me; and to ſatisfy her Expectation I began thus:

Before I tell you, Madam, in what Place I had the Honour to be known to Prince *Orœndates*, you will give me leave (omitting what concerns my ſelf till the End of my Narration) to entertain you with his moſt important Adventures, and to make you acquainted with Paſſages, whoſe recital, without doubt, will not be unpleaſing to you. Then I began to relate your firſt Rencounter with the Queens, and Princeſſes of *Perſia*, in that Tent where you ſav'd them from the Violence of the *Scythians*; I told her the Birth of our Affection, the Rencounter you had with Prince *Artaxerxes* in the ſame Occaſion, your generous Uſage of him, and the Diſcourſe that paſſed between you, your parting, and your particular Thoughts till you decamped, and re-paſſed the *Araxis*. Having inſtructed her in the Cauſe of your Departure, which till then ſhe had been ignorant of, I related your Journey into *Perſia*, your gallant entry into the Court, how you made your ſelf remarkable in the Courſes, by diſmounting ſo many of the moſt noted *Perſians*, and how under the Name of *Orontes*, you were known again by all

Darius's Family for their valiant Deliverer; but I ir-g'd my ſelf more particularly than in all the reſt, upon Paſſages between you and Prince *Artaxerxes*, and de-ng to work ſome Eſteem, and ſome Affection in *Be-ice* toward that Prince, I forgot Modeſty to ſpeak ings to his Advantage, the recital whereof would e been very unſeemly in my Youth, if Love had not uſed me. I heighten'd the Proofs he gave you of his endſhip in Terms that might make him far more ami-e than he is, and which cauſed the Princeſs to inter-t me, ſaying, What, *Arſaces*, was he whom you de-ibe to be ſo obliging, and ſo perfect a Friend to my other, the ſame Prince that was ſlain in the Battel of *ena*? Even he himſelf, (replied I) but make no reckon-of theſe his firſt Actions, ſince in his laſt, you, with-doubt, will have more Cauſe to think well of him, at leaſt to abate part of that Hatred you bear his Fa-y. Ah! (ſaid the Princeſs) how much am I afflicted him, and how much you would have obliged me, *aces*, if you had ſpared me the Grief I feel for his un-ely Death! After theſe Words, I proſecuted my Nar-on, but I did ſo exaggerate the Affection where-h *Artaxerxes* received the Diſcovery of *Orontes* to be *ondates*, the Paſſion wherewith he ſollicited his Siſter his behalf, the care he took to favour him in his Love manner of ways, and in ſhort, the laſt Proofs he gave of his Affection, as well in conteſting with him ut chuſing Sides, as in what he did, and ſuffer'd for Conſideration at the Battel, that when I came to make Relation of his Death, the Princeſs, prepoſſeſſed with Impreſſions I had given her, could not forbear to w how ſenſible ſhe was of it, and looking upon me h Eyes all drown'd in Tears, which a generous Com-ſion made her ſhed; Ah! *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) how el you are in having given me ſo great an Affection a Prince whom you meant to kill! I would it pleaſed Gods he were alive, and that *Oroondates*, by a good t of his Dominions, and even by a good part of Blood, were able to requite his Obligations to

He was resolved, Madam, (replied I coldly) to give him a more glorious Recompence; and if you will give me leave, I'll tell you, Madam, 'twas by the Glory of serving the Princess *Berenice*, he intended to repay *Artaxerxes* for the good Offices he had done him to *Statira*. 'Twas *Artaxerxes*, Madam, whom *Oroondates* had destined for you, and if that poor Prince had been so happy to make himself worthy of you, 'twas by the hope of that double Alliance, he aim'd to settle Peace between your Fathers. How often did that Prince (flatter'd by the Hopes he gave him, and in Love with you already by the Description *Araxes* made) press *Oroondates* to seek some way with him for the obtaining of that Happiness he had propounded? and would have resolved to come disguised into your Country, if he could have forsaken *Oroondates* in Affairs wherein he believ'd himself necessary to him. *Oroondates* is now with *Darius*, belov'd of his Princess, and in a Condition which would not be miserable, if he were not mortally afflicted for the Loss of his dear Friend and Brother. He was slain, poor Prince, but his Fate is too happy, and too glorious, since the recital of his Death has drawn Tears from your fair Eyes, in spite of the Hatred between your Families; he was slain because the Gods knew that perhaps he was not worthy to live for you; and that you would have condemn'd both the Intention of the Prince your Brother, and the Presumption of *Artaxerxes*. His Estate is a thousand times more fortunate by being dead in such a Condition as makes you to esteem his Memory, and to bestow those Tears out of your Compassion for his Loss, than if he had died guilty in your Opinion, or if he had died for the Expiation of such a Fault as that of *Arsaces*. Let's not talk of the Fault of *Arsaces*, (said the Princess, interrupting me) it has nothing to do with the Fortune of *Artaxerxes*: for if that lovely Prince had had those Thoughts for me which my Brother would have infused into him, he had been guilty of no other Faults but of having had too great a compliance for a Friend, and of having blindly given his Affections to a Princess that had not deserved them. If I believ'd, Madam, (replied I, very glad to see her brought to the Point I desired) that you really had those

Inclinations

Inclinations toward *Artaxerxes* which you expreſs, without doubt I ſhould comfort you in the Trouble his Death hath cauſed, and ſhould make his Deſtiny ſo fortunate, that the moſt happy Perſons in the World ſhould have Reaſon to envy it.

What Conſolation can you give (ſaid the Princeſs) for Loſſes that are irreparable? and if you ſhould tell me that my Brother's Fortune is at the higheſt point he ever could have hoped, what will that alter this poor Prince's Condition? ſince in fine he is dead, and that our Wiſhes cannot call him back into the World again. At theſe Words I took Courage, and raiſing the Tone of my Voice, which my Paſſion did extremely animate; But if *Artaxerxes* ſhould be alive, (ſaid I) if he ſhould be in *Scythia*, if he ſhould have ſeen you, if he ſhould have adored you, and did adore you ſtill with Paſſions a thouſand times more violent than thoſe the Prince your Brother endeavoured to inſpire him with; to what Puniſhment would you condemn his Preſumption? *Berenice* aſtoniſhed at this Diſcourſe, looked upon me without being able to reply; but I had not the Power to conceal my ſelf any longer, and taking my time to fall at her Feet while ſhe was in that Trouble; Behold him, Madam, (continued I) behold him, that happy, and that miſerable Prince, whoſe Death has touch'd you, and whoſe Life has diſpleaſed you; either ceaſe to hate *Arſaces*, or elſe ceaſe to love *Artaxerxes*; the one cannot be innocent, ſo long as the other is guilty, and ſure the Gods did not ſave an innocent *Artaxerxes*, to make of him a guilty *Arſaces*. If *Arſaces*'s Paſſion has offended you, that of *Artaxerxes* is ſupported with the Friendſhip, with the Aſſiſtance, and with the Inſpirations of *Orondates*; repay me ſome part of what I did for him, and ſince the Gods will not let me call him now to my Relief, ſuffer me to make uſe of your Friendſhip to him, and of his to me, to obtain your Pardon for the Offence I have committed. I am criminal, ſince I have diſpleaſed you, but my Crime is excuſable by the Cauſe of it, nor have I any Thing conſiderable in me, whereby I can merit of you in the leaſt degree except my Crime; if you look upon me as *Darius*'s Son, remember that *Oron-*

dates was the King of *Scythia's*; and moreover remember, that if I be the Son of *Darius*, I for your ſake abandon *Darius*, I abandon my deſolate Country, my captive Parents, nay, and I abandon even my Honour it ſelf. Be not more obdurate in your Hatred than *Statira*; and if, to conquer your Inclinations, *Artaxerxes* be not ſo worthy to be belov'd as *Oroondates*, let that Defect be ſupplied by the Greatneſs of his Paſſion. I brought forth theſe Words without having the Boldneſs to lift up my Eyes unto my Princeſs's Face, but when I had ended them, I took that liberty, and ſaw hers fixt upon the Ground, with all the Symptoms of the greateſt Aſtoniſhment a Mind can poſſibly fall into. I waited in vain for an Anſwer from her, for a long time ſhe was not able to give me one, and when I had remained ſilent a great while expecting it, I ſee, Madam, (purſued I of a ſudden) that my Temerity will have the Succeſs I ever look'd for from it, and that *Artaxerxes* had done well to die as *Arſaces*, ſince the Knowledge of his true Quality, is not any way able to leſſen his Fault.

No, Madam, it is not juſt that the King of *Perſia's* Son (who has yet done nothing for the Princeſs *Berenice*, that can make her loſe the Inveterateneſs of Paternal Hatred) ſhould hope for any Mercy from her, and if *Oroondates* had better Fortune in his Affection to my Siſter, he was worthy of it, both in regard of his Services, and of the Merit of his Perſon. I will no more alledge his Example to eſtabliſh mine, but will only make uſe of his Friendſhip to me, to obtain your Pardon for my Offence. I for the Expiation of it, will, if you think fit, go and expoſe the Son of the King of *Scythia's* Enemy, to his Reſentment, and by his order I joyfully will loſe a Life which the Gods have miraculouſly prolonged, only to make me ſpend the remainder of it ſo gloriouſly for your Satisfaction; if you diſapprove this kind of Puniſhment, my Hand ſhall execute your Will without Repugnance, and if ſuch Objects are not pleaſing to you, I'll go and ſeek your Reparation, and that I owe to mine own Honour, in falling by the Sword of conquering *Alexander*. Do but let me part from you, Madam, with ſome Tokens of Compaſſion, and if you think Compaſſion too

advantageous

dvantageous for me, let me part from you at leaſt with
is Conſolation, that 'tis rather the War between our
athers, than the Knowledge of *Artaxerxes*'s Paſſion, that
akes you hate him.

During this ſecond Diſcourſe, the Princeſs had time to
ttle her ſelf again, yet not ſo perfectly, but that in her
ace one might ſtill ſee all the Marks of a ſtrong Amaze-
ent. At laſt ſhe raiſed her Eyes from off the Earth,
here ſhe long had kept them fixt, and turning them
pon me with a very baſhful Action, but ſuch an one as
iew'd not ſo much Anger as Confuſion; O *Artaxerxes*!
aid ſhe) to what Extremity do you reduce me, and how
ill you have me to explain my ſelf in the Aſtoniſhment
ou have put me in? Which way can a Princeſs of my
ondition receive Declarations of Love, without her Fa-
ier's Approbation? Which way can I receive the Son of
arius, whoſe Name is ſo odious to my Family? But
ſo what do I not owe to your Birth, and to the Quali-
es of your Perſon; what do I not owe to your Affection,
hereof you give me ſuch dangerous Proofs, and what
o I not owe to the Remembrance of all you did for *Oro-
ndates*? She made a ſtop at theſe Words, as extremely
enſive, and unreſolved, and the Joy I felt in ſeeing her
ſhaken, held me in a ſilence as great as hers. I with
oſt paſſionate Motions obſerved the Alterations of her
ountenance, which by little and little became more gen-
e; in the end, letting her ſelf ſink upon *Cyllenia*'s
oulder, O Gods! (cried ſhe) how hard it is to reſiſt
many Powers, and how little is *Berenice* capable of
ngratitude! Methinks (continued ſhe, having paſſed a
hile) this Confeſſion ſhould be enough to ſatisfy you;
nd that aſſuring you, I will conſider, as I ought, the
ſerit of your Perſon, and that of your Affection, toge-
er with that of your high Friendſhip to my Brother, you
ould have nothing more to deſire of me. No, (replied
quite tranſported with Joy) No, though I were the
reateſt among all the Gods; and my Fortune, by a pro-
igious Effect of your Goodneſs, is far above all the
opes I had conceived. Riſe, Sir, I beſeech you, (added
e Princeſs) and pardon our Ignorance in thoſe Faults it
as made us to commit againſt you.

I was ſo firmly linked unto her Knees, that I was fain to be commanded many times before I could reſolve to yield Obedience; at laſt I was conſtrain'd, and by the ſame Power I was forced to ſit down by her, to relate which way my Life was ſav'd at the Battel of *Selena*, and to tell her thoſe of my Adventures that were unknown to her. I obey'd her with a Satisfaction that can hardly be imagined, and filled my Diſcourſe with ſo many Marks, and with ſo many Circumſtances of my Paſſion, that before I ended it, I found my Princeſs was not utterly inſenſible. Her Inclinations naturally are mild, and pitiful, and without doubt 'twas Pity, and her Friendſhip to the Prince her Brother, that introduced an Affection into her Heart, which was not due to the Merit of *Artaxerxes*. It was to that alone (interrupted *Oroondates*) that *Berenice* gave what will never be refuſed you by any Body, nor could ſhe, I will not ſay without Ingratitude, and Inſenſibility, but even without Stupidity, defend her ſelf againſt ſo many admirable Qualities; ſhe lov'd you before as *Arſaces*; but her Ignorance of your Condition made her conceal from one unknown, what ſhe avowed with Honour to the greateſt Prince in all the World. This is not the Diſcourſe I expected from my dear Brother, (replied *Arſaces*, out of Countenance at *Oroondates*'s Words) but all Things muſt be ſuffered from his Friendſhip, and I may truly proteſt to him, that I ſhould make leſs account of the Title of the greateſt Prince in the World, than of that of *Oroondates*'s Friend. The Company oppoſed the Anſwer *Oroondates* would have returned to theſe Words, and *Arſaces* went on thus with his Narration.

I will not repeat all the Paſſages of our Converſation, and it ſhall ſuffice me to tell you, that before we parted, my fair Princeſs made me know that my Paſſion had not offended her, and permitted me to hope ſhe would not be inſenſible of it. I went away with Raptures of Contentment, which cannot be comprehended but by thoſe that have felt the like; and my Diſquiets for the Miſeries of our Houſe were ſo ſwallow'd up by ſuch an extraordinary Happineſs, that I had ſcarce ſo much as a Remembrance of them left. As ſoon as I ſaw *Theodates*, I made him

him acquainted with my Fortune, and he was touch'd with it in ſuch a manner, that he could hardly have appeared more joyful at what had moſt nearly concern'd his own. He ſtrengthened me in my Hopes by Diſcourſes upon that Subject, and in Concluſion he pleaſingly perſuaded me, that by my Princeſs's Goodneſs, and your Aſſiſtance, my Fortune might become like yours, tho' our Perſons were very different. O Gods! with what Contentment did I cheriſh thoſe ſweet Hopes, and what Thanks did I not return to my Wounds and to my Captivity! Ah Liberty glorioufly loſt! (ſaid I) Ah Blood of *Artaxerxes* moſt fortunately ſpilt, how ſhall I grudge your Loſs, ſince it has brought me ſo great Advantages! O Empires of *Darius*, how little conſiderable is the Poſſeſſion of you, in reſpect of the Poſſeſſion of my Princeſs; and how light is the Glory of commanding Nations, in reſpect of the Glory of obeying *Berenice*! I ſpoke theſe Words, and many others, being tranſported with a Joy which was obſerved in me by my Friends, and they who a few Days before had ſeen me with a languiſhing dejected Face, wondered to find ſo great, ſo ſudden an Alteration.

The next time that I ſaw my Princeſs, ſhe appear'd out of Countenance for the Favour ſhe had granted me; yet did ſhe not expreſs that ſhe intended to repent, but by moſt charming Confirmations, ſettled me in the Hope of my Felicity, and promiſed me in the Preſence of *Cyleniа*, that none of thoſe that pretended to her Affection, ſhould ever obtain any Thing to my Prejudice, and that ſhe would contribute towards my Happineſs, whatſoever I could hope for from a virtuous Princeſs. I deſir'd no more, and well might ſay, I then had been in a Condition, that deſerv'd the Envy of the moſt fortunate Perſons, if my Felicity had not been troubled by the ſad Thoughts of the Miſery of my Country, and by the Fear of thoſe Reproaches I might apprehend. Thy Father (ſaid I to my ſelf) has already loſt two Battels, the better part of his Dominions is in the Power of his Enemy, thy Mother and thy Siſters are Captives to a young Conqueror, who carries them ſhamefully along in Triumph, and perhaps thou art upon the very point of loſing the

greateſt Empire of the World; and canſt thou lie buried here in Love, and canſt thou have other Thoughts than thoſe of ſerving thy Father, in this wretched Condition to which Fortune has reduced him, of delivering thy ſo near Friends from Slavery, of ſaving thy Country, and of ſaving thy Reputation? But (ſaid I again preſently after) can I be able to leave *Berenice* in the beginning of my Happineſs, and of my gallant Hopes, and can I quit a Fortune, which perhaps my Abſence may make me loſe for ever? 'Tis no matter (added I, aſham'd of that laſt Reflection) let us ſave our Reputation, tho' with the loſt of all the reſt; we would prefer *Berenice* before the Conſervation of our Dominions, before the Love we bear our Friends; but we muſt prefer our Honour before *Berenice*, or rather we will preſerve our Honour, that we may not be unworthy of *Berenice*. This indeed was my Reſolution, but I could not bring my ſelf to it without moſt violent Conflicts. My Princeſs, who knew the State of *Perſia*, and that of our Family, did out of her Goodneſs ſuffer with me in my Affliction, and took an Intereſt in our Misfortunes, with Inclinations very different from thoſe of the King her Father, and all the reſt of *Scythia*.

She judg'd very well that I could not ſtay in *Scythia* without Shame; and tho' ſhe then expreſt, that my abode there was not unpleaſing to her, and my departure not indifferent, yet was ſhe too full of Reaſon to oppoſe a Determination, which ſo preſſing a Neceſſity made me take, or to deſire Proofs from my Affection, which might redound to my Diſhonour. After I had her Conſent for my Departure, and by the Aſſiſtance of *Theodates*, had taken ſuch Order as was neceſſary about it, I repreſented to the King the Neceſſity that forc'd me from his Service for a little time, and begg'd leave of him to ſpend a few Months in viſiting my Country, in thoſe Miſeries wherewith it was oppreſſed. The King gave Ear unto my Suit with Trouble, and teſtified his Affection to me by the Difficulties he made in granting me the Liberty I demanded; he did all he poſſibly could to ſtay me, offered me the moſt important Offices of the State, and promiſed to exalt me to ſuch a Height, that my Condition ſhould be

look'd

look'd upon with Envy by the chiefeſt Perſons of the Kingdom; but theſe Conſiderations were too weak to hold me, ſince that of *Berenice* had not been ſtrong enough. Sir, (ſaid I) the leaſt I owe unto my miſerable Country, is to viſit it in its extreme Calamities; I have Friends and Kindred there, to whom I am bound in Duty to lend my Aſſiſtance, and I here am uſeleſs for your Majeſty's Service; I would not leave you, if there were any Occaſion to imploy me in it, and I'll come back again before this Year be at an end, if Death or Impriſonment detain me not. I uſed many other Reaſons, which at laſt won his Conſent unto my Journey, after he had made me reiterate my Promiſe of returning as ſoon as poſſibly I could.

When I had obtained his Permiſſion, and had taken my leave of a great many Friends, whom my good Fortune had gained me in the Court of *Scythia*, I paid my Reſpects unto my Princeſs. Only *Theodates* and *Cyllenin* were admitted to our Entertainment, and we wanted no Pretences to cover that ſecret Converſation. O Gods! how were my Sorrows ſweetned, when I ſaw Tears in the Eyes of my fair Princeſs, and how great Conſolation did I receive from her charming Words, which aſſured me that I was not indifferent to her, and that I was not afflicted alone for our Separations! I depart from you, Madam, (ſaid I to her) becauſe my cruel Deſtiny ordains it ſo, and you would have a juſt Occaſion to repent the Favour you have ſhewn me, if I could indure to live with Infamy; but this hard Neceſſity, which drags my Body out of *Scythia*, cannot pull away my Heart from thence, ſo much as for a moment; and in the remoteſt Places of all *Perſia*, *Arſaces* can never be far from you. I go full of Reſentment againſt the Uſurper of our Dominions, the Murderer of our Subjects, and the Perſecutor of our Family, but I am more incenſed againſt the Enemy of my Repoſe, and againſt the Enemy that ſeparates me from my Princeſs; this Effect of his Hatred is more bitter to me than all the reſt, and arms me againſt him with a more lawful Anger; if it pleaſe the Gods I fall under his victorious Arms, I ſhall at leaſt have this Glory before my Death, that I was owned by *Berenice*; and if

ſuffer me to return hither a Conqueror, or deveſted mpire, I'll bring back the Remnant of my Life, be hat it may, and lay it at her Feet, as a Tribute due er alone; each moment of this cruel Abſence will in Age to me, and an Age of moſt rigorous Tor-s; but if you beſtow any of them upon the Remem-ce of *Arſaces*, his Sorrows (which might bring him s Grave) will loſe part of their Force, and that wledge will comfort me in my Diſaſters with a moſt erful Conſolation. I ſhall receive no ſmall one by ight of my dear Brother, and if the God's be pleaſed I yet may find him with *Darius*, the Miſeries of Condition will be abated, and I ſhall give him an ount of your Friendſhip toward him, and of what have done for me, out of his Conſideration. Then ne Heavens permit, we'll return together into *Scy-*, and I by his Interceſſion will beg the continuance this Felicity, which mine Enemies have inter-ted.

n the mean time, O moſt lovely Princeſs, give me but Aſſurance from your fair Mouth, whereby I may pre-l to the Glory of your Remembrance, and hope by r Command, that this tyrannous Abſence, tho' it ba-me out of *Scythia*, baniſhes me not out of your nory. I will remember you for ever, (ſaid the ceſs, wiping away ſome obliging Tears) and what ance ſoever ſeparates us, you ſhall never be abſent n *Berenice*'s Mind; Ideas that are not eaſily ſettled t, are not eaſily to be blotted out of it; and in rt, you are too conſiderable to me all manner of ways, ear that I can forget you, ſo long as you remember

Go *Arſaces*, ſince whether you will or no, there is a eſſity of it; go where you are call'd by Reaſons ich cannot oppoſe; but how great ſoever your Reſent-it is againſt *Alexander*, forget not that I deſire your urn, that I enjoin it you by all the Power you have en me over you, and that you cannot thruſt your ſelf o unneceſſary Dangers, without putting your ſelf in ard of diſobeying me, of diſpleaſing me, and ſince ſpite of Modeſty I confeſs it to you) of making me extreme-

extremely unfortunate. O *Arſaces!* (cried I) O *Artaxerxes!* how happy is thy Fate, and how few Enemies will there be that can oppoſe thy Return, while thou art animated by theſe glorious Hopes! Well, Madam, (continued I, kneeling down before her, and taking one of her fair Hands, upon which, by the Indulgence ſhe had toward me in that Occaſion, I held my Lips faſt cemented a good while) ſince you do me Favours which are above the lawful Hope of all Men living, I ſhould be much too blame if I could deſire more, and if I could fear that the Perſecutions of *Arſacomes*, and the Credit of *Stratonice*, could ſhake the Courage of my Princeſs. Her Promiſes put me into Security, and 'tis to her Goodneſs that I abandon a Life, which ſhall never depend but upon her alone. I ſaid many other Things which Time has razed out of my Memory, and after I had received all the modeſt Teſtimonies of Affection I could demand, I took my leave; yet not with ſo much Conſtancy, but that my Grief broke forth into ſeveral Actions, which upon another Occaſion, and for another Subject than *Berenice*, would have paſſed for very great Weakneſſes. This Conſolation I had, that my Princeſs did not appear inſenſible, and that ſhe accompanied the Sorrow that tranſported me, with many Tears, and many ſigns of her Compaſſion. I parted from her on this manner, and being retired from *Theodates*, I prepar'd my ſelf to go from *Iſſedon* the next Morning by break of Day. Generous *Theodates*, whoſe Virtue truly is one of the higheſt, and moſt conſiderable of this Age, perſiſted in the Deſign of accompanying me in my Voyage, but I would not conſent to it; and knowing how uſeful he might be to me by being near *Berenice*, during my Abſence, I pray'd him to continue in the Court: He was the only Man to whom I was known in *Scythia*, the only Man that knew the Love I bore the Princeſs, the only Man whom *Berenice* could truſt, and the only Man by whoſe means I could hear from her. Theſe Reaſons which I repreſented to him, oblig'd him to ſtay behind, knowing he might do me a great deal more Service there than by going with me. Yet would he not leave me until I was come to the Haven of *Hypleon*, where I intended to imbarque upon

the *Euxine* Sea, to enter into *Perſia* by the way of *Byzantium*. We departed therefore from *Iſſedon*, taking our way toward thoſe Provinces of *Scythia* which are waſh'd by the *Boriſthenes*, and after many Days Journeys, without any conſiderable Encounter, we arriv'd at the Haven where we were to part. We could not do it without many Tears on both ſides, and I was ſo ſenſible of the Obligations I had to that noble Prince, that I could not leave him without an exceſſive Trouble. Dear *Theodates* (ſaid I) your Priſoner is going away upon his Parole; but he will return if the Gods permit, and for his Ranſom will offer you all the Dominions of the King his Father, and this Life which you ſo generouſly have acquired to your ſelf. Sir, (replied *Theodates*) I value not Empires in reſpect of the Friendſhip wherewith you Honour me, and whereof you have given me ſuch real Proofs by mine own Safety, and what Command ſoever you ſhould lay upon me, I could never be able to leave you, if I were not uſeful to your Service in this Country. Theſe Words were mutually accompanied with Endearments, which at laſt our parting ſore'd us to break off.

I took but a very ſmall Train along with me, compoſed of ſuch Servants as I had received from *Theodates*, who had made Trial of their Fidelity, and believ'd that I might ſafely truſt them. I imbarqued aboard a Veſſel which had been got ready by *Theodates*'s Orders, and which was to make the ſhorteſt and ſecureſt cut into *Aſia*. Having hoiſed Sail, we began our Voyage very quietly; the Sea had never been more calm than at that time, but my Mind was far from enjoying ſuch Tranquility, and our Ship was much leſs toſſed with Waves, than my Heart was by my reſtleſs, cruel Thoughts; the Abſence of *Berenice*, and the Deſolation of our Family, came both at once into my Mind, yet neither could find a Room there, without giving me equal matter of Affliction. Alas, (ſaid I) perhaps at this very moment, *Berenice*, by the cruel Command of the King her Father, is compell'd to receive the Affection of *Arſacomes*. Alas, (continued I) perhaps this very Day *Darius* fights his laſt Battel, and with it loſes the remainder of his Dominions.

Dominions. O Gods, (cried I) muſt I leave *Berenice*, and abandon her to the Mercy of the Enemies of our Houſe, and of my particular Enemies? O Gods, (ſaid I again) muſt *Darius* fall, with all that belong to him, without receiving Aſſiſtance from his own Son? I ſpent ſome Days in this Agitation of my Thoughts; but in the end I was withdrawn from it by a cruel Encounter which hindred the Effect of all my Reſolutions, and cauſed part of that Shame, which I am not able to blot out. 'Twas very unadviſely done of us to go by the way of *Byzantium*, and we were not informed that the *Byzantians* with the Governour *Zopirio*, and they of *Pontus* with their Governour *Arimbas*, had of late begun to make Excurſions at Sea, and to uſe the *Scythians* that fell into their Hands with all manner of Acts of Hoſtility. In effect, there was no War declared between the *Scythians* and them, and 'twas only Covetouſneſs that inſpir'd *Zopirio* and his Brother *Arimbas*, with a Deſign of Piracy, robbing Paſſengers, taking Priſoners, and ſeeking means to inrich themſelves by ſuch ſhameful barbarous ways. I had the ill Fortune to be encountred by them, and when we had leaſt thought of any ſuch matter, we ſaw our ſelves aſſaulted by eight great Ships which ſurrounded us on every ſide, and depriv'd us of all means to defend our ſelves; yet did I do as much as poſſibly I could, and both my Words and Example would have incourag'd thoſe that were with me to make Reſiſtance, but their Weakneſs diſhearten'd them ſo, that 'twas impoſſible for me to make them take Arms againſt ſo great a number of Enemies. The *Thracians* came aboard us on every ſide, and though I defended my ſelf with Courage enough, and laid ſome of the boldeſt of them at my Feet, I was ſo inviron'd, and ſo oppreſſed with multitude, that all my Reſiſtance was to no purpoſe. They ſeiz'd upon me behind, threw me down and diſarm'd me, and I think thoſe ſavage Enemies, exaſperated by the Death of their Companions, would have taken away my Life, but that they fear'd to diſpleaſe him that commanded them, who believ'd he ſhould get a conſiderable Booty by taking me. I was bound and carried before *Arimbas*, who commanded thoſe Ships; he found ſome-

thing

thing in my Face that oblig'd him to uſe me a little leſs cruelly than he intended, or than his cuſtom was, and having look'd upon me with ſome ſhew of Wonder; Either (ſaid he) thou lov'ſt thy Life but little, or elſe thou art the boldeſt of all Men living, in having dared to ſtand upon thy Defence alone againſt ſo great a number of Enemies. I never was thine Enemy that I know of, (anſwered I, without being daunted at his Words) and I am call'd by ſuch preſſing Commands of Honour, to Places whither thou ſtopp'ſt my Paſſage, that if thou art generous, thou without doubt wilt reſtore me to my Liberty. 'Tis not from *Barbarians* (replied *Arimbas*) that the *Greeks* need to learn Generoſity; never hope for the Liberty thou demand'ſt, but believe 'tis no ſmall Favour to let thee live, after thou haſt ſo well deſerv'd to die, for having kill'd my Men, and for having ſo raſhly made Oppoſition. I ſaw very well there was no thought of working upon him by a Senſe of Honour, and ſo I preſently tried another way; I am not thy Priſoner in a fair War, (ſaid I) but if my Liberty can be bought with Treaſure, I promiſe thee ſo much, that thou hardly canſt deſire more, and I ingage my Honour with my Word, that if thou wilt free me, I'll ſend thee a Ranſom that would be conſiderable enough for one of the greateſt Princes in the World. Theſe Words which I ſpoke very imprudently, wrought a very different Effect from what I hoped, and were in part the Cauſe of my long Captivity. *Arimbas* believ'd either by my Words, or by ſome other Tokens, that I was no ordinary Perſon, and upon that Belief propoſing exceſſive Recompences to himſelf, he was gladder of his Prize, and more careful to keep me than before. Theſe Treaſures thou promiſeſt me, (anſwered he) may regain thy Liberty, but hope not to obtain it upon thy Word, for thou ſhalt ſtay with us till thou procure thy Ranſom thou haſt propoſed. At theſe Words he commands them to unbind me, but he made me be carried into a Cabbin with Guards that ſuffer'd me not to ſtir out of it. The next Day we put into a Harbour of the Province whereof he was Governour for *Alexander*, and near unto a Town called *Sympa*, I was impriſon'd in a Caſtle under a very ſtrict Guard; they

left

left me some of those Servants I had receiv'd from *Theodates*; the rest, and all they that were taken with us, were kept as Slaves. Do but judge, dear Brother, and you dear Friends, in what a Condition I was by a Captivity so unseasonable, and so contrary to the Resolutions I had taken; truly I was even like to have died with Grief; and when I had in vain attempted many several ways to recover my Liberty, I was upon the very point of killing my self with my own Hand. What, (said I) shall I neither succour *Darius*, nor see the Princess *Berenice*? O Gods! if you would not suffer me to assist my Father, why did you not let me enjoy the sight of my Princess? and if you needs would have me to leave *Berenice*, why do you not permit me to serve *Darius* to the last drop of that Blood I owe him? Since I must not have both those Happinesses together, why will you not at least afford me the Consolation of one of them? Ah no, I see you mean to overwhelm me equally with Grief and Shame, and not being satisfied that I die with Sorrow for parting with my Princess, you will have to die also with the Reproach of having seen our Empire lost, and our Family destroy'd without ever drawing Sword in their Defence. These were my ordinary Meditations, and in these cruel Thoughts I could find no manner of Consolation. Either let *Arimbas* kill me (said I to my Keepers) or let him set me at Liberty; in the Condition of my Fortune, Captivity is worse to me than Death it self, and I shall be less his Enemy, if he dispatch me out of the way, than if he keep me any longer. All these Words were to no purpose, and *Arimbas* sent me no other Answer, but that when he saw those Treasures for my Ransom, which I had made him hope for at my being taken, he would give me my Liberty, and not before. This cruel Obstinacy of *Arimbas* drove me into despair; I had none about me but *Scythian* Servants, who could do me no Service with *Darius*, where they were not at all acquainted, and to whom also I was unwilling to Declare the Truth of my Birth. To discover it to *Arimbas* was a great deal more unfit; he was both a Subject, and a Creature of *Alexander's*, and if he had known me to be *Darius* his Son, my Captivity would

would certainly have been as long as my Life. In these Considerations, all I could do was to employ all my Courage to take a little Patience, and hope that the Gods, who had then declar'd themselves Enemies to our House, would mitigate their Anger, and lessen the Hatred they expressed against *Darius* his miserable Family. 'Twas in that Place, dear Friends, I lingred out my tedious Days, while you were fighting for my Interests, and 'twas in that Prison I saw a whole Year run out, which seem'd longer to me than all the rest of my Life.

O *Darius*, (cried I often) by what a strange Disaster art thou abandon'd by thy Son in thy cruel Misfortunes? Wretched Man that he is, he can give thee no manner of Assistance, but is reduced to serve thee only with his Wishes, while *Oroondates* fights without question by thy Side, and ingages himself in thy Miseries, with more Affection than he could in what most nearly concerned himself: O my deareſt Brother, (continued I) why am I not with you now? and why can I not at least keep you Company in those Dangers you so nobly run into for my sake? From these Thoughts which my Duty inspired me with, I fell into those my Love suggested, and out of the Grief which was caused in me by the former, into the Rage occasion'd by the latter.

But shall I never see you again, *Berenice*, (cried I, quite transported) and will not the Gods, (who for some Offences are exasperated against the House of *Persia*) be contented that I lose my Inheritance, that I lose my neareſt Friends, that I lose the King my Father, and that I lose mine Honour with them, unless I lose *Berenice* also? I liv'd on this manner, buried in the Depth of my Sorrows, when by the Report of them that kept me, I receiv'd a most intolerable surcharge; They told me News of poor *Darius*, but alas, the saddeſt that yet had come unto mine Ear; I heard, that having march'd from *Babylon* with three hundred thousand fighting Men, he had given *Alexander* Battel near *Arbella*, with the same Succeſs as in the two former ones, that he had lost the greateſt part of his Men, and with them the Hope of maintaining

maintaining his Dominions, being reduc'd to ſeek his Safety in a ſad Retreat, with a very ſmall Remnant of his Forces; that it was believ'd he had taken the way toward *Media*, but in ſo weak a Condition, that no Body thought he ever could be able to raiſe a ſufficient Power to diſpute the Empire of *Aſia* any longer againſt *Alexander*. Oh, Brother, how infinitely did this woful News torment me, and how great need had I of all my Courage, to keep me from ſinking under ſo heavy an Affliction! O *Darius*, (cried I) why can I not be with thee in thy Flight at leaſt, ſince I could not accompany thee in the Battel? I would ſtrive to comfort thee in thy Misfortunes, and not having been able to fight for the Conſervation of thy Empire, I would fight at leaſt for the Safety of thy Perſon. Then Brother, as all fatal Objects repreſented themſelves to my Remembrance, I was afraid leſt you ſhould be in the Number of thoſe whom *Alexander*'s happy Deſtiny had cauſed to fall under the *Macedonian* Armies; and in this Thought, after having given you a Flood of Tears, I wiſhed with all my Heart to have been in your Place, to have receiv'd your Wounds, and to have contributed to the Preſervation of your Life, with the loſs of mine own. I ſhould never have done, if I ſhould relate all my Diſcontents at large, but I'll ſhorten the Recital of them as much as poſſibly I can. A whole Year was already run out from the Day that I was taken, when both in the Face, and Actions of the Captain of the Caſtle, who was the chief Commander of thoſe that had me in Cuſtody, I perceiv'd an extraordinary Affection, and a very great Compaſſion of my Misfortunes. He naturally had a love to Virtue, and had reſiſted thoſe Inclinations out of a Senſe of his Duty to *Arimbas*; but in the end, having ſeen how unjuſtly he detain'd me, and having found ſomething in my Perſon, which he thought worthy of his Affection, he reſolv'd to make uſe of his Power for my Deliverance, believing he ſhould not be very faulty in giving a Man his Liberty, from whom it had not been taken by any Right of War. With this Deſign coming to me one Day when I was extremely dejected by the Remembrance of our laſt Loſſes, Sir, (ſaid he to me) comfort your ſelf, your Captivity

ſhall

ſhall not be much longer, and your Virtue has found a Perſon amongſt us, who both can diſcern it, and will hazard himſelf to ſerve it. Tho' I was exceedingly ſurprized at this Diſcourſe, I could not ſuſpect that Man of any ill Deſign, and judging that my Condition could not be worſe than it was already, I believ'd I ought not to neglect any way that might be for the recovering of my Liberty. O *Criton*, (anſwered I) how merciful you will be, if you uſe your Endeavours to help me, both Gods and Men will recompence your Goodneſs, and I am of ſuch Quality, that I dare ſay your Condition will be better with me than with *Arimbas*.

Depend upon the Aſſurance I give you, (replied *Criton*) that you ſhall not be long a Priſoner, and truſt me for the Management of the Buſineſs. I will truſt you always (ſaid I) both with my Life and Liberty, and I proteſt to you, that I would not expoſe you to any Danger for their Preſervation, if in the preſent State of my Affairs, my eternal Shame were not link'd to my Captivity. *Criton* would hold no longer Diſcourſe with me at that time, for fear of giving ſome Suſpicion of his Deſign; but within a few Days after he effected it very happily, and having made thoſe of my Guard drunk, whom he had leaſt Confidence in, when they were faſt aſleep, he came with the reſt into my Chamber in the dead of Night, and bringing Arms for me, and for the two *Scythians* that ſerv'd me, he took the Keys of the Caſtle, and let us out without any Difficulty, then getting upon good Horſes which he had cauſed to be held in a readineſs about a hundred Paces from the Gate, he reſolv'd to follow my Fortune, having by that Action loſt all hope of Favour from *Arimbas*.

When I ſaw my ſelf at Liberty, I felt all the Joy my ſad Condition could be capable of, and receiv'd a ſweet Conſolation by the Hope I had that I ſhould give my Father the laſt Aſſiſtance he could hope for from his Son in the downfal of his Houſe. I promiſed *Criton* that I would not be ingrateful for the good Office he had done me, and that I would reward him ſo well for it, that he never ſhould have Occaſion to repent. We took our Journey toward *Media*, whither they ſaid *Darius* was retreated, and

and travelled all the remainder af that firſt Night with ſo much ſpeed, that before break of Day, we were gotten far enough, not to fear falling any more into the Power of *Arimbas*; yet did we avoid the great Highways ſo long as we were in the Province he commanded, but when once we were out of it, we rode with leſs Apprehenſion, and I for my part with ſome Hopes of ſeeing the Relicks of our deſolated Houſe again, and with an ardent Deſire, either to diſpute the Empire yet with *Alexander*, or to give up my Life to his prevailing Fortune. He ſhall die, (ſaid I to my ſelf) that unjuſt Conqueror, that wrongful Uſurper of our Dominions ſhall either fall, or kill *Artaxerxes* with that Hand, which has been the Deſtruction of all our Family. Perhaps he is not Immortal, tho' hitherto he have been Invincible, nor are we perhaps ſo utterly forſaken by the Gods, but that we may force a Victory out of his Hands, which the cowardly, effeminate *Perſians* have ſo faintly diſputed with him; doubtleſs thou wert valiant enough, poor *Darius*, to trample down that Enemy, if thou hadſt commanded more generous Forces, and nothing but their want of Courage has made thee loſe an Empire, which is not much to be lamented, ſince it extended it ſelf over none but ſuch mean ſpirited People. Perhaps there are yet ſome Corners of thy vaſt Territories, where thou mayſt find Men that will ſhew themſelves more truly to be Men, and 'tis with them *Artaxerxes* may poſſibly regain part of thy Loſſes, and blot out part of thy diſhonour. This thought had hardly given me a little Comfort, when preſently I fell into a Conſideration of the State I then was in, and to my Confuſion ſaw thoſe ridiculous Hopes all vaniſh in a moment. Ah weak, abuſed *Artaxerxes*, (ſaid I again) with what fond Imaginations doſt thou flatter thy ſelf? Thou thinkeſt not of the Revolution of thy Fortune, thou conſider'ſt not that thou haſt loſt all, that thou haſt no Country left to defend, and that thou haſt no Men left to oppoſe that Conqueror, whom thy Father with innumerable Thouſands, and with his whole Forces united was not able to reſiſt; Stifle, ah ſtifle theſe vain Hopes, and limit them all within the Deſign of either making *Alexander*'s Perſon to

run ſome Hazard, or of burying thy ſelf in the Ruins of thy Family. Theſe were the Thoughts wherewith I was tormented; but, O Gods! O Gods! they quickly yielded place to far more cruel ones, and ſcarce had I travelled three Days Journey, when I ſaw both my Expedition bounded, and my Deſigns overthrown by the doleful News of poor *Darius*'s Death; I heard that lamentable End, alas, and 'tis with Shame that I confeſs I heard it without dying. They told me, how that great and much to be deplored Prince was fall'n by the horrible Perfidiouſneſs of his own Subjects, and had given up both Life and Empire to his Enemy. Altho' this ſad Relation did not abſolutely kill me, yet certainly it put me into a Condition little different from Death, and *Criton* with the reſt that accompanied me ſaw me in ſuch a Caſe, as made them believe they had unprofitably hazarded themſelves to ſerve me. The Recital of thoſe Swoonings I fell into at this fatal Narration, of my Sighs, of my Tears, and of my mournful Complaints, would but weary you, and be very difficult for me to make; all that Sorrow for the loſs of a Father, who had moſt dearly lov'd me, whoſe Perſon was exceeding great and amiable; for that of a Mother who went a while before him, and who ended her Life in her Captivity; for that of an Empire, which might almoſt be call'd the Empire of the World, added to my Shame of having done nothing for them, of not having ſhed one drop of Blood for their Conſervation, and of not having given them any of thoſe Aſſiſtances which they received from the meaneſt of their Allies, can produce in the moſt tender Soul imprinted it ſelf ſo violently in mine, that it was like to have ſeparated it from my Body; and I may well proteſt to you before all the Gods, that nothing but the Remembrance of *Berenice* kept me from my Grave, and hindred me from going then to ſeek them after their Death, whom I had ſo ignominiouſly abandoned during their Life. Thou now art free (ſaid I) glorious *Arſaces*, now thou art free, thou no longer haſt any Father to aſſiſt, thou no longer haſt any Country to defend, or to ſay better, thou no longer haſt any Honour to preſerve; all Things contribute now to thy Repoſe: But, O Gods! how much

were

were the moſt cruel Deaths to be preferr'd before this Repoſe! and how much better had it been for thee to have been really ſlain in the Battle of *Selena*, than to have ſhamefully out-liv'd *Darius*, and to have ſeen the Ruin of thy Houſe with ſo much Indifferency? What a horrible Reproach to thee is the Blood of ſo many thouſand Men as loſt their Lives in thy Quarrel? thou wert fighting againſt the *Nomades*, while the *Perſians* fell under the *Macedonian* Arms, and thou wert fighting at *Berenice*'s Feet, while thy Mother, thy Siſters, and all thy Family, lay ſighing under the Chains of fortunate *Alexander*! O Shame, which all the Blood of *Aſſyrie* can never be able to waſh out! O Baſeneſs, which all my Love to *Berenice* can never be able to excuſe! I tormented my ſelf on this manner in my Bed, whither my Sorrow had confin'd me, and where my Grief was ſo extremely violent, that it had put me into a Fever for many Days.

After I had deplored my Misfortunes in the moſt mournful Terms my Miſery could ſuggeſt, and that I had ſpent ſome Days in Lamentations, I began to think what I ſhould reſolve to do with my ſelf: Shall I not go (ſaid I) and find out *Alexander* in the midſt of his victorious Forces, which triumph over our Diſaſters? and ſince the Anger of the Gods has ſo decreed that I no longer have Men to give him Battel, ſhall I not go and execute with my Hand alone, what the Weakneſs of my Condition, and the Loſs of our Dominions will not ſuffer me to do at the Head of an Army? Since I cannot revenge *Darius* by the Blood of the *Macedonians*, ſhall I not revenge him by the Blood of *Alexander*? and if I die in the Attempt, ſhall I not bear my Friends Company with the leaſt Shame that I can poſſibly undergo? Shall I not run (ſaid I again) after that Parricide *Beſſus*? and ſhall I not make my way thro' the midſt of thoſe faithleſs Monſters that take part with him, to pierce with a thouſand Wounds the ingrateful and diſloyal Heart of that horrible Murderer of his King; Is not that the firſt Satisfaction I owe unto my Father's Ghoſt? and can I, while *Beſſus* and *Narbazanes* are alive, have other Thoughts than thoſe of the rigorous Puniſhments that are due to their perfidious Treaſon?

But,

But, O Gods! (concluded I) shall I never see *Berenice* more? and if (as it is very probable) I fall in one of these Enterprizes, shall I die without giving my Princess the last Assurances of my Fidelity? Shall I have lost my nearest Friends, my Country, my Reputation, shall I have lost all for her unprofitably? Having proposed no other Fruit, no other Consolation to my self for so many Misfortunes but that alone, shall I lose it also with the rest? and shall I have oblig'd that lovely Princess to give me Marks of an Affection, which ought to be more dear to me than the Possession of all *Asia*, only to abandon her for ever? This last Thought put me into a Perplexity, which for a long time made me incapable of taking any Resolutions, and represented Motives to me which were powerful enough to withdraw me from those I had proposed before. *Alexander* (said I) is a generous Enemy, who has prosecuted the Ruin of thy House only by glorious Ways, and dost thou think of murdering him shamefully, who openly, and at the Sword's point, makes himself Master of the whole Earth by his Valour alone? Yes, of murdering him, for unless thou march against him by an open War, thou canst not procure any Satisfaction from his single Person but by an Assassination; thou canst not hope for an equal Combate with him, for though he should be so generous as to grant it to thy Quality, and to thy just Resentments, he never will be able to make those that are about him consent to it, amongst whom there are many thousands that would save him from that Danger by hazarding themselves. Thou canst not therefore execute thy Vengeance by any Means but such as are most ignominious, and perhaps that without effecting it, thou shalt die in a Design which will be most unworthy of the Memory of *Darius*'s Son, and which will blast it with a perpetual Infamy.

If thou run after those Parricides, 'tis true, that against them all ways of Revenge are justifiable, but they are Things too mean for *Artaxerxes*, and the Destiny of *Bessus*, and of *Nabarzanes*, would be too glorious, if they should end their reproachful Days by the Hand of their King's Son. Those Monsters ought to end their Lives in Torments,

ments, and it concerns *Alexander* to profecute them, and with their Blood to wash away the ſtain wherewith they have blemiſh'd his Reputation. Rather return into *Scythia*, where thou haſt left thy utmoſt Hopes, and where thou haſt left thy very Soul; forget the Greatneſs of thy Birth, to ſerve thy Love, and the Neceſſity of thy Affairs, and employ whatſoever the Gods have given thee that is conſiderable, to make thy ſelf conſider'd by the King of *Scythia*; when thou ſhalt have done him Services of the Nature of thoſe *Darius* receiv'd from *Oroondates*, he'll be the moſt ingrateful of all Men living if he refuſe thee his Aſſiſtance, and if he give thee not an Army to march againſt that Enemy of the whole Earth, and againſt that inſatiable Conqueror, who quickly will paſs from our Territories into his. Perhaps thy Services, and the Remembrance of our Miſeries, will raze out of his Mind the Hatred he bears thy Family, and that he will not diſdain thee for his Son-in-Law, when thou ſhalt have gain'd his Affection ſo far as to venture the Diſcovery of thy true Quality. He, without doubt, is of a Royal Mind as well as of a Royal Birth; and if my dear *Oroondates* be alive, if the Gods bring him back into *Scythia*, thou maiſt hope for all Things from that deareſt Brother, and uniting thy ſelf with him, whoſe Intereſts will always be inſeparable from thine, thou with the whole Forces of *Scythia* maiſt oppoſe, and like a King's Son oppoſe that pitileſs Deſtroyer of the Houſe of *Perſia*. Thou at the Head of thoſe thy dear Brother's Armies maiſt demand Reparation of the Injuries he has done thee; and if it pleaſe the Gods thou fall in thoſe Occaſions, 'twill at leaſt be with more Glory, than if thou ſhouldſt leave thy Life among the Javelins of his Guards, in attempting to ſtab him in his Bed.

This way without queſtion thou ſhalt labour for recovery of thy Reputation, and, which is more, thou ſhalt labour for it in ſeeing *Berenice* again, without whom thou canſt not live, and without whom thou art not permitted to die; thou at her feet maiſt find Conſolation for all thy Loſſes, and ſhe will tell thee nothing but Truth, if ſhe ſay her Affection is to be preferr'd before all the Empires that were *Darius*'s. Fear not to appear yet before her,

her, ſhe is too generous and too worthy a Siſter of *Orondates*, to regard the fall of thy Houſe, and to look upon him as an exil'd Prince, and as a Prince diveſted of all his Inheritance, whom at our laſt being together ſhe conſider'd as the future Monarch of all *Aſia*; thy Miſeries will rather work Compaſſion in her, than any Contempt of thy Perſon, and thou wert unworthy of the Marks thou haſt received of her Affection, if thou couldſt ſuſpect her to be of ſo baſe a Humour, and of a Humour ſo different from her Brother's.

In theſe laſt Thoughts I found a great deal of Comfort, and after I had diſputed yet three or four Days about the Choice of which Reſolution I ſhould take, I in the end ſuffer'd my Mind to be over-ſwayed by theſe laſt Conſiderations, or to ſpeak more truly, I let my ſelf be guided by my Love, which, making all other Deſigns odious to me, ſhew'd me Facility and Advantage only in that which was ſubſervient to it, and which it had propounded. 'Twas therefore by the Power it had over me, that I was won to thoſe Probabilities I have mention'd to you, and that I reſolved to return into *Scythia*. *Criton*, who had totally given me his Affection, and to whom I already bore a very great one, would not forſake me; beſides him, I took only the two *Scythians* that were with me in Priſon, he having before diſmiſſed the Guards that had aſſiſted in my Deliverance, whom we rewarded as well as we were able at that time. We departed from the Town where I had ſtaid ever ſince the hearing of that fatal News, and took our Journey towards *Scythia*, by a very different Way from that I came, for fear of falling again into the Power of *Arimbas*. I believ'd we might paſs more ſecurely thro' *Hyrcania*, and thro' the Country of the *Maſſagetes*, and that was the Road we went, without committing our ſelves to that inconſtant Element, upon which I had fallen into that cruel Captivity, which made the greateſt part of all my Diſcontents. We met no Obſtacle in our Journey; and tho' I began to truſt *Criton* very much, yet would I not let him know me to be other than one *Arſaces* a *Bactrian*, who by his good Fortune had merited the Affection of the King of *Scythia*, and who in that Country might be able to ſettle him in

a

a much better Condition than that he had liv'd in under *Arimbas*. 'Twas not to him alone that I meant to be so reserv'd, for I resolv'd never any more to take upon me the Name of *Artaxerxes*, so peculiar to the Kings and Princes of *Persia*, till I had recovered Hopes of rising again to the Throne of *Darius*. And indeed I was then inform'd, that the Traitor *Bessus* had already usurp'd it, and that he made himself be honour'd as a King in *Bactria*, under the Name of *Artaxerxes*.

When we had passed the *Araxis*, crossed through the Country of the *Massagetes*, and gone over the Mount *Imaus*, we entred into the Province of the *Essedons*, and with great many Days Journeys drew near to the *Metropolis* City of all *Scythia*. Being come within two Days riding of it, and meeting Passengers upon the Way from thence, I enquired of them what News there was at Court, and trembled as I ask'd the Question, for fear of hearing what would be unpleasing, or rather mortal to me. Sir, (answered one of them) all Things are very quiet at Court; *Arsacomes* has still his former Authority, and the King, fearing to displease the Queen his Wife, with whom he still is passionately in Love, suffers him to pretend to the Princess *Berenice*, or rather to persecute her, that generous Princess, not having hitherto been able to bend her self to any compliance with his Desires, and making loud Complaints, because he tolerates the Presumption of his Subject; they are the Princess's own Words, for as for our parts we dare not to speak of that Business in those Terms, he having made himself so potent, that there are none now in *Scythia* but Slaves to the Greatness of his Fortune. Yet hath his Example been like to cause the Destruction of others, who knowing their Quality to be equal to his, have thought they might raise their Pretensions as high as he.

Amongst them, *Cydaris* Prince of the *Tauroscythians* and *Agathyrsians*, being fallen in love with the Princess, suffered himself to be so blind with his Passion, that he imprudently declar'd it to the King, either being encouraged by his Indulgence to that of *Arsacomes*, or else not being able to resist the Violence of his own. The King

was

was ſo diſpleaſed at ſuch a Motion, that he could not diſſemble his Reſentment of it, and anſwer'd *Cydaris* with Words ſo full of Sharpneſs and Contempt, that he not being able to endure them, forgot the Reſpect he ow'd the King, and reply'd in very inſolent and injurious Terms; whereat he being highly offended, cauſed him to be ſeiz'd on, and put into a Dungeon, nor had he ſpared his Life but at the requeſt of the Queen, and of the Princeſs her ſelf who interceded for it. 'Tis not above a Week ſince he came out of Priſon; but when he was ſet at liberty, he was commanded to leave the Court for ever, and from that time he has never been ſeen at *Iſſedon*. This Buſineſs has made ſuch a Noiſe at Court, that there is now no talk of any thing elſe, and this is the freſheſt and moſt conſiderable News that I can tell you thence. I found a marvellous Conſolation in this Diſcourſe, and making no great Account of the Buſineſs of *Cydaris*, I was ſo extremely ſatisfied to hear of my Princeſs's Perſeverance in deſpiſing *Arſacomes*'s Affection. I went on my Journey the Remainder of that Day, and the next following, before the Sun had run out half his Courſe, I from a Hill diſcover'd the higheſt Towers of that moſt precious City, where I had left the better part of my Soul with *Berenice*. Then I began to feel Motions of Paſſion which ſeem'd to have forſaken me for ever, methought I breath'd a ſweeter Air than I was wont, and Fortune, who by ſuch ſad Effects had declar'd her ſelf ſo cruel an Enemy to our Houſe, was contented at that time to change her Countenance in favour of me, and not being able to reſtore me what ſhe had taken away, was willing to ſweeten my Sorrows with the moſt gentle Uſage I could receive from her. It was but juſt, that he who had loſt ſo much, ſhould by her Aſſiſtance keep the only Thing he had left, and the only Thing which he preferred before all thoſe ſhe had unjuſtly robbed him of.

I was within two hundred Furlongs of *Iſſedon*, when at the entrance into a Wood which I was to paſs thro', I heard the Sound of many Inſtruments uſual for the Chace; and ſeeing divers Men paſs by at that time, I learned from them that the King was hunting in that Wood,

Wood, and that he was accompanied by the Queen and he Princeſs *Berenice*, who, becauſe it was a very fair Day, had been deſirous to take their part of that Diverſion. At this News my Heart leapt within me, not being able to hear ſpeak of my Princeſs without an inward Diſturbance, nor to prepare my ſelf for that Sight without moſt paſſionate Motions. Yet did I doubt whether I ſhould go to the King while he was abroad there at his ſport, or whether, as I before intended, I ſhould go unknown to *Theodates*'s Houſe, to pay my firſt viſit to that generous Friend, and learn of him upon what Terms I ſtood in Court, and whether I might ſhew my ſelf here with the Safety as before. At laſt I ſhould have followed that Reſolution, and I was going to proſecute my Journey directly toward the Town, when I was put beſide it by a very remarkable Accident; I ſaw a Man all bloody come galloping full ſpeed toward me, and when he was within twenty Paces of us, he fell from his Horſe, with all the ſigns of a Man very near his End; I ran to give him ſome Aſſiſtance, but ſcarce had I begun to ſpeak to him, when caſting his Eyes upon us, Ah! (cried he) loſe no time here about me, for I am but a dead Man, but if you be *Scythians*, or Noble-minded Men, make haſte to ſuccour the King, who is yonder like to be murdered.

No ſooner had I heard theſe Words, but leaving that Man to the Care of one of mine, I ran as ſwiftly as I could the ſame Way that we had ſeen him come; *Criton* followed me with the ſame ſpeed, and the two *Scythians*, having left that dying Man, would not let me go without them. Before I had rode five or ſix hundred Paces there was no more need of a Guide, and the Cries I heard directed me ſufficiently to the Place; I ſought it by the Noiſe among the Trees, and had not gone far, when coming to a part of the Wood where the Trees ſtood very thin, I was Witneſs of a bloody and pitiful ſpectacle; I ſaw a ſmall Number of Men, who, incloſing the Prince in the midſt of them, defended themſelves againſt twice as many with a moſt invincible Courage; they had ſlain divers of their Enemies, but the greater part of their Companions lay already gaſping on the

Ground, and they that remained endeavoured but in vain to prolong their Deſtiny, and to lend their King an Aſſiſtance, which had been utterly unprofitable if it had not given us leiſure to come up to his Relief. He had his Sword in his Hand, wherewith he defended himſelf with a great deal of Courage, but his Servants put themſelves between him and Danger, as likewiſe did thoſe of *Arſacomes* and *Theodates*, who being unarm'd as well as the King, fought very valiantly to ſave his Life. I had hardly caſt mine Eyes upon that Combate, when knowing the Party I ought to take, I fell in among the Enemies with a Fury which proceeded from a quite different Cauſe than the little Valour the Gods had given me; And indeed it produced Effects infinitely above my Forces, and at my firſt coming into the Fight I ſcarce gave any Blow that made not a mortal Wound; they that were with me ſeconded me with ſo much Courage, that the half vanquiſhed *Scythians* recovered Spirit by their Example, and began to make their Enemies doubt of the iſſue of the Combate. It quickly grew more equal than it was at our arrival, and the Number of thoſe murderous Traitors was in a ſhort time leſſened by the Death of ſome of the forwardeſt amongſt them.

Their Head, who perceived that Change, would have animated them by his Voice, and by his Example, but he was able to do no great matter, and I having known him by many Tokens, ſought him in the midſt of his Men, and in ſpite of all the Obſtacles wherewith they oppoſed my Paſſage, I got to him, and to his Misfortune my Sword met ſo luckily with a Place unguarded by his Arms, that at the firſt thruſt it ran clear through his Body, and made him tumble dead amongſt the Horſes Feet. His fall did ſo diſcourage thoſe of his Party, that they no longer thought of any thing but defending themſelves, and that they did ſo ill, that the Victory over them was not difficult; for *Arſacomes* and *Theodates*, tho' they were wounded, cloſing up to me, with Shields wherewith they defended themſelves for want of other Arms, and being ſeconded by all the *Scythians*, in whom that Alteration had wrought a marvellous Confidence,

we

we forc'd them in the end to quit the Field, and to ſeek for that Safety by Flight, which they no longer could find by their Reſiſtance.

I then turn'd me about toward the King, uncertain whether I ſhould proſecute our Victory, or run to him; but he put me quickly out of that Irreſolution, by crying, Valiant Man, you yet have conquered but in part, and unleſs you alſo ſave the Queen and Princeſs, you have done nothing for my Safety. Theſe Words went ſo near to me, that I felt my Strength almoſt redoubled by them, and ſeeing that the King himſelf ran toward the Place where he deſired we ſhould ſuccour thoſe dear Perſons, I caſt my Eye upon the ableſt of thoſe Horſes that walk'd about us without their Riders, and feeling my own begin to fail, as well thro' Wearineſs, as ſome Wounds he had receiv'd, I alighted haſtily, and leaping upon the other, ran with ſuch ſpeed after the King, that I had quickly over-taken him. My Love guided me ſo favourably, that I ſoon diſcover'd the Chariot, about which there had been a ſtout and bloody Combate; all they of the Guard were ſlain at the Boots of it, not having abandon'd their Princeſſes but with their Lives, and thoſe barbarous Enemies were pulling them violently out of the Chariot. O Gods! how infinitely did Rage tranſport me, when I ſaw my Princeſs in the Power of a Man, who, carrying her away in ſpite of her Cries and her Reſiſtances, would have delivered her into the Arms of another that was very well arm'd and bravely mounted; certainly all the Words in the World are not ſufficient to repreſent my Fury, and I was ſo animated by that Sight, that all the Enemies Forces were not able to reſiſt me. I flew moſt impetuouſly at thoſe two Men, but having my Sword up to ſtrike at him that held my Princeſs, the fear I had of wounding her made me withhold my Blow, and turning towards him that was ready to receive her, I brought down my Sword ſo forcibly upon his Arms, which he had ſtretched forth towards her, that they fell both together from his Body to the Ground: His Companion, ſeeing him receive that ſtroak, and fearing ſuch another, quitted the Princeſs, but ſcarce had he diſburthen'd himſelf of that glorious Weight,

when he was also disburthen'd of his Head, which with a back Blow I made Cask and all to roul between the Chariot Wheels. After this Execution, I fell in among the rest with a Success but little different, while the King coming to join with us, as also *Arsacomes*, and all the *Scythians* that were left of the former Fight, brought Terror to those Villains, already half defeated by the Death of their Leaders, and by the Loss of their Companions. They no longer made any considerable Resistance, and very few of them escaped our just Resentments.

As soon as we had no more Enemies to fight withal, I turned to that illustrious Company, all stained with Blood, and in an Equipage which, (as my Princess was pleased to say) for all it was terrible, had something in it not unpleasing to her; I consulted a while with Love and Decency, whether I should run first to the King, or to my Princess; but Love, tho' the more powerful, was content for its own Interest to yield to Decency, and found its Advantage more in concealing, than in declaring it self so publickly. Scarce had I turn'd my Horse to go to the King, when I saw him come forward to meet me, with all that were about him: 'Whosoever 'thou art, (cried he) O our valiant Protector, 'tis to you 'we owe our Lives, and you have won them to your 'self with so matchless a Valour, and so great a Genero-'sity, that tho' you should be born our Subject, you 'ought to be the Master of them for ever.'

Instead of answering these Words, I leap'd from my Horse, and cast my self at the King's Feet so suddenly, that he could not possibly hinder me, and had no sooner pull'd off my Cask but my Face was known by the King and the whole Company: The King was so astonish'd, that he went back a step or two, and then presently coming to me again with open Arms, O *Arsaces*, (cried he) O *Arsaces*, and without saying any thing more at that time, he embraced me with such Affection, that I easily saw my Absence had abated nothing of that he formerly had honour'd me withal. *Berenice* hath since confessed to me, that she was fain to use a very violent Constraint upon her self, in that sudden Surprize, and that by my good

good Fortune, I had part enough in her Favour to give her Motions of Joy in that Encounter, which it was very hard for her to diſſemble; yet did ſhe ſmother it with much ado, and following the Queen's Example, ſhe contented her ſelf with teſtifying her acknowledgments in the ſame manner.

But ſcarce was I got free of the King, when *Theodates*, making his Paſſage through all the reſt, came to give me, and to receive Embraces, which ſhew'd the Company the Nearneſs of that Friendſhip wherewith we were link'd together. *Arſacomes*, who as well as the reſt, was obliged to me for his own Safety, and for the Queen his Siſters, forced his Inclinations that he might not appear ingrateful; and when the King had allow'd every Body liberty to welcome me, he came to me again himſelf, and reiterating his Favours; 'It was impoſſible (ſaid he) by the Miracles you had done for our Preſervation, that you ſhould be other than *Arſaces*, or elſe ſome God; ſuch prodigious Effects of Valour can find no Example, but in what you have done for us already; yet ſince we have deſtined to owe our Lives to ſome Body, I praiſe the Gods that 'tis to my dear *Arſaces*, to whom we may be indebted for them without Shame or Trouble.'

I had been ſilent during all the King's obliging Words and Endearments, but as ſoon as it was time for me to ſpeak, 'Sir, (ſaid I) your Majeſty ſets too high a Value upon an Action, which I was too powerfully engaged to do, both by the Remembrance of your Favours, and by the Conſideration of my Honour; I were much to blame if I ſhould think I had done any thing in the Preſervation of your Majeſty's Life, 'tis to your own Valour you owe it, and to the Gods to whom it is too dear to let it be loſt; and if they were pleaſed I ſhould be ſo happy as to be one among your Servants for the defeating of your Enemies, 'tis only I that have the whole Obligation to them, as for the moſt glorious Favour they can ever do me. Forbear (replied the King) to rob *Arſaces* of what is due to him alone, we ſhould not now have been alive but for your Aſſiſtance, and I find as much Satisfaction in avowing it, as I ſhould

'do Shame if I neglected Obligations of this Nature; 'I will acknowledge them with all my Affection, and 'with all my Power, and if ever the King of *Scythia* be 'ingrateful toward *Arsaces*, I would have him pass thro' 'the whole World for the most unworthy Man upon 'Earth.' The King accompanied these Words with many others to the same purpose; and after all the Company had seconded him, both in his Kindnesses and Praises, he commanded the dead Bodies to be view'd, to the end they might see if they could discover who they were that had been his Enemies.

Among the first whose Faces they look'd upon, there were found some whom they knew to have belong'd to *Cydaris*, and the King himself being come close to him whose Arms I had cut off, while he unworthily stretched them forth to take my Princess, knew him to be *Bandamis* the Brother of that Parricide: He was not yet quite dead, and as soon as he perceiv'd the King to be near him, he called together the remainder of his Forces, and preventing the Questions that were going to be ask'd him; 'If *Cydaris* be slain (said he) I keep him Company 'without Trouble, and die willingly for him, as he 'does for *Berenice*, and for the Reparation of his Ho-'nour. He to punish the Affront that had been done to 'him would have kill'd a King that had used him un-'worthily, and to content his Passion he would have 'carried away the Princess; I served him in this last 'Design, while he was attempting the former: We have 'yet another Brother who will revenge our Death, if 'he have any Courage, and if he be so base as to sit 'down with it, he deserves that you should pour forth 'all those Resentments upon him which you have con-'ceived against us.'

Bandamis ended his Life with these Words, and the King, who from the beginning had imagin'd the Truth of this Adventure, could not but admire the Resolution of those desperate Wretches. *Cydaris*'s Body was found amongst those of his Party, and the Princess expressed a great deal of Trouble for having been the Cause, tho' innocently, of the Death of so many Men, and of the Danger her Father had been in. In the mean time, we

were

re inviron'd by a Throng of thoſe whom the Noiſe of s Accident had drawn from *Iſſedon*, and one may truly , the whole Town was almoſt empty from the very ment that News came thither; all the People came l caſt themſelves at the King's Feet with Tears of Joy, l by his Command they all came afterward to proſtrate :mſelves before me, and to do me Honours as a Man it by the Gods, or as the protecting Angel of *Scythia*. hen many Things had paſſed, which I am not able to l you by reaſon of their Length and Confuſion, we ok our Way toward the City, and all the while we ere going, the King did nothing but embrace me, and k me the Particularities of my Journey. I anſwered oſe Queſtions as I had before reſolved to do, and tho' e Remembrance of our ruin'd Family could not come to my Mind, without drawing Sighs from me, I diſmbled my Griefs as well as poſſibly I could, and attriited my long Abſence to the Captivity in which I was :tained by *Arimbas*. Yet was not the King ſo wholly ken up with me, but that he took Care of *Arſacomes*, ho was wounded in two Places; my dear *Theodates* ſo had ſome Hurts, but none that were at all dangeous. All the time I had free during the Way, I ſpent ith him, to whom in a few Words I gave an Account f the deplorable Succeſs of my Journey. As I could not ake him that Recital without Tears, ſo neither could e hear it without ſhedding ſome, and he ſolemnized our liſfortunes with all the Signs of Grief I could demand om a true and perfect Friend. I durſt not make my Adreſſes to my Princeſs in the Queen's Preſence, fearing hat Company ſhould obſerve Alterations in my Countenance, which might give ſome Notice of my Paſſion. As ſoon as we were come to the City, we found all the People that were left in it in the Streets, coming to meet he King, and preſently they began to make Bonfires in very Place, and to offer Sacrifices and Thankſgiving for his Safety in all the Temples. The King would needs have a Lodging appointed for me in his Palace, but for the remainder of that Day I retir'd to *Theodates*'s Houſe, to ſatisfy the Deſire I had to embrace him at liberty, to finiſh the Account I had begun to give him of my Journey,

and to receive particular Information of all Paſſages concerning my Princeſs, and how I ſtood in her Favour at that time. He ſatisfied my Curioſity to the full; and aſſur'd me, that during my Abſence, he had not found the leaſt Change in her Affection. 'Tis true, Sir, (ſaid he) ſhe complain'd often of your want of Care to let her hear from you, and often teſtified to me, but with an extraordinary Trouble, how much ſhe fear'd you had forgotten her. I put her out of thoſe Apprehenſions as well as poſſibly I could, but at laſt I ſhould have had much ado to find Reaſons to juſtify you, if ſhe had not heard of the lamentable End of the King your Father, and of the total Ruin of your Houſe. How deeply was ſhe concern'd in that woful Story, and how many Tears did ſhe beſtow, both on the Misfortunes of *Darius*, and on the Fears of your being periſh'd with him! Ah! would it had pleaſed the Gods I had, (cried I) not being able to hear of that Diſcourſe without being aſham'd, and tranſported; but within a while after I repented my ſelf, and believing that Wiſh offended my Princeſs, No, (ſaid I again) I ought not to deſire Death, ſince I ought to live for *Berenice*; nor can I, without offending her, attempt or deſire any Thing againſt a Life whereof I have reſerv'd no Power to my ſelf. After theſe Words, I lent my Attention again to the advantageous Report he made me of my Princeſs's Remembrance; but I was not a little aſtoniſhed, when after that, he told me News of Prince *Oroondates*. Sir, (ſaid he) the King, ſince you went away, has heard part of his Son's Adventures, he knows the Abode he made with the King your Father, his Love to the Princeſs your Siſter, and the moſt remarkable Accidents that have befallen him ſince his Departure. He got this Intelligence by ſome Spies he kept long in *Perſia*, and ſhew'd moſt violent Reſentments at the News, but his Anger was raiſed to the utmoſt height, when he learn'd, that he had ſent to make Levies upon the Frontiers of this Kingdom, and that with them he had fought in the laſt Battel. He proteſted publickly that he would not pardon him thoſe Infidelities, ſo it was he call'd the Prince's Actions; and I think that the Queen, who upon the Incertainty of his Life, was already forming

ning Pretenſions for her Children, if the Gods ſhould
e her any, did not diſſuade him from that Reſolution.
this Diſcourſe of *Theodates*, I found both matter of
and of Affliction; for as I with much Contentment
eiv'd ſome Aſſurances of my dear Brother's Life, and
the Affection which he ſtill preſerv'd unto our Family,
in in its lateſt Miſeries, ſo did I with a great deal of
row learn, that the King perſiſted ſtill in his Hatred
us, and foreſaw the Difficulties it would produce in
Reconciliation I ſo earneſtly deſired. Then *Theo-*
es entertain'd me with *Arſacomes*'s Perſecutions, abet-
by the Queen's Authority, who making that ill Uſe
the King's Paſſion to her, aſſiſted her Brother openly
that Deſign, but with ſo little Succeſs in ſolliciting
: Princeſs, that it did nothing but increaſe the Aver-
n which ſhe had already to *Arſacomes*, and which ſhe
preſs'd to him upon all Occaſions. After this long
nverſation, I let *Theodates* take his Reſt by reaſon of
: Wounds; and having paſſed the Night on this man-
r, and Impatiency on my part, which is not eaſy for
: to repreſent, I was no ſooner up in the Morning, but
ad a mind to go to the Palace there to watch ſome Op-
rtunity of ſeeing and diſcourſing with my Princeſs.
eodates, who knew how neceſſary he ſhould be to me
that Buſineſs, would needs accompany me thither for
l his Wounds, which as light as they were, might have
en ſufficient to have kept him a few Days in Bed.
ortune was as favourable to me as I could deſire, for I
as hardly upon the Stairs, when *Cyllenia*, who ſtaid for
e at that Paſſage, feigning ſome Occaſion to talk with
eodates, told him, that when I had waited upon the
ing and Queen, the Princeſs would expect me without
ny other Company but her, in the ſame Arbour of the
arden, where I had given her the firſt Knowledge of
y true Name and Quality. *Theodates* having deliver'd
e this Command, I ſtrove to make my Viſits as ſhort as
oſſibly I could; ſcarce had I receiv'd the King's firſt
ind Salutes, when he fell into the Diſcourſe of the
rince his Son: Would you believe, (ſaid he) *Arſaces*,
at that Son to whom I have born ſo tender an Affec-
on, and in whom, upon very falſe Appearances, I had

grounded all my Hopes, would have abandon'd me in my moſt preſſing Affairs, only to go over to my Enemies Party? That he ſhould have fought againſt us with his own Hand, in a Battel where I was in Perſon? That he ſhould have ſued to *Darius*'s Daughter by baſe Ways, and ſuch as are unworthy of his Quality? and that he ſhould have been ſo inſolent as to raiſe Forces in my Dominions in favour of my mortal Enemy? Sir, (anſwered I) theſe Faults indeed would be very great, if your Majeſty did not alledge an Excuſe for them your ſelf, and if you knew not very well that Love is able to produce much ſtranger Effects. There is nothing but Love without queſtion that can excuſe the Prince your Son in what he has done againſt you; but mere Generoſity was enough to move him to aſſiſt *Darius* againſt *Alexander*, and your Majeſty may very well pardon him, if he in favour of a poor oppreſſed Prince, made uſe of ſome of your Forces againſt the Enemy of the whole World. *Alexander* is more dreadful to all Kings than *Darius* was; for, after having made himſelf Maſter of all thoſe Territories that were his, he will certainly invade yours, and labour to extend his Dominion over all the Earth.

I know very well (replied the King) that you are noble and generous, but *Oroondates* is not the leſs faulty becauſe you have the Goodneſs to excuſe, and he by his Deportments has rendred himſelf unworthy of the Care you take for his Juſtification. I thought it not beſt to perſiſt in oppoſing the firſt brunt of the King's Diſpleaſure, hoping that Time would have more Power to qualify it than all the Reaſons I could have alledg'd; and therefore I ſaid no more, but went to wait upon the Queen, who receiv'd me with great Civilities and Teſtimonies of acknowledgment for what I had done for her, and for her Brother; and when I was come out of the Chamber, I got looſe from all thoſe that accompanied us, and with no Body but *Theodates* went down into the Garden, where I was expected by my moſt adored Princeſs. I will not ſtand to repreſent the Effects which the Hope of ſo near a Happineſs produc'd in me, nor my Impatiency while I was going thro' the Alleys which lead me

to

that Arbour where all my Wealth was treasur'd up-
ou shall only know that I came thither, and that I
und my Princess there according to her Promise, having
Body with her but *Cydenia*; you may imagine, that
e first Thing I did was to cast my self at her Feet, and
at the Transport of my Passion tied my Tongue too fast
afford me the Liberty to speak for a long while. My
incess broke Silence first, and constrain'd me to rise
d to sit down by her. The Gods be praised (said she
ith Tears, which a generous Compassion drew from her
r Eyes) the Gods be praised, since after so many Fears,
d so many mortal Apprehensions, they suffer me again
behold the dearest Remainders of *Darius*'s Family;
wish I were able with the better part of my Blood to
ing them back again from the Grave, whom the Wrath
Heaven hath taken away, and whose Loss (perhaps)
th not cost me fewer Tears than the Princesses your
sters; but since I can do nothing for them but make
profitable Wishes, I receive my dear *Arsaces* with as
uch Thankfulness as I owe to those Powers that have
stored him to me, and in his Person alone, I, without
urmuring, limit all the Pretensions I had to the greatest
ince of all the World.

My Princess brought forth these Words with so sweet
Air, and so full of Compassion, that they wrought an
traordinary Tenderness in me, and tho' in those glo-
ous Moments, my sad Remembrances were not able to
terrupt my Felicity, I could not forbear with my Sighs
accompany those Tears that Pity made her shed, and
king the liberty to fix my Lips upon one of her fair
ands; I have lost nothing, Madam, (said I) I have
st nothing, since Fortune, in depriving me of all that
pended upon her, has not been able to rob me of what
without Comparison, prefer before all she could possi-
ly give me.

'Tis true that *Darius* and the Queen my Mother, are
their Graves; that my Sisters are *Alexanders* Captives;
at my Father's Dominions are in the Power of our Ene-
ies; and that he, who at his Departure was able to
rotest to you that you were serv'd by a Prince who was
eir to a considerable Empire, cannot now appear before

you

you as other than as a Prince diſpoſſeſſed of his Inheritance, and as a Prince to whom Fortune hath left nothing but his Sword and his Ambition; but how light are all theſe Loſſes, ſince they have not been able to make me loſe the Affections of my divineſt Princeſs, and how little ought I to bewail thoſe Empires the Gods have taken from me, if I conſider what your Goodneſs has conſerved for me?

Yes, Madam, 'tis to your Goodneſs alone, that I am indebted for my Life and Fortune; and any other Body leſs good, and leſs generous than your ſelf, would not have look'd upon this Change of my Condition, without a Change in her own Thoughts; nor have received this miſerable Exile, as a Prince, who yet may cheriſh his former glorious Hopes. I conſider you a great deal more by your Virtue, (replied the Princeſs) and by the Qualities of your Perſon, than by the Extent of thoſe Empires, which heretofore were the King your Father's; and if the Knowledge of your Birth was neceſſary to make me approve of your Affection, that is not loſt with your Dominions, nor has Fortune depriv'd you of any Thing that made me love you.

That Change would be too baſe to ſtick one Minute in my Conceit, or to be ſo much as dreamt of by *Orondates*'s Siſter; therefore never make any Reflection upon a Thought that offends me, and if in my Perſeverance, you can find any matter of Conſolation, believe that you ſhall for ever have Reaſon to be comforted; and that I to my Grave will preſerve thoſe Inclinations, which only *Artaxerxes*'s Perſon, and not the Conſideration of his Kingdoms, has introduc'd into my Heart. I was ſo ſweetly charm'd with theſe obliging Words, that they in an inſtant made me loſe the Remembrance of my Misfortunes, and falling once again at my Princeſs's Feet, I embraced her Knees, with Raptures which cannot be expreſſed but in the like Occaſions.

Let *Alexander* triumph over our Patrimony, (ſaid I) let him ſtretch his Dominions over all *Aſia*, nay, over all the Earth if he will, how little do I eſteem his Conqueſts, how lightly do I value his Fortune, in compariſon of mine, and how freely do I give up to him all that he

e has unjuſtly taken from me, provided he leave me but *erenice*? my Condition is a thouſand times more glo-ious at her Feet, than upon that Throne from whence iine Enemies have caſt me; and if I ever take up Arms gainſt them, it ſhall be only to Revenge my Friends, nd to make my ſelf more worthy of my Princeſs's Affec-ions. I ſhould have ſaid more, if *Berenice*, forcing me nce again to riſe, had not interrupted me, to put me pon that Diſcourſe of what I had done the Day before or her Deliverance, and for the Safety of the King her Father. She extoll'd that Action in Terms full of a great Acknowledgment; and ſeeing ſhe was going to enlarge her ſelf in Thanks, Ceaſe, Madam, (ſaid I) ceaſe to thank *Arſaces*, for what he did for *Arſaces*; 'Tis for *Arſa-comes* to return me ſome few Thanks for his Safety, 'tis for *Stratonice*, and for the King to preſerve ſome Memory of it, but *Berenice* is no way ingag'd to me, ſave only by that part which her Goodneſs makes her take in my Intereſts, for what I have done to my own Advantage. 'Twas only from *Arſaces*, that *Cydaris* would have ſtolen away *Berenice*, and ſince that ſhe approves my Hopes, 'tis only for *Arſaces* that I have reſcued her. That unworthy Rival ought not to have died by any other Hand but mine, and if my Princeſs ought to keep any other Remembrance of this Adventure, 'tis only that ſhe ſaw *Arſaces* do better than *Arſacomes*, for the Defence of his Pretenſions, and for the Safety of the King her Father; it would have been one of the moſt ſenſible Vexations I could have ſuffer'd (ſaid the Princeſs) if the Succour we receiv'd from you had come from the Hand of *Arſacomes*. 'Tis only to *Artaxerxes* that I will be oblig'd, both for the Safety of my Friends, and of mine own particular Life, I ſay my Life; for tho' perhaps thoſe Enemies had no Deſign againſt it, I ſhould account it an indifferent Thing to fall into the Arms of Death, or into the Arms of any other beſides *Artaxerxes*. I give you this Aſſu-rance with Truth, (continued the Princeſs, ſeeing me tranſported with Joy at this Diſcourſe) and you have Rea-ſon to believe, that 'tis only for your ſelf alone that you have reſcued *Berenice*; nay further, I will proteſt to you by all that is deareſt to me, that the Sorrows which your

Abſence, the Fear of thoſe Dangers into which you were going to precipitate your ſelf, and the News of your Loſſes have made me ſuffer, could not be equalled, except by the Joy I receiv'd at your Return; but a Return which you have made remarkable by a Service the King can never forget, and which muſt of neceſſity ſtifle in his Breaſt the Hatred he bears your Family, if he be not the moſt obdurate, and the moſt ingrateful of all Men living. The Princeſs accompanied theſe Words with many others, which I could not anſwer but with Tranſport and Extaſy: and after this firſt Converſation, ſhe needs would have me give her an Account of my Voyage, and make her the Recital of all that had befallen me ſince my Departure. I obeyed her punctually, and in the ſad Paſſages of my Narration, I ſaw her ſo nearly touch'd that I thereby received no light Marks of that Affection, which from thence forward was to make up my whole Fortune, and be to me inſtead of Parents, of Empires, and of whatſoever the Anger of Heaven had taken from me.

Arſaces was in this part of his Story, when the Princeſs *Berenice*, accompanied with *Apamia* and *Cleone*, came into the Chamber. They that kept the Door of the Tent, knew very well that Princeſs was not comprehended in the Order which had been given them, and of thoſe three Perſons there was not one that could be thought unfit to hear *Arſaces*'s Diſcourſe. As ſoon as they entred, the Princes who were ſitting by *Arſaces*'s Bed-ſide, roſe up to ſalute them, and the two wounded ones receiv'd them with a great deal of Joy, the Motions whereof nevertheleſs were a little different. *Arſaces* could not ſee his Princeſs without ſome inward Alteration, or rather without ſome kind of Tranſport, and *Berenice* could not behold *Arſaces* in a much better State of Health than ſhe had hoped for in ſo ſhort time, without ſhewing ſome Signs of ſuch a Contentment, as a bare good Will is not able to produce. When ſhe had likewiſe receiv'd an Aſſurance from the Princes Mouths, of the Amendment of their Wounds, ſhe ſat down, and *Apamia*, and *Cleone* with her, upon Seats that were brought them. *Berenice* was going to fall into ſome

Diſcourſe,

ſcourſe, when the Prince her Brother, not being wil-
ng to be diverted for their former Entertainment, oppo-
d her Intention: Siſter, (ſaid he) content your ſelf
at the troubleſom Paſſage you ſo much apprehended,
s been related in your Abſence, and that we have heard
ou have lov'd, without your being put to the Pain to
ll it us. Fear not, Siſter, (continued he, ſeeing *Bere-
ice*'s Face o'er-ſpread at theſe Words with a glowing
olour) you would have more Cauſe to Bluſh if one
ould Reproach you with having been ſo blind, as not to
now the admirable Qualities of this Prince, with ha-
ing been ingrateful for the Obligations we have to him,
nd in ſhort, with having been able to ſee, and know
rtaxerxes without loving him. Do not hinder us from
earing the reſt of his Adventures, and hearken to the
hare you have in them without interrupting us. *Arſaces*
ccompanied theſe Words of *Oroondates* with a moſt hum-
ble and beſeeching Look, which ſeem'd to beg Pardon of
his Princeſs, for the Confeſſion he had made to the Com-
pany of the Affection ſhe bore him, and ſeeing that they
were all ſettled again in Silence, and that they diſpoſed
themſelves to Attention, he went on with his Diſcourſe
thus.

The End of the Second BOOK.

CASSANDRA.

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK III.

IT is true, my faireſt Princeſs, that being oblig'd to this Recital by the Command of my dear Brother, I have declared to this illuſtrious Company the Teſtimonies you gave me of your Affection; but they are not ignorant that 'twas to the Remembrance of *Oroondates*, you granted what could never be due to the Services, or Perſon of *Artaxerxes*, and that your Inclination to a Brother ſo worthy of your Love, made you look upon the Paſſion of his dear Friend and Brother, more advantageouſly than you would have done upon that of the Prince of *Perſia*.

The

The Signs I receiv'd of the continuance of my Prin-
s's good Will, (purſued *Arſaces*, turning towards *Oro-*
ates, and the reſt of the Company) were ſo precious to
, that I really believ'd I had no Reaſon to complain
inſt Heaven, which did ſo fully recompence me for
: Loſs of thoſe Empires it had depriv'd me of; and be-
, by my Princeſs's Orders, retir'd with this Know-
ge to the Lodgings that were appointed for me in the
lace, I employ'd the reſt of that Day, in conſidering
at the Greatneſs from whence I was fallen, had not in
moſt pompous Luſtre, had any Thing comparable to
y preſent Felicity. It belongs to none but the Gods,
iid I) to do miraculous Actions, and as great, and
werful as they are, they could not make me Amends
r the Greatneſs of my Loſſes, but by the Greatneſs of
at Fortune to which they now have raiſed me; having
ken from me whatſoever they could give me of moſt
eat, and of moſt beautiful, and in ſhort, they give me
hatſoever they could take away, they give me all that
could deſire, and more than I could lawfully hope for;
t them beſtow the Empires of *Aſia*, and of *Europe* on
hom they pleaſe, provided they leave but *Berenice* to
ortunate *Arſaces*, he will never accuſe them of Injuſtice,
ut will without Envy behold the abſolute Authority of
hoſe Maſters of the whole Earth. Theſe really were
ny Thoughts, and Fortune (who by ſuch glorious To-
ens made me believe ſhe meant to declare her ſelf in
ny Favour,) forſook me not in thoſe beginnings, but
nade all Things contribute to the Happineſs ſhe had pro-
ured me. That Service I had done the King, finding
im prepoſſeſſed with ſome good Opinion of me, and with
ome Affection to me, wrought preſently the moſt power-
ul Effect one could have hoped for by it, from the moſt
grateful Prince in the World; and if in my former Jour-
ney I had been held in ſome Conſideration at Court, this
laſt Action, added to the Inclination which the King had
already toward me, raiſed me there to ſuch a Credit, that
to repreſent it to you in a few Words, I may truly ſay,
that within one Month, *Arſacomes* had no Advantage
over me; and had it not been for the Power of the
Queen, I ſhould without diſpute have held the firſt Place
in

in the King's Eſteem and Affection. 'Tis true, I labour'd not to make my ſelf great by Offices, and Employments, for, having Thoughts very far diſtant from thoſe, I was ſatisfied with cauſing that to be given to others (as much as I could without abuſing the King's Favour towards me) which Men who had been Slaves to an Ambition different from mine, would perhaps have kept for their own ſelves. This manner of Carriage, added to the good Fortune I had at that time, gain'd me a reaſonable good Number of Friends in the Court, and I did ſo little treſpaſs upon their Friendſhip, or upon the Compliance which my Condition oblig'd them to render me, that amongſt them all, I never obſerv'd any one to grow cold toward me, or diſcontented. *Arſacomes* envied my Fortune, but he durſt not croſs it openly, remembring that he was indebted to me for his Life; and the Queen his Siſter, who had the ſame Obligation, and who was an extreme cunning and politick Princeſs, would not thwart the King's Inclinations, which ſhe knew to be very potent toward me. As *Arſacomes*'s Envy of me was nouriſh'd in him by certain Conſiderations, ſo my Averſion to him was increaſed by divers others; and though I could not love him, becauſe he was my Rival, and a Rival very troubleſom to my Princeſs, yet durſt I not expreſs my Enmity, for fear of diſcovering the Cauſe of it; and 'twas with a ſtrange Conſtraint I ſuffer'd his daily, publick Demonſtrations of Love to the Daughter of his King. I found ſome Conſolation indeed in her Behaviour towards him, and every Day obſerv'd with Joy, that his Preſumption could not be more juſtly recompenced than it was by her. She never gave him an obliging Word, ſhe never did any Action that was favourable to him, and ſo carefully avoided all Occaſions of being alone with him, that he could never entertain her but in Company; he being of a haughty, impetuous Humour, this often made him overſhoot himſelf, but not having utterly loſt his Judgment, he ſtrove to moderate his Reſentments by his Siſter's Advice, and remembring he was the King of *Scythia*'s Subject, he conſidered, that if the Cauſes of his Fortune ſhould come to ceaſe, he might fall from his Authority, and be in a Condition to ſuffer the Puniſhment due to his Inſolence.

lence. The Example of *Cydaris* was freſh in his Me-
y, and tho' he could not abaſe himſelf ſo low as to
a Deſtiny like his, yet that Remembrance was enough
ıake ſome Impreſſion on his Mind. Tho' *Arſacomes*
ill ſatisfied with *Berenice*, I for my part had all man-
of Reaſon to acknowledge her Goodneſs; and ſince
gives me leave, to ſtrain a point of Diſcretion, to
liſh my Advantages, I may tell you, that I never
h'd more Happineſs than I truly poſſeſſed at that time;
that my adored Princeſs did in my Favour, ſlacken
Rein to all thoſe Teſtimonies of Affection I could de-
from ſo ſublime a Virtue. Yet were they all limited
Words alone, and to the Endeavours ſhe uſed to afford
all the Means ſhe could to ſee her, and Diſcourſe with
at Liberty.

That was not very hard for her to do; for in the Con-
ion I then ſtood with the King, and in the Belief the
ıthians had, that ſhe was oblig'd to me for her Safety,
d perhaps for her Honour, ſince the time that I had reſ-
ed her out of the Hands of the treacherous Princeſs of
e *Tauro-Scythians*, no Body thought ſtrange that ſhe al-
w'd me entrance into her Chamber, and ſuffer'd my
ompany when ſhe went Abroad. *Cyllenia* aſſiſted me in
ıoſe Occaſions, with an Affection for which I ſhall be
ıdebted to her as long as I live, and my dear *Theodates*
ad ſacrificed himſelf wholly to my Intereſts. True it
, that in my Encounters I had endeavoured to repay
im part of the good Offices I receiv'd from him, by
thers which I did him to the King, and that I made that
'rince better acquainted with his Virtues, than he had
ɔeen formerly; but beſides thoſe Opportunities whereby
ſtrove to teſtify my Friendſhip, another offer'd it ſelf,
wherein I was not uſeleſs to him. He became paſſionate-
ly in Love with the Princeſs *Theomiris*, the Daughter of
Prince *Carthaſis* the King's Brother, an exceeding fair and
virtuous Lady, and moſt dearly belov'd of *Berenice*, who
beſides nearneſs of Blood, thought her ſelf oblig'd to
bear her a great deal of good Will, by the Knowledge
ſhe had of her excellent Qualities. *Theodates* was not
only conſiderable in *Scythia* by his Birth and Virtue, but
was alſo extraordinary Handſom, and well might gain
the

the Affections of that Princeſs, without any other Aſſiſtances ſave that of his own Merit; but I too dearly preſerv'd the Memory of what I ow'd him, to neglect any Occaſion to requite it, and as ſoon as his Paſſion was known to me, I employ'd all the Credit I had with my Princeſs, to make her uſe all the Intereſt ſhe had with *Theomiris*. *Berenice* receiv'd my Interceſſion without any Repugnance, and being of her ſelf moſt ready to oblige *Theodates*, ſhe labour'd to advance his Suit with a great deal of Goodneſs, and with a great deal of Succeſs. In the mean time the King's Favour towards me, increaſed from Day to Day, and tho' the Prince was ever govern'd by his own Motions, rather than by the Counſel of any about him, and that he never gave his Favourite ſo much Power over his Mind, but that he ever kept firm to his own Reſolutions, he ſeem'd then to have receded from his Maxims in favour of me, and that even in the moſt important Affairs, he had a greater Opinion of my Advice, than he had ever had of any other Body's. I will have the *Scythians* honour *Arſaces*, (ſaid he) both as the braveſt, moſt valiant of all Men living, (they were the Terms which his Affection made him unjuſtly uſe) and as he to whom they owe the Safety of their King, and of all the Royal Family. Not being contented with many conſiderable Gifts, which he heap'd upon me every Day, he to his former Liberalities, and to the exceſſive Riches he had already beſtow'd upon me, would needs add the Provinces which *Cydaris* and his Brother had loſt, when they loſt their Lives, and which, by their traiterous, horrible Attempt, return'd unto the Crown, their Attainder having excluded all the Survivers of their Houſe from any lawful Pretenſions to them. I durſt not oppoſe his Liberalities, for fear of angring him, and of giving him Suſpicion of my true Quality, by ſeeming to contemn them. He had often times been offended with the little Reckoning I made of Preſents of that Nature, and by the Advice of the Princeſs her ſelf, I would not put my ſelf in hazard of diſpleaſing him. *Theodates* confirm'd me in that Reſolution, and when he preſſed me moſt earneſtly to it, Dear *Theodates*, (ſaid I) I will not accept of this Province, but upon Condition, that you will receive it from

n me when I am once in a Capacity to offer it you, that (continued I ſmiling) ſhall be the Ranſom of ir Priſoner, if the Gods permit him not to ſatisfy you ter. *Theodates*, who knew how to deſpiſe that kind Riches, anſwered me very generouſly, and by the ng's Example, began to call me the Prince of the *Tauro-thians*; but they had hardly given me that Name, ien it was known in Court, I ſhould not bear that tle without diſpute; for News came thither that *Ama-*, the younger Brother to *Cydaris*, and he with whom *ndamis* had threatned us with when he died, had begun execute part of thoſe Menaces; and after having lien while conceal'd in that Province, to make a Party, hereby he pretended either to revenge the Death of s Brothers, or to keep Poſſeſſion of thoſe Territories hich had belong'd to his Family, he had at laſt perſua-d the *Tauro-Scythians* to riſe, and having under falſe id ſpecious Pretences made their Neighbours the *Aga-ſians* take up Arms with them, had got an Army to-ier of above fifty thouſand Men, wherewith he prepar'd imſelf to enter into the neareſt Provinces, either to get iem to revolt with him, or to uſe all Acts of Hoſtility gainſt them.

As ſoon as the Noiſe of this Inſurrection was come to *Sedon*, and that the King had receiv'd the certainty of ; he, without being troubled, began diligently to pro-ide thoſe Remedies that were needful, and ſummoning he neareſt Troops, whereof he could compoſe an Army, vas pleaſed that I ſhould have the Honour to Command hem: not but that among his own Subjects he might iave made a better Choice, yet whether it were that his Affection to me gave him too advantageous an Opinion of ny Sufficiency, or that having given me that Province, ne believ'd me to be more concern'd in the Preſervation of it than any Body elſe, ſo it is that he preferr'd me for that Employment, before thoſe that ſued to him for it.

I know not how to preſent to you in what manner I receiv'd it. On the one ſide, I was not a little ſatisfied to find ſo remarkable an Occaſion, to deſerve thoſe Favours the King conferr'd upon me, and to eſtabliſh my

ſelf

ſelf more and more, by the Services I hop'd to do him, in that Affection which was ſo neceſſary for me, both toward the Accompliſhment of my Happineſs with *Berenice*, and toward the Means of recovering, with part of mine Honour, ſome part alſo of *Darius*'s Empires; but on the other ſide I was not leſs afflicted to go from *Berenice*; and tho' I foreſaw not that that Abſence would be of ſo long continuance as it prov'd, I could not reſolve upon it without a moſt ſenſible Grief. But there was a Neceſſity of it, and in that Sorrow, I met with ſome Conſolations, which did in part abate its Violence. We ſhall fight for the King of *Scythia*, (ſaid I) it has pleaſed Fortune that we have not been uſeleſs to his Service already, but when we ſhall have let him ſee how we can lead an Army for his Intereſts, perhaps he will not refuſe to give us another for the Defence of our own, and that by the Importance of the Services we ſhall do him, we may blot that Hatred out of his Mind, which ſtill continues in it againſt the Remnant of *Darius*'s Family. Go then, *Arſaces*, ſince ſo many Reaſons oblige thee to it, go conquer the reſt of thoſe that would have murdered the King, and violently have ſtollen away *Berenice*; and if thou canſt not part with that Princeſs without Sorrow, ſweeten at leaſt that Sorrow by the Knowledge thou haſt, that thou art going to fight for her Father, that thou art going to fight for her, and that thou art going to fight for thy ſelf.

With this kind of Diſcourſe I took Comfort in the Trouble which that Abſence was preparing for me, and in the interim told the King that I would endeavour, by the Hazard of all my Blood, to make my ſelf worthy of the Employment he gave me, and either would return victorious over his Enemies, or elſe not return at all. I doubt not (ſaid the King) but that you are certain of the Victory, and that they muſt be neither Rebels nor Traitors that can reſiſt the Valour of *Arſaces*. In the mean time, my Departure was haſten'd with all poſſible Diligence, and every Day till then, I had the Happineſs to ſee, and to entertain my Princeſs. If I dare take the Liberty to ſay ſo, her Grief ſeem'd little leſs than mine, nor did ſhe ſee me ready to go into Dangers, without

ſhewing

shewing a Sensibility, that was more sweet, and more obliging to me, than all the Honours and Gifts of Provinces which I receiv'd from the King her Father; but she found her Consolations in mine, when I represented those Advantages to her, wherewith the Cruelty of that Absence was to be allayed. *Theodates* would not have let me go without him, but knowing his Quality, and that after the Employments he had formerly had, he could not march in an Army without Commanding it, or doing himself a great deal of Wrong, I opposed his friendly Intention, and intreated him to continue at Court to serve *Seomiris*, and to serve me also with *Berenice*, since he was the only Man from whom I could receive any Assistance in that Business. They were these last Considerations that made him yield to it, his Friendship to me making him despise the first. The Night before my Departure being come, I receiv'd Orders from the King, and took my leave of him, which he gave me not without some Tears, nor without such Endearments, as those that were nearest to him could hardly hope for from him. Go, *Arsaces*, (said he) go quell our Enemies, restore Quietness to the Province which your Virtue has given you, and testify to the remotest *Scythians*, that 'tis only to the gallantest of all Mortals, their King is indebted for his Safety. Yet have a care of a Life which is very dear to us, and think not so much of conquering, but that you may also think of bringing *Arsaces* home to us again. I shall conquer, Sir, (replied I) since your Majesty commands me to do so; and the remotest *Scythians* shall know, 'tis the victorious Sword of their King, rather than the Hand of *Arsaces*, that punishes them for their Perfidiousness. After I had left the King, I gave the remainder of the Day to the visits of my Friends, and when Night was come, my Princess had the Goodness to permit me to pass part of it in her Chamber, with *Theodates*, and *Cyllenia*. It would be very hard for me to repeat all the Discourses to you which we had at that Separation, and as they took up many Hours, less time would not be necessary to tell you them. My Princess, out of an Excess of Goodness, was afflicted at my Departure, and by the same Goodness, she comforted her self

an-

and me with hope of the Fruit I should reap by this Expedition. I go, Madam, (said I) to labour for the Repose of *Scythia*, and for my own; that Hope alone sweetens the Violence of my Grief; and at this Separation, I should not be to be comforted, if I did not believe, that Heaven separates us, only to re-unite us the more firmly. It cannot favour me with its Assistance, in the employment the King gives me, without advancing my Happiness, and when the King shall know I am the Son of *Darius*, he will perhaps remember I have done something for his Service.

Upon that Remembrance, next to yours my lovely Princess, my whole Fortune will depend, and since I leave it totally at your Feet, 'tis at your Feet I hope to find it at my Return, but 'tis only to your Goodness that I ought to recommend it; yes, fairest Princess, only to your Goodness, and since you have been generous enough to receive the banish'd, the undone, the miserable *Arsaces* as Prince *Artaxerxes*, you will also without doubt be generous enough to maintain him in the glorious Condition to which you have raised him; this Hope not only sweetens all my Sorrows, but makes me look without Envy upon *Alexander*'s Victories, and would make me find Advantages in my Losses, if I had not some Compassion of my Friends, and if my Reputation were not interested in their Fall. Preserve that for me therefore, my divine Princess, which *Arsacomes*, which *Stratonice* would cruelly take from me, and remember, that I cannot yield my Pretensions to them, nor to any Body in the World, without quitting my Life together with them. Have a care of your self (replied the Princess) that you may as well preserve your self for *Berenice*, as you desire she should preserve her self totally for you; and do you resist the unjust Motions of your Courage, as well as she will resist the Importunities of *Arsacomes*, and *Stratonice*. If your Remembrance of me make you more wary in Fight; and if my Interest make you go into Dangers with more Moderation than you are wont; I'll combate here for you with all the Assurance, and all the Success you can desire. In this, *Arsaces*, I shall follow my own Inclinations as much as your Recommendation, but remember

ber that I will be obey'd in what I demand of you, and that I ſhall be ſufficiently afflicted by your Abſence, without being tormented with the Fears of the Peril you are in.

My Princeſs accompanied theſe Words with many others no leſs obliging, and by thoſe ſweet Marks of my Felicity, ſhe made me know, that nothing but my Departure hindred me from being the moſt fortunate of all Men living. I took leave of her, with effects of Grief which all my Conſtancy could not hinder, and before I went out of her Chamber, I received a Scarf from her, part of which ſhe had wrought with her own Hand, and with which I believed I ſhould be invincible againſt the moſt valiant Enemies. At laſt I was fain to depart, and being retir'd with my dear *Theodates*, I ſpent almoſt all the reſt of the Night in recommending my Life and Fortune to him, which next to *Berenice*, I left in no other Hands but his.

By break of Day, my Lodging was full of Perſons that came to bid me Farewel, and of the chief Officers of the Army that were to go along with me; I took my leave of thoſe, and put my ſelf at the Head of theſe, who generally expreſſed their Joy for the Employment that was given me, and made me ſee, that for all I was a Stranger, I had gain'd their Affections enough to hope for a great deal of good Will and Obedience amongſt them. I anſwered the Offers they made me of their Service, with all the Civility I could poſſibly, and endeavour'd to carry my ſelf toward them as *Ariſtes*, whom only the King's Favour had raiſed above them, rather than as *Artaxerxes*, who once was Heir to the Empire of *Aſia*. This manner of Behaviour perfected the winning of their Affections, and they march'd with a Satisfaction, whereat I my ſelf had Cauſe to be very well ſatisfied. I will not here make a particular Relation of the Number of the Forces I commanded; They were the very ſame, Brother, wherewith you afterward went to fight againſt *Zopirio*, and by the muſter of them, whilſt I made two Days March from *Iſſedon*, I found they conſiſted of forty thouſand Horſe, drawn out of many ſeveral parts of *Scythia*. The *Scythians* you know ſeldom

uſe Foot, and never draw forth any but upon thoſe Expeditions, wherein they meant to employ their utmoſt Strength.

We made very great Marches directly to Mount *Taurus*, and tho' I knew not thoſe Countries, I had Men with me who were acquainted even with the moſt unuſual Paſſages, and by the former Voyage I made with the *Scythians* under *Theodates*, I had ſo well learn'd their Cuſtoms, and their manner of Fighting, that I was no more troubled amongſt them, than I ſhould have been amongſt the *Perſians*. The King had given me divers Perſons of Quality and Command, but amongſt them all, he that I made moſt Account of, was the good old *Cleoreſtes*, *Araxes*'s Father, whom I had particularly demanded of him, and whom I lov'd exceedingly, both for the Conſideration of his Son whom I had known, and eſteemed in *Perſia*, and for that of his own Virtue. Beſides that his Quality was conſiderable in *Scythia*, he was much to be valued for his Perſon, and there were but few Soldiers in the Kingdom that had more Experience than he, or a more perfect Knowledge in Matters of War. And indeed I preferr'd his Counſel before all the reſt, and gave him the Employment of greateſt Conſequence. I'll ſhorten the Recital of this War, as much as conveniently I can, and only tell you the moſt remarkable Events of it. We arriv'd at the Frontiers of the *Tauro-Scythians* without difficulty; but when we would have entred, we found it defended by ſome Troops which *Amaſis* had left to guard it. The Number of Men was not great, but the Places were very advantageous for them, and that was it which put us to ſome Trouble in conquering them, and made us loſe ſome Men about it. Yet did we overcome thoſe firſt Obſtacles, and after a ſharp Encounter remain'd Maſters of the Field, by the Death of all thoſe that defended it, who never turn'd their Backs, nor ever demanded Quarter. The Entry into this Province being free by this firſt Succeſs, we advanc'd in reaſonable good Order toward the Town, near which *Amaſis* lay incamp'd; but I found that War would not eaſily be brought to a Concluſion, and by the firſt Judgment I had been able to make of Men of that Nation, I conjectured

ıjectured that they would defend all their Places to the noſt, and that that Expedition would prove much lon- r than had been imagined. Scarce had we made a y's March toward *Amaſis*, when we heard he was ning to meet us; and having fancied, that the Know- lge of the Country, and their being freſh, would give Men the Advantage over Troops tired out with rching, he deſired nothing but to give us Battel. I iiſed the Gods for that happy forwarding of our Inten- ns, and told my Companions that we could not with any thing more advantageous than the Occaſion of tting a ſpeedy End to the War, which by other Means r Enemies might draw out in length. I found them as reſolute, and as confident as I could deſire; but ing that the Forces I had to lead were a King's whoſe fection I endeavoured to keep, and that upon the Suc- s of that Day depended the beginning of that Reputa- n I hop'd to gain with him, and with it the Eſtabliſh- nt and Repoſe of my whole Life, I was not willing hly to hazard Matters of that Importance, but reſol- d to ſeek our Advantages, in all the Counſels Prudence ıld afford us. When we were certain that *Amaſis* was ⁄ancing towards us with all the haſte he could, and th a firm Reſolution to give us Battel; Let us put ım to the whole Trouble (ſaid I to my chief Comman- ⁄s) and let him weary his Men to come up to us, while chuſe a Place to fight in that may be for our Advan- ;e, and there we'll reſt our Men and Horſes, all the ıe that our Enemies are marching thither. This Coun- being approv'd of, we incamped in a fair Plain, and ⁄ing a long Hill upon our Right-hand, and a little Ri- behind us, we left the Front, and the left Flank open the Enemies approach.

Scarce had we reſted there two Days, which were nt in neceſſary Preparations, when our Scouts brought Intelligence that *Amaſis* was coming to Quarter that ght within a hundred Furlongs of us, and that the ct Day he would offer us Battel. This News wrought :hing in the Courage of our Troops, but a generous patience, and an ardent Deſire to have a Bout with ɔſe daring Rebels: They ſhew'd a thouſand Signs of

it, and in the interim, I was careful to forget nothing that belong'd to my Charge, and ſpent the whole Time I had remaining, to put all Things in the order we could deſire. *Cleoreſtes* took off much of that Trouble from me, and with him *Lectaris*, *Mazentes*, *Amiſoras*, and many others, in whom for their Experience and Valour, I had a great deal of Confidence. The Report our Scouts had brought in prov'd very true, for the Enemies Army incamp'd ſo near us that Day, that in the Night time our foremoſt Troops heard their Shouts, and diſcover'd ſome of their Fires. As ſoon as Day began to appear, the *Scythians* made all the Plain to eccho with the Sound of their Inſtruments, and the Officers, buſying themſelves diligently about the Orders I had given them, drew up their Squadrons according to the *Scythian* Diſcipline. Their Form was exceeding terrible; and of all the Soldiers I ever ſaw, never did I meet with any that prepared themſelves to fight with a Confidence like theirs. I wore a Suit of Arms that Day which the King had given me at my Departure, the Work of them was excellent, and the Matter very rich; but *Berenice*'s Scarf was my moſt pompous Ornament. Having learn'd in part what Order our Enemies kept with their Troops, I drew mine into three Bodies, whereof I took the firſt my ſelf, and gave the two others to *Cleoreſtes* and *Mazentes*, and when they were all in a Readineſs, I rode bare-headed along the Front of every Diviſion, and employ'd all the Eloquence the Gods had given me, to repreſent all the Reaſons that might animate them to the Battel. My Speech was not without Effect, for by good Fortune I had ſo gain'd the Hearts both of Officers and Soldiers, that they cried out aloud I ſhould lead them to the Enemy, and that they fear'd not to be overcome, while they fought under *Arſaces*. Seeing them ſo gallantly reſolved, I would not retain them longer, but covering my Head with a Cask overſhadowed with white Plumes, and with a Horſe-Tail which fell upon my Shoulders, I arm'd my Left-hand with a weighty Shield, and my Right with a couple of Javelins, and putting my ſelf at the Head of my Battalion, march'd toward the Enemies, when they were already beginning to advance. The Interview of the two Armies cauſed a dreadful Noiſe of Voices and Inſtru

ſtruments, but when after we had encourag'd them for
e laſt time, we gave them the liberty to charge, they
oſed with an Impetuouſneſs which admits of no Com-
riſon. The Enemy had but little Infantry as well as
e, and ſo the Fight was equal between the Armies:
r tho' that of our Enemies was ſtronger than ours in
umber of Men, ours was juſtified by the Goodneſs of
s Cauſe, and by the Valour of many gallant Officers I
id with me. The Body I commanded did ſo well, as
preſently broke thro' that which was before us, and
aving routed all the Squadrons of it, we, after a great
:al of Execution, got as far as their Baggage. The
ythians would have fallen to plunder, but I forbad them
ll after the clear Iſſue of the Battel, and it was very
appy I did ſo, for ſcarce had we obtain'd that Advan-
ge, when we heard that *Mazentes*'s Battalion had given
ack, before that which *Amaſis* commanded in Perſon,
id that our Enemies General had gain'd an Advantage
ttle different from ours.

This News made us face about towards them that ſtood
need of our Aſſiſtance, and leaving thoſe we had de-
:ated at liberty either to fly or rally, we went to fly
pon conquering *Amaſis* with a Fury which he could not
aſily withſtand. If I did not fear to offend Modeſty, I
ould ſay, that the powerful Intereſt which guided
e in that Combate made me do Things that are not ordi-
ary, and that peradventure I contributed ſomething to-
ard the winning of that Battel. *Mazentes*, who was
ot utterly defeated, recovered Courage at our arrival,
nd while *Cleoreſtes* with his Body made good our Advan-
age againſt him that was to oppoſe him, we gave *Amaſis*
o ſmart and ſo fortunate a Charge, that we quickly raiſed
ur Party again. All the Forces drew inſenſibly to that
lace, and 'twas with a great deal of Blood, and with
he Death of many thouſand Men that the Victory was
here diſputed. I animated our valiant Warriors the
noſt that poſſibly I could, and after having told them
what they ow'd to their Honour, to the Service of their
King, and to their own Safety, which by Reaſon of the
River that was at their Back they could not hope for
otherwiſe than by Victory, I endeavoured to incite them

to it by my Example, and not ſparing to hazard my Life in their Preſence, I, by the Confidence I ſhew'd, oblig'd them to ſecond me generouſly. I did not ſtrive to meet with *Amaſis*, for remembring that two of the three Brothers had been ſlain by my Hand already, I ſought not an Occaſion to ſhed the remainder of the Blood of that Houſe.

Why ſhould I hold you any longer? After we had fought long and vigorouſly, the Victory declared it ſelf for our Party, and *Amaſis* knowing that Fortune was contrary to him, fac'd about with ſome of his Men, and by Flight, ſought either for his own Safety, or for the Means of fighting another time. In the laſt Rout the Slaughter was very great, and the *Scythians*, who naturally love Blood, and who ſeldom ſpare their Enemies, committed Cruelties which in many Places it was impoſſible for me to hinder: Yet did I do all I could, and where I chanc'd to come it was not without Succeſs. Our Victory was ſo abſolute, that of fifty thouſand Men, whereof the Enemies Army was compoſed, there were thirty thouſand ſlain upon the Place, and we loſt not above two thouſand of ours.

After the Event of this Battel, a little Town which was not many Furlongs from us, open'd its Gates without Reſiſtance, and there we refreſhed our ſelves for a few Days, dreſſed our wounded Men, and put our Forces again in order to proſecute the Victory. I had received ſome Hurts, but ſuch light ones, that I kept not my Bed above four or five Days. Our Army was incamped near the Walls, and all the principal Officers, with the wounded Soldiers, were lodg'd within the Town, where care was taken for Victual, and for neceſſary Subſiſtance. I then had Reaſon enough to be ſatisfied with my Fortune, and that happy beginning of my Arms advanc'd my Deſigns, and raiſed my Hopes enough to ſmother part of my Diſcontents; but the Image of my Princeſs was ever preſent to my Remembrance, and all the Joy I could taſte by my Victory, was ſtrongly moderated by my Trouble for her Abſence. I had no Body with me to whom I durſt impart my Thoughts, and tho' I knew the Affection of *Criton*, who had not forſaken me, and that I had

a

a great deal of Confidence in ſome Servants I had received from *Theodates*, yet had I not enough in either to acquaint them with my Love, or with my Quality, for thoſe were Secrets of too great Importance, to declare them to any Body but *Theodates* and *Ollenia*. Yet had I then a fair Occaſion to write to my Princeſs, and being oblig'd to give the King an Account of the happy Iſſue of that Battel, and of the Condition of our Affairs in that Province, I would not give that Commiſſion but to one of thoſe faithful Servants *Theodates* had put to me, and having commanded him not to deliver the Letter I wrote to that dear Friend, till he were alone with him, I ſeal'd up that to my Princeſs within it, having had trial enough of that Man's Affection, to truſt him as far as that came to. I writ our Victory to the King in a few Words, having given the Meſſenger Inſtructions to inform him more at large, and ſent nothing to *Theodates* but new Proteſtations of Friendſhip, and Recommendations of my Fortune; but the Letter to my Princeſs, if I can remember it, was in theſe Terms:

Arſaces to the Princeſs *Berenice.*

TO burn for you, to be at ſo great a Diſtance from you, and to fear inceſſantly to loſe you, do you think, fair Princeſs, that theſe are light Afflictions to poor Arſaces, *and that his Love, his Abſence, and his Apprehenſions, are not capable to give him that Death, which he has not found amongſt your Enemies Swords, becauſe your Will ordained him to avoid it? For Love, the Gods forbid I ſhould complain of it, it does, and will ever make my moſt glorious Condition: For Abſence my Duty obliges me to bear it, and it is by ſerving her Father that I ought to make my ſelf worthy of my Princeſs; but my Fear hath ſomething in it more cruel, and if I could be ſecure againſt the Misfortunes I apprehend, I ſhould endure the reſt of my Torments with more Courage. I do not doubt, dear Princeſs, of the Conſtancy of your Mind,*

but I dread ſtrong Perſecutions, I dread a Sovereign Authority, and I dread the Fortune of Arſaces ; *yet it is altered, ſince it dependeth only upon you, and I have had nothing at all to do with chance, ſince you were the maker of my Deſtiny. I expect a happy one from your Goodneſs, and it is out of that Hope I will remember you have impoſed a Command of Living, and of Returning upon your faithful*

Arſaces.

I diſpatch'd this Meſſenger when I had given him ſuch Inſtructions as were neceſſary, and a few Days after made the Army decamp, and we march'd in purſuit of *Amaſis*, to reduce that Province under the King's Obedience, but we ſtopt at the firſt Towns we came to, and all thoſe that had never ſo little Strength endured the Siege with marvellous Obſtinacy. That Reſiſtance protracted the War, and kept us all that Summer in the Province of the *Tauro-Scythians*, while in that of the *Agatirſians Amaſis* made up an Army, partly with the broken Forces he had left, partly with new Troops levied in thoſe revolted Countries. We were beſieging *Burſta*, when the Meſſenger I had ſent to *Iſſedon* came back to us, and brought me Anſwers of the Letters he had carried. The King wrote to me with Praiſes, able to have glutted the Ambition of the moſt vain-glorious Man in the World, and promiſed me Recompences infinitely above all I could deſerve. *Theodates* gave me Confirmations of his Affection in the moſt obliging Terms that could be invented, aſſur'd me of the Continuation of his Care, and comforted me with a Certainty of my Princeſs's Perſeverance, and of the little Fruit *Arſacomes* reap'd by all his Induſtry ; but 'twas *Berenice*'s Letter that cauſed my Impatiency, and opening it, when I had kiſſed it a thouſand times, I with incredible Tranſports of Joy read theſe Words :

The

The Princeſs *Berenice* to *Arſaces.*

IF you love me, if you are abſent, and if you be in fear for me, you ſuffer nothing, Arſaces, *which I do not ſuffer as well as you; and I may truly proteſt, that I am not exempt from any of thoſe Diſquiets which my Affection, the want of your Company, and the Fear I am in for you, can make me feel. In this there is a perfect Conformity between us; I cannot condemn an Affection which I have conceived for him, who of all Men living is moſt worthy of it; I bear your Abſence out of the ſame Conſiderations that make you endure mine; but I know not how to defend my ſelf againſt the fear of loſing you in thoſe Dangers, into which you too lightly precipitate your ſelf: Secure me, I pray you, againſt this Apprehenſion, if you will have me ſecure you againſt yours, and think of bringing me home* Arſaces, *if you would find* Berenice *again in the ſame Condition wherein you have left her.*

My Joy was exceſſive at the reading of this Letter, but ſcarce had I begun to expreſs it as much as I might in the Preſence of that Man, when he added Aſtoniſhment to Joy, by the News he brought; He told me that Prince *Orondates*, contrary to the Expectation of all *Scythia*, was come back to *Iſſedon*, and that when the whole Court was going to teſtify their Gladneſs for a return ſo ardently deſir'd, the King his Father being of another Mind, had receiv'd him as a mortal Enemy, and had caus'd him to be impriſon'd in the Caſtle of *Serey*, where he was kept under a very ſtrict and ſevere Guard. O Brother, what Motions did this Diſcourſe ſtir up within me, and in what manner did I receive this News of my dear Brother, of whoſe Life I had been uncertain? I abhorr'd the Cruelty of the King your Father, but was comforted for your Impriſonment, by the Aſſurance that you were alive; it pleaſed me a great deal better to hear

you were Priſoner to the King your Father, than to have been ſtill in doubt you were dead. And indeed I hop'd his Choler would be allay'd in a little time, and that how great ſoever his Reſentments were againſt you, he would ſtill remember that you were his Son, and a Son worthy of his Affections. Upon this Thought I laid Foundations for my Happineſs, and propounded Delights to my ſelf in your Company, which had been interrupted by our cruel Separation; I ſpent ſome time upon that Remembrance, and aſk'd the Meſſenger a thouſand Queſtions about that Buſineſs; but all the Particulars he could tell me about your Impriſonment was, that no Body was permitted to ſee you, and that the Princeſs having with much ado obtain'd the liberty of a Viſit, had never been able to entertain you in private. I judg'd, that all this proceeded but from the firſt brunt of the King's Anger, and hop'd that before my return the Peace would be made, or if 'twere not, perhaps we might find Occaſion to do ſomething in it.

In the mean time we took the Town by Aſſault which we were Beleaguering, and after that, ſome others yielded themſelves to Obedience, but the ſtrongeſt held us ſo long in play, that *Amaſis* had all the leiſure he could deſire to fit himſelf to take the Field again; and ſo he did, with as great an Army as before, and a greater Reſolution to decide the War by a final Battel. This News was very welcome to me, believing it to be the means to finiſh the War, the length whereof I, by reaſon of my Princeſs's Abſence, began to think inſupportable. We march'd directly toward him, taking the Way that could bring us together ſooneſt, and moſt conveniently; but we were fain to take many Places before we got to him, and make our ſelves Maſters (either by Force, or by the Terror of our Arms) of whatſoever we met with in our Paſſage.

This we effected ſucceſsfully enough; But that I may not tire you with the Recital of all thoſe petty Sieges, and of many trivial Encounters, I'll tell you, that we were already Maſters of the whole Province of the Army of the *Tauro-Scythians*, and were drawing near to that of the *Agatirſians*, when the Enemies came within ſight of

us.

is. I found our valiant *Scythians* had a marvellous desire to fight, and having encourag'd them to it as much as possibly I could, I divided the Army into two Bodies, whereof I gave the Left to *Cleoreſtes*, and kept the Right my ſelf. *Amaſis* parted his into four, and march'd towards us wondrous reſolutely. We fought an exceeding bloody Battel, but I will not detain you with relating the Particulars, for we ſhould not ſee the End of my Narration of a long while, if I ſhould ſtick upon every Circumſtance. *Amaſis* and they of his Party fought like deſperate Men, and like Men, who if they loſt that Battel, deſir'd not to out-live it; They made the Victory hang long in ſuſpence, and diſputed it almoſt all the Day with marvellous Obſtinacy; but in the End we carried it, and the Event prov'd more fatal to the conquered than that of the former. Of five and forty thouſand, whereof the Enemies Army conſiſted, there hardly eſcaped two or three thouſand, and thoſe moſt of them wounded, but deliver'd by my Authority from the Fury of the Conquerors. *Amaſis* fighting in the firſt Ranks with a great deal of Valour, loſt his Life, with a great number of Wounds, and by his Death cut up the Root of that Rebellion. We loſt not above three thouſand Men, but had a great many hurt, whom we cauſed to be dreſſed exceeding carefully, and whereof the moſt part recover'd by the Help that was given them. This Victory made us Maſters of both the Provinces, and thoſe revolted People having neither Forces to diſpute them with us, nor Heads to ſtir them up to continue in Rebellion, begg'd the King's Mercy, and came in every Day to make Proteſtations of their Fidelity, and to bring me the Keys of their ſtrong Holds. We hardly needed to draw our Swords any more to perfect the reducing of them; but yet we were fain to ſpend ſome Time in viſiting ſome of thoſe Places, and in ſecuring them to us, and it being then about the beginning of Winter, which is extremely ſharp in thoſe Provinces, we were conſtrain'd to paſs it in ſome of the Towns, and to employ it in ſettling a full Peace, and in ſuch Order as we thought neceſſary to eſtabliſh a perfect Tranquility. That long Abſence would have been intolerable to me, if by the means of *Theodates*

I had not often receiv'd Letters from my Princeſs, and if my tedious Days had not been ſweetned with the Aſſurances ſhe gave me. The King did me the Honour to write to me very often, and in his Letters gave me Praiſes which could not lawfully be due to any Body: When once we had nothing more to do in thoſe Provinces, and that the Seaſon was convenient for our Army to take the Field, we began our March to return to *Iſſedon* with a perfect Joy and Satisfaction. For my part, I could not without being tranſported think I ſhould ſhortly ſee my Princeſs again, and that I ſhould find my dear Brother in *Scythia*. The fancy of theſe Happineſſes grew ſo powerful in my Mind, that it baniſh'd the Remembrance of all my Loſſes, and I was marching with Contentments, not troubled with any mixture of Bitterneſs, when I found they were too great to be ſo eaſily obtain'd. We had already paſſed over a good part of the Way, when I receiv'd an Order from the King which hindred me from going further, and reading the Letter he wrote, I found theſe Words:

The King of *SCYTHIA* to the valiant *ARSACES.*

IT were but Juſtice, my dear Arſaces, *to let you reſt, after having taken ſo great Pains for us, and I ſhould equally deſire your Sight, and the Quietneſs of my Dominions; but I find all* Scythia *muſt be indebted to you for its Safety, and* Arſaces *is the ſtrongeſt Buckler it can oppoſe againſt its moſt terrible Enemies. The Heavens offer you Matter to employ your ſelf for it, and for us, with the Succeſs that uſually attends you, and with it an Occaſion to revenge your particular Quarrels, and to puniſh that barbarous Man, who, contrary to all the Rights of War, detain'd you in a long and cruel Captivity.* Arimbas *the Governor of* Pontus *is entred into our Territories on the ſide toward the* Boriſthenes, *with forty thouſand Men, but he has not yet*

had

d time to make any great Progreſſes, and I am not in a ndition to ſend other Troops than thoſe under your Com- end ſpeedily enough to oppoſe him. Go, valiant Arſaces, *conquer that unworthy Enemy, who hindred you from hting for your Country, and who unjuſtly deprived you of precious a Liberty. I hope for the Victory from your Hand ther than from all your Forces, and yet I will take care to iſe more to recruit your Army, and you ſhall be ſure to ceive Supplies before you ſtand in need of them.*

This Order croſſing my fair Hopes gave me a very nſible Diſcontent, but I quickly found ſome Conſola- on, and had preſerv'd ſo great an Animoſity againſt that uel Man, who had kept me from paying what I owed my Friends, and what I owed to my Reputation, that ne Deſire of taking a glorious Revenge moderated my rouble, and made me turn Head againſt him, with a rm Hope that I ſhould puniſh him, both for the Injury e had formerly done me, and for the Obſtacle he then nterpoſed to my preſent Fortune. All the Affection our *cythians* bore me was needful to put them upon that new Deſign without murmuring; but ſeeing there was a Ne- eſſity of it, they followed me more chearfully than I xpected.

Our Army was then but thirty thouſand ſtrong, ha- ing been oblig'd to leave Garriſons in certain Towns, ut it increaſed eight or ten thouſand Men, which I rew as we march'd out of Places where they might be pared. We took our Way toward *Sendica*, waſh'd by he *Danube* and *Boriſthenes*, and bounded by the Euxine ea, whence *Arimbas* was come down upon the Frontier. Our Marches were long enough for Men that were to ight, and meeting no ſtop to retard us, we in a ſhort ime arriv'd within a Day's Journey of our Enemies. We eſted two Days upon the Banks of the *Boriſthenes*, which was open to us, and the third we paſſed it, and went to ncamp within a hundred Furlongs of *Arimbas*, being re- olved to give him Battel the next Day. Yet did I mean o let him know before, that he was to fight againſt his Priſoner, and calling for a Trumpet, I ſent him away pre- ently with this Letter.

Arſaces

Arſaces to Arimbas.

IT is againſt your Priſoner, O Arimbas, *that you are to decide the Succeſs of this War, and to Morrow at the Head of his Army he'll make you ſee that he was capable to defend his Liberty againſt you, if you had aſſaulted him with equal Forces; I bring you my Head for the Ranſom I fruſtrated you of, you may attack it with more Glory than you did before, and I hope you ſhall pay me yours for the Price of the Liberty of*

Arſaces.

Arimbas receiv'd this Letter with a ſtrange Aſtoniſhment, and when the Trumpet had confirm'd, that the General of the *Scythians* was that ſame *Arſaces*, whom he had ſo long kept Priſoner, he found ſomething extraordinary in that Adventure; but after he had ask'd the Trumpet a thouſand Queſtions, he ſent him back to me with this Anſwer.

Arimbas to *Arſaces.*

SINCE the Gods ſend me my Fugitive again, I to puniſh him for his Flight, will receive the Occaſion they preſent me for that End; and becauſe heretofore I too indulgently ſpared his Life, I'll take it now for that Ranſom wherevof he thinks he has fruſtrated me. We ſhall ſee his Courage at the Head of his Army, and we'll give him Occaſions enough either to revenge his Quarrel, or to fall more gloriouſly than he deſerves.

The

The next Morning it was newly break of Day when ir Troops were already in Battalia; but because I would ive you the Issue of the Business succinctly, I'll only ll you, that I divided them into four Bodies, of ten ousand Horse in each, whereof the first was mine own, id the other three I gave to *Levaris*, *Mazentes*, and *eoreses*, and having put them in as good a readiness as e could wish, I saw our *Scythians* march with an Unauntedness that promised me an infallible Victory. I mitted not any thing I could say to augment their Dere of it, and they answered me with threatning and rrible Shouts: They redoubled them with a greater erceness when they saw the Enemies Army, and scarce as I able to keep them in, and hinder them from rushng on to the Fight with an extraordinary Eagerness; et did they obey me as they were wont to do, and the rmies were already within a Bow-shot of one another, xpecting only the last command to fall on, when having iven order to mine not to stir out of their Place, I allop'd on before them, and seeing *Arimbas* at the Head f his Men, I advanc'd to the middle of the Space that as between the two Armies, and defying him with any loud Cries, I made him understand what it was I esir'd of him. *Arimbas* was a valiant Man, and one hat could not see himself challeng'd before so great a umber, without shewing Proofs of the Courage he had oasted of; He ran toward me full speed, but before he ame close to me he darted one of his two Javelins at me with all his Might, but he fail'd of his Aim, and the Dart having passed whizzing over my Head, fell without ny Effect at the Feet of our Troops; immediately he ook the other in his Right-hand, and ending his Career, ve closed with a very impetuous Shock: He fought with somewhat blinder Rage than I, and so his Javelin only it my Shield, upon which it broke all into shivers, and nine being a little more warily directed, found passage nto the Beaver of his Helmet, and piercing to the hinler Part of his Head, made him fall stark dead in sight of oth the Armies. Ours at that Spectacle sent forth loud Cries to Heaven, and moving at the same time, ran with

a marvellous Violence upon those frighted Troops, already half conquer'd by their General's Death. I strove to open them a Passage, and to clear my self a Way with my Sword, which might make theirs the more easy to them; but we found much Difficulty in the Business, and the Captains that commanded under *Arimbas*, being brave and valiant Men, used all imaginable Endeavours to supply the want of their General. They labour'd a long time in it with Success, but some of the *Scythians* having cut off *Arimbas* his Head, carried it upon the point of a Javelin, and by that Object struck Terror into some of the boldest of them, and animated themselves in such manner, that their Enemies were no longer able to make Resistance.

As soon as they began to be in disorder, the *Scythians* laid hold of the Advantage to so good Purpose, that there was no more possibility of disputing the Victory against them. In short, they won it absolutely, I say, so absolutely, that hardly one of their Enemies escaped with Life, tho' I did all that was in my Power to keep them from that Cruelty; but they had conceiv'd such an Animosity against those injurious Invaders, who pretended to enlarge their Bounds to the utmost Parts of the Earth, that 'twas impossible to save them from their Fury.

Queen *Thalestris*, who till then had hearkned to *Arsaces* patiently, could not longer forbear to interrupt him; I fought under your Command at that Battel, (said she) and was Witness of many of those Passages you have related; but I cannot pardon your Modesty, which robs this Company of the Knowledge of the most gallant ones; you did Actions there beyond Belief, and 'twas with a great deal of Truth that the *Scythians* publish'd the Honour of that Victory to be due to no Body but their General. *Arsaces* could not suffer the Continuation of this Discourse, and to take her off on't, Madam, (said he) you give me an Advantage which belongs not to me, and since our Troops were honour'd with your Presence, without doubt you your self did Actions there which would have darken'd all the Glory of mine, if the Honour of so great a Command had not given them all the Lustre that made them be taken notice of. The Queen

would

ıld have repleid, but the Company hindred her, and *Irſaces* went on thus with his Story.

\fter this Victory ſo happily obtain'd, but yet pur-ſ'd with the loſs of five thouſand of our Men, we no ger had any Enemies to fight withal, and that little :e of the Country *Arimbas* had brought under his Sub-on, being preſently ſettled again under ours, we ſaw whole Frontier quiet, and ſo were permitted to return in toward *Iſſedon*, which we had ſo much deſired. I it with a greater Contentment than the Eſtate of my tune ought in Probability to have given me, and drew r to my Princeſs and my dear Brother with the ſweet-Hopes a Mind is able to conceive. Why ſhould I ıble you with the Recital of our Journey? After ha-g marched a great many Days, which my Impatience de me think exceeding long, I at laſt ſaw the great City *Iſſedon*, but before I was come within three or four ıdred Furlongs of it, I had met my dear *Theodates*, o with a good part of the Nobility was come forth to lcome me.

I received the Honour they all did me with the greateſt vility I could, but all the moſt tender Expreſſions that er Friendſhip produced appeared in the Endearments :ween *Theodates* and me; We could not put an End to r Embraces, nor were the kindeſt and moſt obliging ords in the World ſufficient to make known the leaſt rt of our mutual Satisfactions; I had a thouſand Que-ons to ask him, but I feared leſt a ſecret Converſation ght be thought an Incivility to many Perſons of Qua-y that were with him; and therefore, beginning another ſcourſe with that noble Company, it laſted till we me to the Gates of the Town, which we found full ith a Throng of the Inhabitants that came out to meet . Never did a thankful People welcome their Defen-r, or their lawful Prince, with louder Acclamations, more Teſtimonies of Joy, nor never did any Soldier ceive ſo many Praiſes for ſo inconſiderable Actions. he Cries of the People made but a part of our Glory, r the King himſelf, out of an Exceſs of Goodneſs which then had toward me, came forth of his Palace into e Street to give me glorious Teſtimonies of his Affection;

he ſtretched out his Arms ſo ſoon as he ſaw me appear, and kneeled down upon one Knee to receive the Favour wherewith he was pleaſed to honour me; What ſhall we do (ſaid he) O our valiant Defender, to ſhew you we are not ingrateful? and what can we offer to generous *Arſaces*, which he by his Valour has not already made lawfully his own? We are indebted to him for the Conſervation of our Eſtates, but we before were ingaged to him for that of our Lives, and now neither the Greatneſs of our Obligations, nor that of his Glory, can admit of any further Addition. He ſpake theſe Words holding me in his Arms, and I anſwered him with all the Reſpect I owed to ſo great a King, and a King that was Father to *Berenice* and *Orcondates*. 'Tis your Majeſty (ſaid I) that reduces happy *Arſaces* to Terms of not being able ſufficiently to acknowledge your Goodneſs, the Opportunities you have given him to ſerve you do too largely recompence all that he has done, and that high Fortune to which you raiſe a Stranger, is infinitely above my Merit, and above my Hopes. Alter that Opinion if you have it, (replied the King) ſuch Strangers as your ſelf, do quickly make themſelves known over all the World, and as *Scythia* has nothing that is above you, believe its King poſſes nothing you may not hope for from his Affection. He accompanied theſe Words with new Endearments, and afterward permitted me to ſalute Prince *Carthaſis* his Brother, *Arſacomes*, and many others that were attending on him. When I had received and returned the Civilities of the moſt conſiderable Perſons of the Court, I, by the King's Appointment, retir'd to my former Lodgings, whither I was followed by a great number of the Courtiers, but they preſently withdrew, to leave me at liberty to put off my Arms, and reſt my ſelf, only *Theodates* ſtaying with me in my Chamber. When I ſaw my ſelf free Maſter of my Actions, I fully teſtified my Friendſhip in the moſt tender Expreſſions of Kindneſs, and after having begun them afreſh a thouſand times, I asked him what Condition my Life was in, and conjured him to tell me truly whatſoever he judged my Love could deſire of him. *Theodates* at this Demand appeared not ſo joyful as I had hoped, but keeping a ſerious Countenance,

untenance, from which I drew an ill Preſage; Sir id he) the Account you are to receive of me would b ry unwelcome, if in it you did not find a ſweet Con ation, and if in the Perſecution the Princeſs undergoe u had not a powerful Occaſion to underſtand the Great ſs of her Affection; She has ever been unſhaken to th llicitations of *Arſacomes* and of the Queen, who in fa ur of her Brother has done him Offices to her, that ar worthy of her Quality. She hath ſpared neithe ayers nor Tears to move her, and when ſhe ſaw they ere all to no Purpoſe, and that by her Importunitie e made her Brother but the more odious to the Prin ſs, ſhe took recourſe to all the Power and Credit ſh s with the King; and by my Misfortune it is now ſ eat, that we may ſay with Truth, as we find witl rrow, That one *Stratonice* reigns now in *Scythia*, anc at her Brother is by that means become almoſt the Sove ign of it.

The King by his laſt Actions has ſhewed ſigns of hi Weakneſs, and of his Dependency upon that Woman fter he had long reſiſted, and contented himſelf wit ving *Arſacomes* the firſt Rank in the Kingdom, without couraging him to hope that ſhe ſhould be his Son-in aw, that inſolent Favourite, whom ſo many Prefer ents could not ſatisfy, becauſe they glutted not his ut oſt Ambition, either thro' the violence of his Paſſion ſome other Cauſe, fell ſick, and was brought almoſ Extremity. *Stratonice* ſtirred not from his Bed-ſide, ut made the King underſtand her Life depended abſo itely upon her Brother's Recovery.

The King, who loved *Arſacomes* exceedingly, and ho beſides, by a Meanneſs of Spirit, which had not een obſerv'd in the reſt of his Life, was become a lave to his Siſter, appeared very ſenſible of her Grief, nd was exceſſively troubled for the Sickneſs of his Fa ourite.

The Queen knowing her Power, made uſe of it very unningly, and one Day when *Arſacomes* was extraordi ary ill, *Stratonice* feign'd to be ſo too, and getting into er Bed, put the King into mortal Apprehenſions of he ickneſs; the next Day ſhe ſeem'd to be a great deal

worſe,

worſe, and by all her Actions made the King judge ſhe regarded not her Life, ſince that of *Arſacomes* was in danger. The King ſitting by her, expreſſing with moſt effectual Words how nearly her illneſs touched him, that crafty Princeſs, after having ſigh'd many times, to work upon him the more, Sir, (ſaid ſhe) let us miſerable Wretches die in Peace, and trouble not the Calm of your Mind, for a loſs which needs muſt be but little conſiderable to you; it is juſt that *Arſacomes* periſh, ſince he cannot love the Daughter of his King without being worthy of Death; and it is juſt that *Stratonice* die, both becauſe ſhe is uncapable to ſurvive that deareſt Brother, and becauſe ſhe is uncapable to ſurvive the Loſs of your Affection. Of my Affection, Madam, (replied the King) I proteſt to you by all the Gods, that it never was ſo ſtrong as now, and that it is ſo extremely encreaſed, as in compariſon of my Love to you I do not at all love my ſelf. Ah! Sir, (anſwered the ſubtile Queen, putting an Handkerchief to her Eyes) if you honoured me now with the Affection you gave me heretofore, you would not ſuffer that to die, which, next your ſelf, is deareſt to me in all the World, without ſhewing ſome Marks of your Compaſſion.

She made a ſtop at theſe Words, and the King, who preſently underſtood the drift of them, and who could not eaſily yield to what ſhe deſired, nor favour *Arſacomes* to the prejudice of his Daughter, remained without Reply, and fixing his Eyes upon the Ground, made the Queen ſee the Agitation of his Mind. She ſoon perceiv'd it, and kept Silence with him for a while, but within a little after, deſiring to finiſh what ſhe thought ſhe had happily begun; No, Sir, (added ſhe) for Gods ſake, be not at all diſquieted for my Conſideration, nor uſe any Violence upon your Inclinations for a Perſon who cannot have deſerv'd them; tho' I cannot feel the loſs of them without dying, I will at leaſt endure it without murmuring againſt you, and ſhall be able to put a difference between what was lawfully my own, and what I held merely by your Goodneſs. My Fortune was too high, and (if I dare ſay ſo) too unjuſt, to believe it would be of long continuance; yet has it not ſo blinded me, but

that

at I can behold the fall of it, as an Effect of your Juce, rather than as an Effect of my ill Fate. *Stratonice* d *Arſacomes* had too lofty an Ambition, yet *Stratonice* d none but what it pleaſed your Majeſty to give her, d *Arſacomes* dies for the Expiation of his; if I accomny him to the Grave, your Majeſty ought not to be oubled at it, ſince I ſhall only loſe a Life which was it little dear to you, and toward the Conſervation hereof you were unwilling to contribute any thing. he Queen, as ſhe ended theſe Words, looked upon the ing with the ſame Eyes that had ſo ardently enflam'd m, and at that moment ſummon'd together all her moſt luring Charms, with ſuch a ſoveraign Power, that beg prepoſſeſſed already, he was not able to reſiſt them. e lifted up his Eyes from the Ground, and turning them pon the Queen with a moſt amorous Geſture, Do not ill me with theſe unkind Words, (ſaid he) nor wrong y Love any more with theſe Reproaches. I will do all r thee thou canſt deſire of me, dear *Stratonice*, and tho' cannot conſent to uſe a ſudden Violence upon *Berenice*'s nclinations, I will command her to uſe *Arſaces* as a rince whoſe Deſign I diſapprove not, and I will favour ıy Brother in his Paſſion as much as thou oughteſt to riſh.

The Queen appeared tranſported with Joy at this romiſe of the King's, and ſetting forth all her moſt ttractive Allurements to ſeduce him, before he went om her, ſhe perſuaded him to whatſoever ſhe would. he Princeſs found the Effects of it the next Day, for he King commanded her to viſit *Arſacomes*, and to look ıore favourably upon him than ſhe had done formerly. *erenice* received theſe Words as a Clap of Thunder, nd was ſo extremely troubled at them, that ſhe could ıot ſettle her ſelf again all that Day; but the next Morning the King having met her in a Gallery, and lrawing her aſide to a Window, Well, *Berenice*, (ſaid ıe) will you not viſit *Arſacomes* with me, and have you ıot diſpoſed your ſelf to do that for him which I deſired of you?

The

The Princeſs was ſo ſurprized, that ſhe ſtood without Reply at that Queſtion, and the King having asked it again, and preſſed her to declare her Intention, Sir, (ſaid ſhe) I did not underſtand your Majeſty's Commands, and was ſo little prepared for them, that I ſtill have much ado to apprehend your Meaning. I thought (anſwered the King) I had explain'd my Mind ſufficiently, to leave you no Colour of being ignorant what I meant, but ſince I muſt clear it further to you, I mean, *Berenice*, that you ſhould uſe *Arſacomes* better than you have done hitherto, and that you ſhould conſider him as a Prince whom I love, who loves you, and whom I account worthy to ſerve you.

Ah! Sir, (interrupted the Princeſs) what a Change is this of yours, and what Proofs your Majeſty deſires of your Daughter's Obedience! I ask nothing of you (added the King) which you may not grant me without injuring your ſelf; *Arſacomes* is a Prince as conſiderable by his Birth as by my Love to him, and by the Alliance I have contracted with his Family; and if there be any Diſhonour in ſuffering his Affection, 'tis not upon you, *Berenice*, but upon me alone that it will totally fall.

In ſhort, enquire no more what my Intentions are, but belive I have ever loved you enough to bring nothing upon you that is either ſhameful or diſadvantageous. He left her with theſe Words, and ſhe no ſooner was retired into her Chamber to digeſt them, but ſhe fell in a deadly Affliction, ſhe had ſo much Repugnance to ſhew any ſign of Complacency to the King's Deſires, that ſhe could not hear the bare Propoſal of them without being tranſported: What, (ſaid ſhe, as *Cyllenia* has told me ſince) ſhall *Stratonice* then triumph in this manner over *Berenice*? and ſhall I approve of her Brother's Temerity to ſhew that I am a Slave to her Power? No, *Stratonice*, you are not yet ſo abſolute over me, and what Empire ſoever you have over the King, I ſhall always be able to diſcern his own Inclinations from yours, and in this unjuſt and ſevere Command one may eaſily know 'tis *Stratonice* ſpeaks, and not the King my Father. The Obedience I owe to him alone cannot become ſo general; and

if

if I ſhould endeavour to follow the Orders you have made him give me, that effect of a blind Obedience would not now be in my Power.

I love as much as you can wiſh, and tho' I be inſenſible to *Arſacomes*, I have a juſt Senſe of *Arſaces*'s Merits. Alas! (purſued ſhe a little after) my dear *Arſaces*, muſt I, while you are fighting for my Father, fight here againſt thee with ſo much Ingratitude? and muſt the Injury he would do thee, make me ſhed Tears while thou art ſhedding Blood, and perhaps thy own Blood for his Service? This Remembrance drew ſhowers of Tears from her fair Eyes, which for a long time made her unable to ſay more, but when ſhe had vented part of her Reſentments, ſhe ſent for me, believing ſhe might find ſome Conſolation in adviſing with me.

As ſoon as I came into her Chamber, ſhe roſe to meet me, and taking a Handkerchief from her Eyes, *Theodates*, (ſaid ſhe) now it is that all our Affection to *Arſaces* will be neceſſary, for while that poor Prince obtains ſuch gallant Victories for the King, he ingratefully labours for his Ruin and for mine. 'Tis but too true, *Theodates*, and I believe I ſhall ſufficiently acquaint you with my Unhappineſs, by telling you, that the King hath commanded me to love *Arſacomes*. How, Madam, (ſaid I) has the King commanded you to love *Arſacomes*? Yes, *Theodates*, (replied the Princeſs) and 'tis only becauſe of that Misfortune that I deſir'd your Company, and your Conſolation. With that ſhe told me all the King had ſaid to her, and by that Diſcourſe put me into a marvellous Confuſion. After I had ſhew'd it by a reaſonable long Silence, I took the liberty to blame the King's Weakneſs and blind Affections, and then I deplor'd the Croſſes I foreſaw you would meet with by this Alteration of his Humour.

When I had a little recover'd my firſt Aſtoniſhment, fixing my Eyes upon the Princeſs's Face; and you, Madam, (ſaid I) what will you do for Prince *Artaxerxes*? I will do all that he can hope for from me, (replied *Berenice*) and in ſpight of all the Obſtacles that can happen, I'll never ceaſe to love him, who loves me more than I deſerve, and who for my ſake hath abandoned all. After

this

this Aſſurance, which I will receive for him, (anſwered I) I do not think he will lament his Fortune, and provided you perſiſt in this good Reſolution, I hope that his Return, Time, and the Prince your Brother's Liberty, will overcome all the Diſaſters you apprehend. I'll perſiſt in it to my Grave, (added the Princeſs) and all the ſtrongeſt Conſiderations ſhall never be able to diſſuade me from loving him while I have Breath. Alas, (purſued ſhe) I am too powerfully obliged ever to diſ-ingage my ſelf, and tho' my *Arſaces* were leſs lovely, tho' he were leſs great, tho' he were leſs valiant, I owe too much for what he has done for me, and I owe too much to him, who in my Affection alone finds a Conſolation for all his Loſſes. In the mean time (continued ſhe) it were fit we ſhould give him Notice of my Diſcontent, to make him haſten his Return as much as poſſibly he can, and to aſſure him, that there is no Authority in the World ſo powerful as to ſhake my Affection. At firſt I approv'd the Princeſs's Motion, but preſently after we both judg'd it was not neceſſary to inform you of a Thing that could only trouble you, and whereof the Knowledge could ſerve for nothing, being we were enough perſuaded that your Paſſion made you long for your Return, and that you would not defer it a Minute after the End of the War. The next Day the Princeſs was conſtrain'd to go with the King to *Arſacomes*, but tho' ſhe came to his Bed-ſide, and that by the King's Command, ſhe ask'd him how he did, it was impoſſible for her to diſſemble her Repugnancy, or reſolve to give him a favourable Look. Yet did *Arſacomes* find ſo much Contentment in that Viſit, that he was half cured by it, and ſtrengthening himſelf by the Hopes the Queen gave him, he recover'd his Health within a few Days after.

When he was well again, his Viſits to the Princeſs were very frequent, and ſhe was forc'd by the King's Command to endure ſome of them; but whenſoever he entertained her with his Paſſion, ſhe anſwered him with ſo great a Coldneſs, and ſhew'd him ſo many Tokens of her Averſion, that if he were not the moſt preſumptuous Man alive, he would a thouſand times have loſt all the Hopes which the King's Favour and the Queen's Aſſiſtance had

had given him; they are now upon these Terms, and 'tis not above two Days since I saw him come out of her Lodgings so ill satisfied, that I believe he stood in need of all the Queen's Endeavours to comfort him. The Princess has used all possible Means to obtain Permission once more to see the Prince her Brother, to impart her Discontents to him, and to make him know the Person of *Arsaces*, of whom, by reason of the Spies that were set to observe her, she could never speak any thing in her two former Visits; but she was not able to procure Leave of the King, and we easily judge that his Refusal is an Effect of *Stratonice*'s Cunning, who strives to hinder that Communication, lest it should fortify *Berenice* in her Aversion to *Arsacomes*, and because she in the Prince's Captivity, finds the Continuance of a Power, which his Liberty might probably overthrow.

Theodates ended his Discourse on this Manner, and struck me so with this News, that I could not recover it for a long while. 'Tis true, I found much Consolation in my Princess's Goodness, and esteem'd my self the happiest Man in the World, that I had been able to oblige her to so perfect a Constancy; but I could not digest the King's Injustice, who would force her Inclinations for a Man whom I judg'd to be little worthy of her Love; and remembring the Services I had newly done him, I reproach'd his Ingratitude with Terms full of Resentment, as if he had been acquainted with my Passion, and as if he had known how much I was concern'd in what he did for *Arsacomes*. To the Sense of this Injury, I added the Fore-sight of those Pains and Difficulties, which this Constraint would cause us; and if I may be permitted to say so, some Fear likewise of Change in my Princess's Humour, who by the King's Authority might possibly be brought to forget Part of her Inclinations to me. She'll pardon me this Apprehension, for indeed it was very hard for a young Princess, not supported by any Body, long to resist a Sovereign Power, and against the King's Will to preserve an Affection toward me, which I had no ways deserv'd but by the Greatness of mine, and yet she carried her self (as you shall see by the Continuation of my Discourse) with a Constancy,

and with a Generosity worthy of her self, and of the Prince her Brother. I, in that Conversation with *Theodates*, ask'd him a Thousand Questions touching my dear Brother, but he could tell me nothing of him, save that he was strictly kept, that no Body was permitted to see him; and that notwithstanding the Complaints of all the *Scythians*, who murmured aloud at the Restraint of their great Prince, the King appear'd more obdurate than ever. I hearken'd to this Discourse with a great deal of Grief; but after we had spent some Hours in it, and that I had made my self ready to wait upon the King, we went together to his Lodgings, where *Theodates* left me to go to my Princess, and to dispose her to give me a particular Audience. She was already prepared for it, and by giving out that she was not very well, had freed herself from the ordinary Visits she was wont to receive, and lay upon her Bed, accompanied only with the Princess *Themiris* and *Cyllenia*: I went to her Chamber as soon as I came out of the King's, where I had met the Queen, and by that Encounter had sav'd a Visit, which in Ceremony was to have been paid before that to my Princess.

Though she was to be seen but by very few, it was not thought strange, that after so long an Absence, and in the Condition I then stood in the King's Favour, I should obtain that Privilege. When I came in to her, *Theodates* had led *Themiris* into the Closet, and seeing my Princess come alone with *Cyllenia* to meet me, I cast my self at her Feet, and while I embrac'd her Knees, she threw her Arms about my Neck, and used all the modest Kindnesses to me I could desire of her. The Gods have brought you home, according to my Desires, (said she) nor could they recompence the Sorrow your Absence hath caused in me, but by the Joy of your Return!

I have wished for you a Thousand Times, both for your own Interests, and for mine; and if your Presence would have been pleasing to me, your Assistance would not have been less necessary in the Persecutions I have endured. You have defended your self too well against them, (answer'd I, being ravish'd with those obliging Words) to have stood in any need of my Assistance, and you have been a better Champion for *Arsaces*, than *Arsaces* could

could in Reaſon deſire. All my Blood, fair *Berenice*, is of too mean a Value to purchaſe the ſmalleſt Part of theſe Obligations; and though to requite them I ſhould lay down a Thouſand Lives, (if the Gods had given me ſo many) I ſhould ſtill remain a Debtor to my Princeſs. In what I do for you, (added *Berenice*) I follow my own Inclinations, and my Gratitude, which equally oblige me to love you, nor did I labour leſs for *Berenice* than for *Arſaces*, when I reſiſted the King's unjuſt Commands. O Gods! (cried I with a tranſported Action) could I lawfully hope you would recompence my Loſſes with ſuch extraordinary Bleſſings, and did you reſerve me for this glorious Fortune, when you took away all that you had given me? I ſpake many other Words to this Purpoſe, and my Princeſs having taken a Seat, and commanded me to ſit down by her, after ſhe had ask'd me divers Queſtions concerning my Expedition, told me all that I had heard from *Theodates*, and told it me with an Action which ſecured me from all my Fears, and made me confidently to baniſh all my Apprehenſions. O Gods! how ſweet were her Promiſes to me, and with what incredible Raptures did I hear her expreſs the Averſion ſhe had to *Arſacomes*? Fear nothing, my dear *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) and if you will not offend me, ſuſpect me not of the leaſt Inconſtancy; I know well enough to what Vertue and Obedience oblige me, to have hitherto preſerv'd that Power over my ſelf, which I with Reaſon may keep. The King may well conſtrain me to receive *Arſacomes*'s Viſits, but he cannot conſtrain me to love him; and if he ſhould be ſo weak as to deſire I ſhould marry him, I ſhall have Reſolution enough to prefer Death before that unworthy Match. The Way to hinder it, lies open to us, ſaid I, and whenſoever you are too much importun'd by *Arſacomes*, I wear a Sword that will be able to deliver you from his Importunities; I will not ſuffer that unequal Competitor to have too juſt an Advantage over me, and all the Authority he hath in *Scythia* ſhall not defend him from the Hands of a Rival, not altogether ſo unworthy as he is of the Glory to ſerve you. I brought forth theſe Words with a Tone, that made my Princeſs fear ſome Effect of my jealous Reſentment, but ſhe was

desirous to prevent it, and hindring me from saying more, You are too prudent, replied she, not to foresee the Ruin of your Design in such an Enterprize, nor can you come to any Violence against *Arsacomes*, without discovering to the King, and to the whole Court, what by so many Reasons we are oblig'd to conceal. Do but depend upon the Assurances I give you, and never let us try the most dangerous Courses till the Extremity. You may dissemble as you have done hitherto, and husband the King's Affections so well, as to draw your Advantage from thence, when once the Time is seasonable for you, to declare your self. In the Interim, we'll use our utmost Endeavours for my Brother's Liberty, and if we can obtain it, as he in meeting you, and in the Knowledge of your being alive, will find Causes of an inconceivable Joy, so you, in that ardent Affection which he justly bears you, will find all the Assistance, and all the Furtherance of your Intentions you can hope for. O Gods! (cried I, at this Remembrance) my dear Brother, must your Vertue, which is adored in all other Places, be so ill understood in your own Country? And can those admirable Qualities, which gain you Slaves and Idolaters over all the World, leave you Enemies in *Scythia*? If *Darius*, the Enemy of your Family could not know you without honouring and loving you as his own Son, is it possible you should be used as an Enemy by him that was the Author of your Birth? Then my Affection made me utter a great many resenting Words against the King's Cruelty, and after having consulted a long Time what we should do, or undertake for you, and having vainly contrived Expedients to see you, it grew Night, which made me take my Leave of my Princess, and retire to my Lodging with *Theodates*. We spent the best Part of that Night in consulting of Means to let you hear from us, but the Notice my Princess had given me, that all your Guards were at the disposing of *Stratonice* and *Arsacomes*, and that therefore there was no Trust in them to be hoped for, put all my Designs out of Frame, and was the Cause we durst not think of hazarding a Letter through their Hands; indeed, the Princess at her second Visit, might perchance have watch'd an Opportunity to deliver you one

one her self, without being obſerved, if ſhe had thought on it aforehand to have writ; but then her Hope of procuring a greater Freedom to ſee you, and talk with you in private, was the Cauſe of that Neglect, which ſhe was not a little ſorry for afterward, and which ſhe intended to have repair'd, if ſhe could have obtain'd Leave to viſit you once again; but finding no Poſſibility of that, I reſolv'd in the End to ſpeak to the King concerning you, and to imploy all the Credit I had with him to get the Liberty to ſee you, and for that Purpoſe I went to wait upon him the next Morning as ſoon as he was up; he neglected all the Company that was in the Room, to favour me with exceeding kind Reception, which gave me a greater Confidence than I had before, and made me the bolder to attempt ſomething for the Service of my dear Brother. We continued a while in a general Converſation, but when the King was ready, he took me by the Hand, and drawing me aſide from all the Company, lead me to walk with him in a Gallery, which is near his Chamber. I was watching an Occaſion to ſpeak to him of the Prince his Son, when he himſelf began the Diſcourſe, and in Terms full of Anger and Indignation, aggravated the Cauſe he had to hate him, and never more to have any Confidence in him. I hearken'd quietly as long as it pleaſed him to ſpeak; but when I had let him vent Part of his Choler, and that by his Silence he ſhew'd that he expected to know ſomething of my Opinion, *Sir*, ſaid I, *if your Majeſty would give me Leave to ſpeak my Thoughts with a little Liberty, I really proteſt I would abuſe it no further, than to repreſent to you what a true Zeal inſpires me with.*

The King looking upon me at theſe Words, and expreſſing by his Geſture that he expected the Continuation of my Diſcourſe: *Is it poſſible, Sir*, purſued I, *that that Son of yours, the moſt Great and the moſt Lovely of all the Princes in the World, whoſe Vertue found nothing but Adorers amongſt his greateſt Enemies, ſhould not find ſome Remainder of Love, or at leaſt of Compaſſion in the Heart of the King his Father? Have thoſe Faults which a violent Love made him to commit, and for which he hath ſuffer'd ſo long, ſo ſharp a Penance, choak'd all the Tenderneſs of Nature in*

you, and baniſh'd the Knowledge you had of the admirable Qualities of that Son, whom the Gods gave unto Mankind as their moſt accompliſh'd Workmanſhip? Where were there another King to be found, who would not redeem a Son like Oroondates, *by the Leſs of all his Dominions? And who, in Conſideration of his Youth, and of his Paſſion, would not forgive an Offence, which he accompanied with a Thouſand great and miraculous Actions? Have not whole Years of a ſtrict and cruel Impriſonment puniſh'd a Prince of his Quality ſoverely enough? Are not they that inſpire this Rigour into your Majeſty, and that ſollicit you to a Revenge, which falls only upon your ſelf, ſatisfied with ſo long a Captivity; And if they love the Glory of* Scythia, *ought they not to endeavour to reſtore it its greateſt and moſt illuſtrious Ornament? Pardon me, Sir, I beſeech you, if in this Conceit I indiſcreetly intereſt Perſons, who, it may be, are conſiderable to you; but I feel my ſelf oblig'd by the Honour you do me, to put you in Mind, that their own Intereſt ſets them on, and that they labour to prolong the Prince's Reſtraint, only to prolong their own Authority. Their Thoughts perhaps are yet more deſtructive to the Happineſs of this Kingdom, and of your Majeſty in particular; Time will give you Informations, to which you will lend more Credit than to my Words; but if you hearken to the Wiſhes of all* Scythia, *and diſcern the Counſel of your real Servants, from that of others who are ſwayed by their own particular Ends, you will conſider Prince* Oroondates *as your Son, and thoſe that would ruin him in your Opinion, as Perſons not well affected to your Service.*

The King would not ſuffer me to paſs farther, but ſtopping me in this Part of my Diſcourſe, *Aſtaces*, ſaid he, I know that thou art generous, and that the Report of ſome Vertue which appear'd in *Oroondates* in his earlier Years, makes you ſpeak as you do in his Favour. It is true, he was born with Parts good enough, and by the Care I took in Breeding him, I made him a reaſonable compleat Man; but all his good Inclinations are loſt, and ſince he betray'd me, and betray'd himſelf, with ſo much Baſeneſs and Meanneſs of Spirit, I cannot conſider thoſe Things that were good in him as other than ſo many Advantages which he has unworthily abuſed: If he had Valour, he ſhould have employed it for the

the Good of his Country, and for the Service of his Father, and of his King: If he had Handſomneſs and graceful Faſhion, he ought to have made uſe of it for a more juſtifiable and a more glorious Conqueſt than that of *Darius* his Daughter, and of *Alexander*'s Captive; and in ſhort, if he had Ambition, he ſhould have ſhewed it at the Head of an Army, like that of *Alexander*'s, and according to the Rudiments I had given him, inſtead of waſting the Prime of his Life vilely and ſhamefully in the Service of my Enemy.

Theſe Words of the King's touch'd me ſo deeply, that I could not poſſibly retain a Sigh or two, and ſcarce was I able to keep my Tears from diſcovering how much I was concerned in that Diſcourſe; I ſtrove to diſſemble it as well as I could, and looking upon the King with an unſatisfied Countenance, What, Sir, ſaid I, do you believe then that your Son has ſhamefully abaſed himſelf in ſerving the Daughter of *Darius*? And do you think that King held ſo inconſiderable a Rank amongſt other Monarchs, that you look upon the Purpoſe your Son had to contract an Alliance with him, as a mean and unworthy Deſign? I am not ignorant of *Darius*'s Quality, replied the King, nor was it to the Defect of that I attributed *Oroondates*'s Meanneſs of Spirit; but how Great ſoever he was, he was an Enemy, and my Enemy with a kind of Hatred, which no Conſideration was able to reconcile. Ah! Sir, (added I, more nearly touch'd than before) Is it poſſible that the Misfortunes of the Houſe of *Perſia* ſhould not have mollified you, and that you ſhould behold the Fall of it with the Eye of an Enemy? Hath not poor *Darius*, who was once the Greateſt King in the World, ſoften'd your Reſentments, by ſo lamentable a Death, and by the Loſs of all his Family; and can you conſider that ſad Revolution of his Fortune as other than a dreadful Example of all Kings in general? No, Sir, you can no longer conſerve againſt his Memory, and againſt what is yet remaining of his Houſe, that Hatred which heretofore produced ſuch fatal Effects between you; nor can you look upon the Aſſiſtance *Oroondates* gave him in his Misfortunes as an unpardonable Crime. His Love was the Cauſe of his firſt Faults;

and these last Actions, which you accuse of so much Baseness, were inspired into him by meer Generosity. If *Darius's* Son were alive, he, if he were able, would repay you all the Services *Darius* received from *Oroondates*; he would not look upon you as his Father's Enemy, but as the Father of his dearest Friend; and if Love were joined to those Considerations, he would give you his whole Life; and *Darius*, if he were living, would easily pardon him that Offence. The King, troubled with this Discourse, would not suffer me to continue it. I do not rule my self (said he) by the Example of mine Enemies, and of those, who from the Beginning of their Empire have by all Manner of Ways endeavoured to invade that of my Ancestors. I never desired Peace in a War which they always began; and as my Hatred was more just and more lawfully grounded, 'tis not to be thought strange if it be of longer Continuance. I was infinitely afflicted to see the King so obdurate, but I thought it not fit to press him farther: So having walk'd half a score Steps without speaking, Sir, added I, Since your Majesty's Indignation will not suffer me to say any thing more in Behalf of the Prince your Son, be pleased to do me a Favour that cannot be hurtful to your Service, and give me Leave to have the Honour to make him a Visit: That which I have heard spoken of him, may excuse this Curiosity, and there are few Persons, in whom the Reputation of that Prince hath not begot a just Desire to see him. If I were not bound by Oath, replied the King, I should easily grant your Request; but I have engag'd my self before the Gods to refuse it to all the World. These last Words utterly stopp'd my Mouth, nor had I the Confidence to entertain him further upon that Subject. I left him within a while after, but I was so ill satisfied with that Discourse, that it was easy for my Friends to observe it in my Face. I gave an Account of it to *Theodates*, who was afflicted with me at the little Propensity we found in the King to love them that were of the Blood of *Darius*: I mis-doubted before, said I, that Fortune, the pitiless Enemy of our House, did but feign a Reconciliation with me, to make me the more sensible of her utmost Cruelties; and I perceive by this renew-

renewing of my Misfortunes, that she is preparing something against me, worse, if it be possible, than all she has made me feel already. The Hopes she had given me by *Orcondates*'s Return, find themselves most cruelly deceiv'd, and that which they make him suffer in his Person, is a Presage of what ere long shall suffer in mine. Take not an Alarm so soon (said *Theodates* to comfort me) but hope for better Usage from your Fortune than that you apprehend. It is true, the King hated the Person, and is still an Enemy to the Memory of *Darius*; but when he shall know that 'tis to his Son he is indebted for his Life, and for the Peace of his Kingdom, you shall see all his Resentments give Place, and more due Acknowledgment.

By such like Discourse, *Theodates* strove to allay my Discontents, and the same Day having communicated them to my Princess, she by all Manner of Expressions gave me to understand, how great a Part she bore in them. I laid aside the Resolution I had taken to make my self known to the King so suddenly as I intended, and to demand the Assistance that was necessary for me to revenge *Darius*, to procure the Liberty of those that were remaining of his poor Family, to recover my Dominions, and to repair my Honour; finding that yet I had not Power enough over him, and that it was necessary to dispose him by new and more considerable Services than those I had done him, to forget the Animosity he still kept against our House. In the Interim, I endeavoured by the Means of *Theodates*, and by all kind of Inventions, to corrupt the Guards of the Castle of *Serey* to obtain a Sight of the Prince, but they were always inexorable to my Entreaties, and immoveable to the Offers I caused to be made them. The King still looked upon me with his wonted Eye, and my Princess was as favourable to me as I could wish, but I could not so well disguise my Inclinations to her, but that *Arsacomes*'s Interest made him find Occasion by my frequent Visits, and by our long Conversations, to suspect something, and to redouble his Envy toward me; yet durst he not openly shew it, knowing my Credit in the Court was not inferior to his, and fearing to exasperate the Princess more

more againſt him. But at that Time there happen'd a very ſtrange Alteration in my Fortune; and now it is that I begin to enter into the Diſcourſe of my moſt important Adventures.

Ten or Twelve Days were hardly paſſed ſince my Return, when one Morning as I was going out of my Chamber, I ſaw ſome of the King's Guards at my Door, who forbad me to ſtir forth. I turned toward their Captain, who was come into my Chamber, and whom I had received as one that came to viſit me, and as I was going to ask him the Reaſon of what I ſaw, he clapt his Hand upon the Hilt of my Sword, and demanded it of me in the King's Name. I was ſo ſurprized at that Encounter, that he had taken it from my Side before I obſerv'd what he was about, and that Aſtoniſhment did without Doubt prevent a Reſiſtance, wherein perhaps I might have periſhed.

No ſooner was I diſarm'd, but I looked upon the Captain with a Countenance, and with an Action, that ſtruck a Terror in him, and made him know, it was no trivial Enterprize he had performed in ſeizing upon me on that Manner: What, *Cleobis*, ſaid I, am I a Priſoner then to Day in the ſame Place where yeſterday I was triumphant? Sir, anſwered he, the King has commanded me to ſecure your Perſon, nor have I executed his Order without being very ſorry for it. Do you not know the Cauſe of your Commiſſion, reply'd I? And will you not tell me for what Crime the *Scythians* can accuſe him, whom but the other Day they called their Defender and Preſerver? No, Sir, ſaid the Captain, neither is the King wont to declare his Intentions to us in Employments of this Nature; I can only tell you, that yeſternight after he was in Bed, he gave a long Audience to a Stranger, who of late has been a Follower of *Artacomes*, and that as ſoon as he was come out of the Chamber, I received this Command. Well, added I, I am bravely rewarded by the King of *Scythia*, and the Services I have done him, deſerv'd this Recompence. Though I was ſtirred with a moſt violent Anger, I would not let it break forth into any ſharper Expreſſions againſt the Father of *Oroondates* and *Berenice*, and in the juſt Senſe

I had

I had of that Usage, I preserv'd a Respect which such moving Reasons gave me toward him.

Thus did I see my self a Prisoner, where but the Day before I had appear'd with so great Renown; and tho' this kind of Usage was something hard to a Prince, who knew no Condition in the World above his own, and who by Actions considerable enough had deserved nothing less; yet was I fain to bear that Affliction without murmuring, and to bless what I began to suffer for *Berenice*. I studied at first to find what might be the Cause of my Imprisonment; but when *Cleobis* had told me of the King's Discourse with that Stranger, I immediately believed *Arsaces* was discovered to be *Artaxerxes*. This did not seem at all strange to me, and I knew very well I should have had much ado to be so long in *Scythia*, without having my Face taken Notice of by some Person or other, who might have been in the Court of *Persia*, if the Rumor of my Death had not facilitated my Disguise, and cross'd the Opinion of those, who else might have believed they had seen me there. I underwent this Change of my Fortune patiently enough, and only begg'd of the Gods, that my Princess might not be entangled in my Ruin, the King's Severity giving me some Cause of Fear for her, by the Example I had before my Eyes of his Usage of the Prince his Son. Scarce had I had the Leisure to consider what Resolution I should take, when I saw him come into my Chamber, attended by those in whom he had greatest Confidence, and to whom he declared his most important Secrets, having left his Guards at the Door, that they might not be Witnesses of the Discourse he desired to have with me. I found not that Cheerfulness in his Face which he was wont to have when he saw me, and instead of that kind Reception I usually had from him, there was nothing in his Eyes and Countenance but Marks of his Anger and new Animosity.

I went to meet him at his Coming in, with an Action, but very little troubled, and with my ordinary Respect, and having given him a Salute not much different from what he was wont to receive of me, he looking upon me with a fiery Eye, and with a Face kindled by a Pas-

sion

ſion which he was not well able to maſter, I come to viſit you, ſaid he, Sir *Artaxerxes*, and this Reſpect is a Beginning of what is due to the Knowledge of your Quality; the Ignorance of it has made me faulty toward you, but when I ſhall once have it confirm'd by your own Mouth, I will repair the Errors I have committed, by Uſage more ſuitable to what I owe to the Prince of *Perſia*. After theſe Words, I no longer had any Reaſon to doubt the Cauſe of my Impriſonment; and tho' in them I obſerved an extraordinary Sharpneſs, I was not terrify'd enough to diſown the Blood of *Darius*. I judg'd that ſuch a Baſeneſs would render me unworthy of the Honour I had to be deſcended from him; and that all the Dangers I could apprehend after that Diſcovery, ought not to be ſufficient to make me ſtoop to ſo ſhameful a Diſſimulation. In this Belief, looking upon the King with Confidence enough, They that endeavour to ruin me in your Majeſty's Thoughts, ſaid I, have but ſmall Knowledge of your Generoſity, and of the little Love I bear to Life; but if it were a Thouſand Times more dear to me than it is, and that I manifeſtly ſaw the Loſs of it in this Confeſſion, there is no Fear ſo powerful as to make me diſavow the Honour I have to be of the Race of *Darius*. His Misfortunes, which ought to ſerve all Kings for an Example, have not taken any thing from him of his Dignity, nor from his of the Glory to be born of the firſt Monarch of all the Earth; if I did not declare it ſooner, 'twas becauſe I waited 'till Fortune ſhould preſent me with Occaſions to do you Services that might be conſiderable enough to blot that Hatred out of your Mind which you have born my Family, and to make me diſcover that more handſomly, which I now only confirm to your Majeſty, after the Knowledge you have of it already. Yes, Sir, I am *Darius*'s Son; Fortune brought me into your Territories after ſhe had made me to be taken from among the dead Bodies at the Battle of *Sylena*: Your Vertue, your favourable Uſage, and the Remembrance of what I ow'd to the Friendſhip of *Oroondates*, ſtay'd me here; and the Hope I had in your Generoſity, and in the Support of my dear Brother, brought

me

me back again after the Loſs of my neareſt Friends, and of my Dominions.

I believed that by my Services I might merit from you a Part of that Affection *Oroondates* had received from *Darius*, and that againſt our general Enemy, I could not hope for a more fitting Sanctuary than in the Court of my Friend's Father, and of a King who had honoured me himſelf with his Affection. Nor did I only hope that King and that Friend would afford me a ſecure Retreat, but alſo their Aſſiſtance, to raiſe my ſelf to the Throne again, to revenge the Death and Captivity of my Father, Mother, and Siſters, and to recover my Reputation. If this Confidence in your Generoſity be my Crime, I cannot deny, Sir, but I am truly criminal, and if this Knowledge has made me loſe my Liberty, and cauſed the Change I obſerve in your Majeſty, I will not diſavow it, nor hide him from your Indignation, who hath voluntarily expoſed himſelf to it.

I uttered theſe Words with an Aſſuredneſs, which, as I believe, hindred the King from interrupting me before I had ended them; but when I had done ſpeaking, he turned his flaming Eyes upon thoſe that were with him, and then ſetting them upon my Face with a furious Action, Is it true then, ſaid he, that you are *Darius*'s Son, and that you are bold enough to make a Confeſſion in my Preſence, which cannot but be fatal to you amongſt the *Scythians*? Is it true that you are the Son of my mortal and irreconcileable Enemy, of him who hath often dyed our Fields Red with the Blood of our Subjects, and with mine own, and who many Times brought Fire, Sword, and Deſolation into my Kingdom, and inſtead of conſidering that the Gods have delivered you into my Hands to give me ſome Satisfaction for the Injuries I have receiv'd from you and yours, do you pretend to be protected and aſſiſted by me? I was mov'd with this cruel Diſcourſe; but I yet conſider'd the Father of *Berenice* and *Oroondates*, and ſtruggling againſt my Reſentments to keep my ſelf within the Reſpect I ow'd him, It is true, Sir, replied I, I am the Son of him who was heretofore your Enemy; but that which I have done for you and yours, the Marks whereof are ſtill freſh in the

Heart

Heart of your Kingdom, and in the Limits of your Territories, and which I also bear in many Parts of my Body, may sufficiently tell you, that you have few Friends have done you Services like those you have receiv'd from the Son of your Enemy. No, Sir, I do not believe you can yet hold him for your Enemy, who abandoned his own Interests for yours, and who, to the Prejudice of his Dominions, to the Prejudice of his Blood, nay, and even to the Prejudice of his Honour, fought for you and yours, while his Country was on Fire, and while his nearest Friends became a Prey to the Fury of his Enemies.

I know not whether the King's Anger was then risen of it self to the Height, or that these Words (accompany'd with some Reproaches) drew him to Extremity of Rage; but howsoever it were, he then went beyond the Bounds of that Moderation which was befitting a Person of his Quality, and breaking forth with a Violence which put a Fear into all those that attended him, Ah! Impostor, cried he, dost thou think by thy Artifices to escape my just Indignation, and to disguise those pernicious Designs which brought thee into *Scythia*? Thou camest to execute what thou hadst plotted with *Oroondates* in *Persia*, and 'tis for that End thou hast lived here unknown in my Kingdom; the Example of that Friend hath strengthen'd thee into thy wicked Intentions, and by thine own Confession thou art capable as he is of all Manner of Perfidiousness, after having betray'd thy nearest Kindred, and abandon'd thy Father in his utmost Calamities. O Gods! How deeply did these cruel and injurious Words pierce into my Soul? And how was the Grief I felt for those dear Friends renew'd, by that wrongful, bloody Reproach, of having betray'd them, and of having abandon'd them? Certainly it would be very hard to express it, and 'twill suffice me to tell you I lost part of my Reason, and part of my Understanding, and 'tis the Loss of them, dear Brother, that shall obtain your Pardon for what my Transport made me reply to him, whom Nature hath tied you to with so near a Relation. Ingrateful, barbarous King, said I, If thou hadst any Spark of Honour, or any Sense of Vertue,

Vertue, thou wouldſt remember that thou hadſt not now been alive but for him whom thou uſeſt ſo unworthily, nor wouldſt thou go about to blaſt the Reputation of Two Princes who have nothing to be aſham'd of, but what the one receiv'd from thee, and which the other has done for thee. I cannot draw any Example from my Fore-Fathers of the Perfidiouſneſs wherewith thou reproacheſt me, and that of his cannot corrupt the Vertue of *Oroondates*. Compleat thy Cruelties againſt him, to whom they ſhall henceforth be dearer than thy Friendſhip, and ſince thou neither deſerveſt ſuch a Son as *Oroondates*, nor ſuch a Friend as *Artaxerxes*, glut thy ſelf with the Remnant of the moſt Illuſtrious Blood in the World; and believe, that for all I am alone, and unarm'd, I could yet ſhed thine, if a ſtronger Conſideration than any Reſpect to thee, did not with-hold me.

At theſe ſo bold, and perhaps ſo unlook'd for Words, the King ſtood as immoveable as a Statue; I know not what Reaſon hindred him from letting looſe his Indignation inſtantly upon me, ſeeing he might very eaſily have caus'd me to be kill'd. But I could no longer endure his Preſence, and as ſoon as ever I had done ſpeaking I turn'd about, and went into my Cloſet, ſhutting the Door after me.

Behold, a very ſudden Change, and a ſtrange Revolution of my Fortune! The Day before I had been conſidered among the *Scythians*, as he, who by the Greatneſs of his Credit was the only Man that could diſpute for the firſt Place with *Artacomes*, and then I ſaw my ſelf not only fallen from that Power, but had driven my Affairs to ſuch Extremities, that in all Probability I was like to periſh; yet the Fear of that touch'd me but a little: And as nothing but *Berenice* and *Oroondates* made me care for Life, ſo nothing but their Remembrance was able to diſquiet me: I fear'd that the King was inform'd of my Love, and of my Princeſs's Favour toward me, as well as of my Quality, and this laſt Knowledge of his Rigour made me alſo afraid for the Deſtiny of *Oroondates*. Theſe Apprehenſions were then my ſharpeſt Diſcontents, and if Love and Friendſhip had not united themſelves with my Diſaſters to torment me, I had Courage enough,

and

and was ſufficiently inured to Misfortunes, to bear my Impriſonment with Patience. The King had been upon the very Point of letting his Wrath break forth immediately againſt me, and was ſo highly offended at my Words, that if he had not been as prudent a Politician, as he was a violent and rigorous Enemy, he would have made me find a ſudden Death amongſt the Javelins of his Guards; yet did he over-maſter himſelf, whether it were that he judg'd other Formalities neceſſary for the putting to Death of a Man of my Quality, or that he believ'd the *Scythians* lov'd me too well to ſuffer ſuch a violent Execution without murmuring. Before he went out of my Chamber, he, by an Oath, which is inviolable among the *Scythians*, bound all thoſe that were come in with him, to keep the Knowledge of my true Quality ſecret; and inventing another Pretence for my being caſt out of Favour, he kept the whole World in Ignorance of the true one. The Day was not half run out, when my Guards, leading me out of my Lodging, made me get into a Chariot, and having ſhut the Sides of it up cloſe, removed me to a Houſe that was the uſual Place where Great Perſons were wont to be impriſoned: There was I put, and kept with much Watchfulneſs and Severity. True it is, my Keepers were as civil to me as I could deſire, without Hurt to themſelves; and, remembring the Credit I had lately had amongſt them, and how I had often made uſe of it in their Favour, they comply'd with me in all Things that could not ſerve to the attaining of my Liberty. 'Twas by their Means I procured, that *Oriton* and the Two *Scythians Theodates* had put to me, and who had accompanied me in my Journies, ſhould be of the Number of thoſe that were left to wait upon me: They had the Freedom to go out and in; but from the ſecond Day they were ſearch'd, which was the Cauſe I durſt not venture any Letters by them, for fear of putting the Princeſs, and thoſe in whom I truſted, into manifeſt Danger. The King at firſt had ſome Suſpicion of *Theodates*; and knowing the near Friendſhip that was between us, he believed him not ignorant of my true Quality, nor of thoſe Deſigns whereof he accuſed me, and was going to have clapt him up as well as me; but

but within a while after, having asked him certain Queſtions about it, he found a great deal of Innocence in his Anſwers; and remembring the Fidelity wherewith he had ever ſerved him, he gave over ſuſpecting him, and believed that his Friendſhip to me was grounded upon ſome Obligations I had laid upon him: Yet did he refuſe him Leave to viſit me, and uſed all thoſe ſo ill who dared to ask him, that no Body had the Boldneſs to ſpeak to him of it any more. By this Order it came to paſs, that I was many Days before I heard from my Princeſs, or from *Theodates*, and I paſs'd them with an inconceivable Tediouſneſs and Impatiency. 'Till then, I had not imparted any thing of my Love, or of my true Quality to *Criton*, nor to my Two *Scythians*, believing thoſe Secrets ſo important as not to be truſted to any Man except *Theodates*; but they were made acquainted with my Birth, by the Diſcourſe the King had with me, and I had already received ſo great and ſo certain Proofs of their Fidelity, in a Service of many Years, that tho' the Neceſſity of my Affairs had not obliged me to diſcover my ſelf to them, I thought I could no longer conceal any thing from them without being ungrateful. I laid my Heart therefore open to them, and that laſt Knowledge they had of me, having made them more reſpectful than before, they caſt themſelves at my Feet, and received that Proof of my Confidence in them with ſuch a Zeal and ſuch an Affection, as drew Tears from my Eyes, and made me find ſome Comfort in my Affliction: Yet durſt I not give them any Meſſage to my Princeſs; but they ſaw *Theodates* often, and not daring to bring any Letters from him, for fear of the Hazard they ran of being ſearch'd, they told me by Word of Mouth, how extremely he was griev'd for my Misfortune, and how he had taken a Reſolution, either to periſh, or to find ſome Means to ſee me, and do me Service; they alſo brought me Word from him, that my Princeſs took as deep an Intereſt in my Sufferings as I could deſire; and that notwithſtanding all the Endeavours ſhe uſed to diſſemble her Sadneſs, ſhe could not hinder Part of it from appearing in her Face.

Though

Tho' I doubted not before of my Princeſs's Goodneſs, I was comforted by this News, and prepared my ſelf with more Joy to undergo all the Miſeries I was deſtined to for her ſake; yet could I not, for all my Conſtancy, keep my ſelf from bewailing my Captivity ſometimes, but much leſs for the Danger that threatned me, and for the loſs of that Favour to which I was raiſed, than for the Abſence of my Princeſs; and when I complained of the King of *Scythia*'s Cruelty and Ingratitude, I accuſed him not ſo much for having deprived me of my Liberty, as for having deprived me of the ſight of *Berenice*.

My furtheſt Walk was limited within the Space of a Chamber, a Cloſet, and an outward Room, where *Criton* and my two *Scythians* lay. My Chamber had a Window that over-looked a ſcurvy Garden, but the Window had a double Iron Grate before it, and the Garden was encloſed with a very high Wall. One Night I was in my Bed, where my cruel Diſquiets would not ſuffer me to Sleep, when in that ſtill Silence I often heard a Noiſe at my Window, and hearkening attentively to it, I gueſſed that it was cauſed by certain Stones which were thrown againſt the Iron Bars; I called *Criton*, who was aſleep in the Ante-chamber, and having made him riſe, I bad him open the Window. Scarce had he done ſo, when by help of the Moon, which then caſt a dim faint Light, he perceived a Man in the Garden; he, as ſoon as he heard the Noiſe of the Window, came near enough to be known by *Criton* for Prince *Theodates*; *Criton* no ſooner knew him, but he told me of it, and preſently I leaped out of Bed, with a Joy intermixed with Fear, by Reaſon of the Danger to which my *Theodates* expoſed himſelf. As ſoon as I diſcerned him, I put forth my Head as far as the Grate would ſuffer me, and raiſing my Voice as loud as I durſt, for fear of waking my Guards, who were aſleep in a Room beyond the Ante-chamber, My dear Friend, (ſaid I) is it you? Yes, Sir, (anſwered he) it is even I, and if I have not the Liberty to entertain you at a nearer Diſtance, neither accuſe the fear of Danger, nor the want of my Affection. It is too well known to me to do ſo, (replied I) and you now

give

give me a Proof of it, for which I, with all my Heart, would have diſpenſed with you; 'tis not without trouble that I enjoy this Happineſs, and how dear ſoever you are to me, I had rather want it than ſee you put your Fortune to ſo manifeſt a Hazard. I'll hazard it at any time, and my Life withal, (ſaid *Theodates*) to repay a part of what I owe you, and if need ſhould require me to give it you without any Condition, you ſhall never ſee me avoid the Occaſions. You are too generous in your Friendſhip (anſwered I) to be the Friend of *Arſaces*, and the Heavens ought to have given your Virtue a more happy Choice. We had ſome other Words of Civility upon that Subject, but having put an End to them to fall into a more important Converſation, Well, dear *Theodates*, (ſaid I) how ſtands my Fortune, and what are my Princeſs's Thoughts in this Change of my Condition? Does not Fear, or ſome unjuſt Conſideration of what ſhe owes to her Father's Inclinations, make her abate ſomething of the Affection ſhe has promiſed me? Does ſhe not repent her having look'd upon a miſerable Man? Or, at leaſt, does ſhe not bear his Misfortune with an Inſenſibleneſs, whereof I ſhould never have ſuſpected her? You have leſs Cauſe to do ſo than ever, (ſaid *Theodates*) nor can you complain of her in this Occaſion without doing an Act of Injuſtice, whereof you could never deſerve Pardon. Her Thoughts are more paſſionate and more obliging to you than you ought to deſire, and I can aſſure you, ſhe ſtood in need of all her Courage to keep her ſelf from ſinking under her Diſcontent. *Cyſenia* and I receive Proofs which will not ſuffer us to doubt of it, and you ſhall receive ſome your ſelf by this Letter, whereof I undertook the Delivery.

At theſe Words I felt a Joy, which for a few Moments made me forget all my Afflictions, and calling *Criton* to me again, whom I had ſet to Watch near the Room where my Guards lay, we ſtudied together for ſome Invention to draw up the Letter to us: We cut ſome of our Linen into narrow Pieces, and tying them one to another, made a String long enough to reach to *Theodates*; he took it by the end and tied the Letter to it, and I no ſooner had got it into my Hands but I made *Criton* light

light a Candle, and not fearing *Theodates* would take it ill, I read theſe welcome Words from my adored Princeſs.

The Princeſs Berenice *to Prince* Arſaces.

" IF you have met with Ingratitude amongſt my " Friends, ſtretch not your Reſentments, my dear " *Arſaces*, ſo far as me, but believe my Condition can- " not be good ſo long as yours is bad; I ſuffer becauſe " you are ill uſed, and I ſuffer the more becauſe you ſuf- " fer for my ſake. Not that I bewail my Deſtiny, if " you continue to love me; I ſhall never be unhappy " if you be ever faithful, nor ſhall you ever be unfor- " tunate if *Berenice's* Affection can contribute to your " Felicity; all the Perſecutions that riſe up againſt us " ſhall not be able to ſhake it, and the King of *Scythia* " can ſhew no Cruelty to *Arſaces*, that will not equally " be fatal to

Berenice.

In theſe few Words, which I kiſſed a thouſand times, I found ſo many Cauſes of Comfort, that I in ſome ſort rejoic'd at my Impriſonment, which had afforded me the Occaſion of receiving thoſe ſweet Confirmations of my Princeſs's Affection. This Conſideration would have taken me up whole Hours, if I had not made a Conſcience of abuſing *Theodates* his Patience, who was waiting alone in the Garden, and who, for all he was a Prince, did me the ſame Offices I could have hop'd for from my meaneſt Servant. As ſoon as he was come cloſe under my Window, putting my Head out as I had done before, *Moſt obliging Prince*, (ſaid I) *and the moſt generous Friend of all thoſe that ever bore that Name, your Goodneſs*

puts

puts me into a Confuſion which I am not able to expreſs. 'Tis enough, (interrupted *Theodates*) *reſerve theſe Complements for others, and think now of ſending the Princeſs an Anſwer. Since you will have it ſo,* (replied I) *I'll drive my Incivility to the utmoſt, and I know you will be ſo good as to pardon it, in Conſideration of my Misfortunes.* With theſe Words I went from the Window, leaving my good Friend to walk alone in the Garden. The ſame Servants that had accompanied him, and that had brought the Ladder wherewith he had gotten over the Wall, ſtaid for him in the next Street, and kept watch to hinder him from being ſurprized. *Criton* had found Means, from the beginning of my Impriſonment, to procure Ink and Paper from my Guards, and having given it me, I wrote to my Princeſs in theſe Terms:

Arſaces to the Princeſs *Berenice.*

"NO, my dear Princeſs, I ſhall never be unfortunate "ſo long as you remember me; and all that I "ſhall ſuffer for you, inſtead of afflicting me, ſhall be "accounted a moſt glorious Recompence. It was not "in the King's Power to deprive me of my Liberty, I "loſt it when I ſaw you firſt; and by making me ceaſe "to ſee you, he can neither take it away, nor reſtore "it. Yet has he uſed all the Cruelty he could againſt "me, and not being able to rob me of my Princeſs's "Affection, he has robb'd me of her Sight, ſince that "was a Thing within the limit of his Authority. It is "only in the want of it that my Impriſonment conſiſts, "and being forbidden to ſee you, I ſhould be as much a "Priſoner in the open Field as in the cloſeſt Dungeon. "Fear nothing therefore for me, dear Princeſs, ſince (ex-"cept thoſe that depend on you) this is the greateſt Un-"happineſs I can receive, and being ſecured by your "Promiſe of whatſoever I could apprehend, all that "our Enemies can do is not terrible enough to ſtrike "fear into the Courage of *Arſaces.*

When I had folded up this Letter, I tied it to the String, and going to the Window again, I let it down into *Theodates*'s Hand, with Words full of Affection and Acknowledgment for the good Offices he did me. We had some other Discourse touching what the King's Intentions might be against me, whereof *Theodates* told me he was as ignorant as I; yet could he not believe that King would come to Extremities against me, after the Services I had done to his Kingdom, and to his Person; and we both believ'd he would spin out my Imprisonment in length, to determine of it according to the Event of his Affairs. We had many Things to say to one another, but I fear'd lest *Theodates* should be surprized in so long a Visit, and so I forc'd him to go away, tho' he desir'd to have discoursed with me longer.

After that Night, I saw him and many others by the same Means, but never without bringing me Marks of my Princess's Remembrance, and 'twas by them I lessen'd the Wearisomness of my Imprisonment, which, after the Losses I had undergone, would not have been supportable but for those sweet Consolations. I learn'd by him how *Arsacomes* continued his Persecutions, and though I found a Remedy against that Mischief, in the Knowledge of the little Fruit they reap'd, I saw great cause of Fear, when I heard they were approved by the King; and that insolent Man employ'd his Authority to acquire what he could not obtain by the Merit of his Person.

My Princess did me the Honour to write me divers Letters upon that Subject, and receiv'd a great many of mine about it; you will dispence with me if I repeat them not, for if I should tie my self punctually to a particular Recital, my Narration would be of an extraordinary Length. I had already been many Months in Prison, (the true Cause of it being known but to very few, who being bound by Oath, never declared that Secret to any Body) during which, I at several times heard News from *Theodates*, which produced different Effects in me; The first was that of *Zopirio*'s entring into *Scythia*, whose first Progress *Theodates* told me, and with it the Fright of

all

all the *Scythians*, upon the Report of *Alexander*'s coming. I continued many Days without learning what General would be ſent againſt thoſe dreadful Enemies, tho' *Theodates* brought me Word, that all the *Scythians* petitioned the King for their Prince's Liberty, and cried aloud, that no other Body could be ſet to oppoſe that Conqueror of all the Earth. The King, by the Counſel of the intereſſed Perſon, did long forbear to ſatisfy their Deſires, but in the end, he found ſo much Juſtice in them, or rather ſo little Security to himſelf and his, in the Election of another Commander, (he himſelf being already grown infirm with Years, and very unfit to undertake ſuch an Enterprize) that he promiſed them what they had ſo earneſtly long'd for, and reſolved to put an End to that tedious and unjuſt Captivity for which all *Scythia* had much lamented. I was extremely ever joy'd when I heard this pleaſing News by *Theodates*, and though my Friendſhip to my dear Brother was ſufficient alone to make me ſo, yet I confeſs it was encreaſed by ſome little Mixture of Intereſt. I doubted not but I ſhould ſtill find the ſame Affection from him he had formerly ſhew'd me, and was confident, that in the Authority he was going to recover, I might hope for all the Support, and all the Aſſiſtance I could deſire. Yet did I not think it fit he ſhould ſo ſoon learn the Truth of my Affairs, for fear leſt being but upon the point of getting again into his Father's good Opinion, the Endeavours he ſhould uſe in favour of me might caſt him into his Diſpleaſure more deeply than before, and deſtroy a Fortune that was yet but weakly ſettled. To prevent this Danger, I made *Theodates* ſwear he would do a Thing I ſhould deſire him, and after I had ſtrongly engaged him, that there was no longer any Cauſe to doubt his Promiſe, I entreated him, Brother, that he would not make you acquainted with what he knew concerning me, till the End of the War to which you were going, becauſe I was afraid that News would be enough to make you quit the Employment that was given you, which would certainly incenſe the King againſt you more than ever, and ſo utterly ruin you. *Theodates* made great Difficulty of granting me this Requeſt, but he was ſo faſt tied by his Oaths, (whereof the

Scythian

Scythians have a particular Veneration) that after he had resisted a good while, he was fain in the End to confirm the Promise he had made me. This was the Cause, dear Brother, that hindred him from telling you my Adventures, during that Voyage in which he accompanied you, tho', as he has told me since, it was not without great Violence upon his Inclinations. The Prince of *Scythia* interrupting *Arsaces* here, *It is true*, (said he) *Brother*, Theodates *did religiously observe what he had promised you, and still speaking to me of you as of* Arsaces, *he contented himself with begetting a love in me toward you, by the Recital of your good Qualities, without ever making me suspect that you were* Artaxerxes. *Alas! I was far from imagining any such Thing, and neither Time, nor the continued Course of my Adventures, had been able to make me lose the Remembrance of my dear Brother's Death; it was always present to my Thoughts, and now I call to mind, that when it drew Tears from my Eyes, and made me fall into those Lamentations which I owed to so dear a Memory,* Theodates *would alledge Examples to make me believe, that by some strange Effect of Fortune you might still be alive, and that there had been Persons deceived after as great Probabilities as those which had persuaded us you were dead.* While the Prince was speaking thus, Dinner was brought in, and those illustrious Persons made a pleasing Meal together; during which, their Discourse was partly concerning the marvellous Events *Arsaces* had recounted; and they had no sooner dined, but that Prince disposed himself to go on with the Remainder of his Story; the Company, who feared lest speaking so long might be hurtful to him in his present Condition, would have dissuaded him from continuing his Narration, but he told them he felt himself well enough to make an end of it without prejudice to his Health, and so having put them into their former Silence, he went on where he had left, on this manner.

The End of the Third BOOK.

The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK IV.

THE Joy I had receiv'd, dear Brother, by the News which gave me hope of your Liberty was moderated by that which *Theodates* brought me the Day after, when he told me the King had commanded him to accompany you in that Journey, with *Arſacomes*, who was alſo to go along with you. This was a very ſenſible blow to me, and when I ſaw my ſelf reduc'd to loſe the Conſolation of that dear Friend, I knew not which way I ſhould be able to bear it. *Theodates* ſeemed no leſs troubled at it than I was, and would

rather have drawn the King's Anger upon himſelf, than have forſaken me in a Seaſon when he was ſo neceſſary to me; but I was very unwilling my Friendſhip ſhould be prejudicial to him, therefore repreſenting that I was not like to run any hazard of my Life during his Abſence, and that the King ſeemed to be a little mollified ſince my Impriſonment, I after a long Conteſtation, perſuaded him to leave me for a time. I will not entertain you with the Diſcourſe of our Farewels, the Place would not ſuffer us to embrace one another, but it hindred us not from ſaying all that ſo tender an Affection as ours could make us utter at ſuch a Parting. We took as good order in my Affairs, as the Haſtineſs of your Departure would permit; but it was ſo ſudden, that the next Day I was deprived of that dear Friend, who ſo generouſly aſſiſted me to ſupport the Burthen of my Misfortunes. I heard in what manner the King had fetcht you out of Priſon himſelf, and how he had made you to take Horſe, without giving you the Liberty to come into the Town, or ſo much as to ſee the Princeſs your Siſter, and I judg'd with ſome Probability, that knowing how earneſtly you would intereſt your ſelf on my behalf, he had us'd that Caution in your Departure, to keep you from all Knowledge of me; which I the rather believ'd becauſe he appointed none of thoſe to wait upon you in your Journey, who had been preſent at our laſt Converſation; and for *Arſacomes* if he knew who I was, as it was likely he did, ſince it was by one of his Creatures I thought my ſelf to have been diſcovered, he wanted not many Reaſons powerful enough to oblige him to Silence. I was left in a very gloomy Night, though it were lightened with ſome ſmall Beam of Hope, in the Expectation of your Return, and ſweetned with ſome Comfort by the going away of *Arſacomes*, who by that Means loſt the Opportunity of making any Advantage of my Impriſonment, for the Furtherance of his Pretenſions to *Berenice*; 'tis true, the Queen his Siſter ſupplied his Place well enough; and tormented that poor Princeſs in ſuch a manner, that ſhe was often conſtrained to make Complaints againſt her, by whoſe ill Uſage ſhe was driven beyond the Limits of her uſual Moderation. I receiv'd no more of her Letters

ters after *Theodates*'s Departure, but *Criton* saw *Cyllenia* every Day, and learned News of her, which he still brought me by Word of Mouth. This was some ease to my Afflictions for being deprived of so dear a Sight, yet not so great an one, but that they began to overwhelm me, and to put me into such a Condition as might have mov'd Pity even in the King of *Scythia* himself. I liv'd on this manner, or rather suffered a continual Death, when my Miseries receiv'd a bloody surcharge, and that which I had never apprehended.

Queen *Stratonice* finding with what Repugnance the Princess defended her self against her Brother's Affection, and imagining by the Opinion she had of him, that he was handsom enough to merit hers, believ'd that so strong a Resistance, both against his Persecutions, and against the King's Command, could not proceed from any Thing else but an Aversion caus'd by some other Love.

Arsacomes had already told her his Suspicions of me, and had by that Advertisement oblig'd her to observe my Actions more heedfully than before; nor was she contented with that Care, but that she might be perfectly satisfied of the Truth, she by Presents and Promises, had corrupted one of the Princess's Maids, who had formerly belonged to her, and had so disposed her to a treacherous Compliance with her Intentions, that that disloyal Creature had no other Thought but to play the Spy upon her Mistress's Actions, and to seek Occasions of betraying her, as the Means to make her self a Fortune. The Princess trusted her not with the Secret of her Affection, neither did she mistrust her, but next to *Cyllenia* used her as favourably as any of the rest.

She observed the frequent Discourses between *Criton* and *Cyllenia* during my Imprisonment, and by telling the Queen of them confirm'd her in her Suspicions, and drew more considerable Gifts and Promises, that engaged her further in her pernicious Design, which she found Means to effect when she least expected it. The Princess, contrary to the Request I had often made her, kept all my Letters, and not thinking she had any Body about her so false as to seek to betray her, only lockt them up in a

Cabinet, with thoſe other Things ſhe valued moſt. One Day having ſhut her ſelf up in her Cloſet with *Cyllenia*, after ſhe had entertained her a while with the Grief which her Goodneſs made her ſenſible of for my Sufferings, ſhe called for her Cabinet, and ſought to comfort her ſelf in her Diſcontents, by her Reading of my Letters. She ſat leaning upon a Table, where ſhe read them over one after another, but before ſhe had done, ſhe was ſurprized in that tedious Employment by Sleep, which inſenſibly ſtole into her Eyes.

Cyllenia not taking Notice that her Miſtreſs was fallen aſleep, and being call'd away by ſome other Buſineſs, went very imprudently out of the Cloſet, ſhutting the Door but half way after her. While ſhe was abſent and the Princeſs aſleep, that perfidious Creature who ſerv'd *Stratonice* in her Intention, and had ſet her Mind upon nothing but her Treachery, came either by Chance, or out of Deſign into the Chamber, where ſhe neither found the Princeſs nor any of her Companions; and then drawing near the Cloſet Door, which ſhe ſaw half open, after ſhe had pull'd it a little further, ſhe thruſt in her Head, and ſaw the Princeſs aſleep upon the laſt Letter ſhe was Reading, and by her all the reſt, whereof ſome were open. That Sight made her gueſs inſtantly part of the Truth, and taking Courage by hope of the Recompence ſhe expected, ſhe grew ſo bold as to go into the Cloſet, and to ſteal ſoftly to the Table, where ſeeing that her Miſtreſs wakened not, ſhe took four of my Letters, from among a ſcore of others, and putting them up in haſte, went out again not making any Noiſe, and paſſed thro' the Chamber without meeting any Body that could diſcover her. Within a while after, *Cyllenia* being returned, and *Berenice* awake, ſhe gave her the Cabinet to ſet away, not perceiving the Theft, by reaſon of the number of Letters. The Maid was no ſooner in a Place where ſhe could look upon the Prey, but ſhe preſently caſt her Eyes upon it, and in the firſt Words ſhe read, found all that was deſired of her. She delayed not a Minute to go to *Stratonice*'s Lodgings, and having eaſily obtained a particular Audience, delivered her the Letters ſhe had ſtollen: As ſoon as *Stratonice* had read one of

them,

them, she saw her self but too much confirm'd in her Opinion, and having in the rest found more than she wished for her Brother's Satisfaction, was transported with Anger, and went full of Resentment into the King's Chamber, where she made her cruel Accusation to him, and gave him those Witnesses that were to convince us. The King having formerly received many Letters from me, and was so well acquainted with my Hand, that it was easy for him to know it at the first sight. The Astonishment of *Actæon* at the sudden Alteration of his Shape, was not to be equall'd to that of the King of *Scythia*, at the sight of my Letters, nor can I represent what a Confusion seiz'd on him, when in the first he open'd, he found these Words:

Arsaces to the Princess *Berenice.*

I Should have been dead, fair Princess, but for the sweet Consolations you afford my Miseries, and my Enemies had triumphed over my Life as soon as my Liberty, if they could have triumphed over your Constancy. But can I have any Reason to complain of them, since in the Design of ruining me, they raise my Fortune; and since they seem to have deprived me of my Princess's Sight, only to give me the Occasions of knowing her Affection? This Happiness is infinitely above all my Misfortunes, and for a Gain of so great Importance, my greatest Losses are inconsiderable.

O Gods! (cried the King as he made an end of Reading this Letter) with what kind of Affection will you overwhelm me, and by what Actions have I so highly incensed you, that you should arm my ingrateful Family against my Repose, and against my Reputation? Ah! *Berenice*, foolish *Berenice*, whom I never suspected of such Lightness, and of such a Perfidiousness, by what

Uſage have I given thee Cauſe to betray me, and by what Puniſhments canſt thou be able to blot out the Offence thou haſt committed againſt me? Having ſaid thus, he open'd another Letter, in which, with a like Aſtoniſhment, he read theſe Words:

Arſaces to the Princeſs *Berenice.*

'MY Sorrows are redoubled by the Knowledge of yours, and I am leſs ſenſible of my own Miſeries, than of the Perſecutions you ſuffer from that inſolent Brother, and his cruel Siſter; but pardon me, dear Princeſs, if I cannot be totally afflicted at them, nor think with Trouble of the Aſſaults you receive, without looking with Joy upon the generous Reſiſtance you make in favour of me; my Advantages thereby are too great to loſe the Remembrance of them utterly, and if I had not had an indiſcreet Rival, and a troubleſom Enemy, I ſhould not ſo ſoon have known the Conſtancy of my adored Princeſs.

The King was ſo tranſported at the Reading of theſe, that he had not Patience to read the other Letters, but the Queen open'd them in his Preſence, and made him alſo hear theſe Words in the next:

Arſaces to the Princeſs *Berenice.*

'I Have been told what paſt laſt Night in your Chamber, and what cruel Words the King ſpoke in favour of my Rival; you heard them, moſt lovely Princeſs, without changing your Reſolution, and being all made up of Goodneſs and Generoſity, are ſtill willing

'to

‹ to ſuffer for him whoſe moſt cruel Sufferings cannot at
‹ all merit the leaſt of yours; there is no Juſtice in it,
‹ fair Princeſs; but though there were a great deal leſs,
‹ it is impoſſible for me to condemn you; I confeſs I
‹ love my ſelf too well, ſince I deſire my own Advan-
‹ tage to the prejudice of your Repoſe, but I do it only
‹ becauſe I am yours, and if I ſhould ceaſe to be ſo, I
‹ proteſt to you, I would alſo ceaſe to love my ſelf.

Ah! Suborner, (cried the King) art thou not content with having employed thy Subtilty in broaching thy faithleſs Practices in my Kingdom, without making uſe of it to ſeduce my own Houſe againſt me; and couldſt thou not ſatisfy thy ſelf with ſpreading thy Poiſon among the *Scythians*, without infecting alſo the Royal Family? Let's ſee, (continued he, taking the laſt Letter out of the Queen's Hand) let's ſee the reſt of his perfidious Deſigns, and let us in the Continuation of his Crimes, find evident Matter for our Revenge. Saying thus, he caſt his Eyes upon it, and ſaw that it was written in theſe Terms:

Arſaces to the Princeſs *Berenice.*

I AM not able to repreſent with what an Exceſs of Joy I heard the King's Intention to ſet our dear Brother at Liberty. This Contentment (deareſt Princeſs) is both beyond Expreſſion, and Imagination; and though by the End of his Captivity I hope for that of my Afflictions, I proteſt that our Intereſts make the ſmalleſt part of my Joy, and that as that Brother is infinitely dearer to me than my ſelf, I look upon his Happineſs and his Advantages with a great deal more Satisfaction than mine own. Not that I can have quite forgotten them, (fair Princeſs) but I give them up abſolutely to my dear Brother, ſince I cannot think of his Liberty, without hoping thereby for the Eſtabliſhment of my Fortune.

Thy Hopes are vain, (ſaid the King, as he made an end of Reading theſe Words) thy Hopes are vain, falſe *Arſaces*, diſſembling *Artanemes*, and tho' by thy diſloyal Practices thou corrupteſt my Subjects, and armeſt mine own Children againſt me, know, thou ſhalt reap but ſmall Advantage by it, and ſhalt profit but little either by the Infidelity of *Oroondates*, or by the Weakneſs of *Berenice*. As he ſpoke theſe Words, he walked about the Chamber with ſo furious an Action, that the Queen did not dare to look upon him, and began already to repent that ſhe had put him into ſo violent a Rage. *Berenice*, (ſaid he) *Berenice* has betray'd me, and that Daughter whom I had brought up with ſo much Care, and in whom I thought I had found ſo many Signs of dutiful Obedience, and of a perfect Virtue, does not only love a Man without my Approbation, but gives her ſelf over (faithleſs Girl as ſhe is) to the Love of my mortal and irreconcileable Enemy.

This Thought tranſported him with Fury; and preſently after, I'll puniſh her (continued he) in ſuch a manner as ſhall ſerve for an Example to all that are of her Condition, and ſhall teach all Royal Families the Heinouſneſs of ſuch an Infidelity againſt a Father, and againſt a King. With theſe Words, not being able to maſter his Anger, he ſent for the Princeſs, and at the ſame time having learn'd in what Place ſhe us'd to ſet the Box where any Letters were, he gave his Guards order to bring it him, and to take it by Force if there were any Difficulty made of delivering it.

Berenice had no ſooner received the King's Command, when being ignorant of her Deſtiny, ſhe went to wait upon him in his Chamber, but ſcarce was ſhe come in, when ſhe read her Misfortune in his Face; and as ſhe was commonly in an Apprehenſion of what then had happen'd, ſhe inſtantly found her Condemnation in her Father's Looks. O Gods! How infinitely was ſhe ſurprized, when inſtead of the kind Welcome ſhe was wont to receive from him, ſhe ſaw herſelf melt with ſo terrible an Action, as might have daunted the moſt fearleſs Perſons. He had ſtill my laſt Letter in his Hand, the

the others lay open upon the Table, and presently after they brought in the Cabinet in which were all the rest.

At that Sight alone she seemed half dead, and the King having beheld her awhile in that Trouble which did absolutely convince her, without being able to find Words capable to express his Indignation, broke forth at last in such a Manner, that a Clap of Thunder could not have struck such a Terror into the affrighted Heart of that poor Princess. Thou wicked, ingrateful, perfidious Creature, (said he,) or rather, thou Monster of Infidelity and Ingratitude, behold the gallant Marks of thy Vertue; thou art not only convicted of an Affection which dishonours thee, and which fixes an eternal Blemish upon thy Reputation, but also of holding a treacherous Intelligence with my mortal Enemies, or rather of a Conspiracy against thy Father, and against thy King: See here, see the brave Letters of *Darius*'s Son, and brag of having made him triumph over my whole Family, as thou wouldest have made him do over my Dominions, and perhaps over my very Life. Was it then in Favour of this Lover, that thou so stiffly didst oppose my Command? And didst thou persist in that Pride, and that Disdain of a Birth inferior to thine, only to seek for an Equality in the Remnants of *Darius*'s Blood, and in this divested Prince, who by his horrible Practices, would at the Cost of our House, have repaired the Losses of his own? The poor Princess, at this Torrent of cruel Words, was ready to lose her Senses, and her Understanding; and all she was able to do, was to let her self fall at the King's Feet, where she endeavour'd to appease his Anger by a Stream of Tears, which would have mollified any other Heart but his. His was not at all mov'd with them, but thrusting back this poor Princess, with Eyes sparkling with Wrath, and with an Action full of Cruelty. Think not, said he, by thy deceitful Tears to soften my just Resentments; since thou joinest thy self in a Confederacy with my Enemies to betray me, thou with them shalt bear the Reward of thy Treachery; and since thou declarest thy self to be my Enemy, thou shalt know me to be thine; all my Thoughts of Love, are now turn'd into Thoughts of Hatred against thee; and as thou

haſt hitherto found me an indulgent Father, ſo ſhalt thou now ſee me as ſevere an Enemy. I'll take an Order to croſs thy perfidious Deſigns; and ſince Heaven hath diſcover'd them to me, to thy eternal Shame and Confuſion, I'll make whatever you had prepared againſt me, fall upon thy ſelf, and upon thy falſe Suborner. Let him not ſo ſoon rejoice at the Advantages he has won upon my Houſe; I hope they ſhall benefit him but little, and I ſhall be in a Condition to ſatisfy my ſelf for all the Injuries he has done me.

The King accompanied theſe Words with a whole Heap of Reproaches, which it would be hard for me to repeat; and this poor Princeſs was ſo troubled at them, that ſhe never had the Confidence to open her Mouth in her own Juſtification. Her Silence perfected her Condemnation in the King's Thoughts; and after he had further aggravated her Griefs by many bitter Words, he commanded her to be gone out of his Preſence, and to retire to her Chamber, which was to be her Priſon. You tremble ſtill at this Remembrance, Madam, (purſu'd *Ariſaces*, turning toward *Berenice*,) and in your Face I ſtill ſee the Marks of the Fright you were in at that Encounter; truly the Cauſe was ſufficient, and when I heard the Relation of it, the Apprehenſions I fell into for you, came but little ſhort of yours. Yet did not I hear it till ſome few Days after, but that very Day my Servants were forbidden to ſtir any more out of Priſon, and were preſently deprived of that little Liberty which till then had been permitted them.

I will not tell you, Brother, what *Berenice*'s Thoughts were, ſeeing herſelf expoſed to the Anger of a Father, whoſe pitileſs Nature was not unknown to her; you are not ignorant that ſhe is of a very gentle Humour, and ſuch an one as was no way able to reſiſt thoſe violent Aſſaults. The Confuſion ſhe was in, ſeeing her Affection diſcovered, and her Fear of the King's Threats, tormented her not a little; but ſhe has had the Goodneſs to confeſs to me ſince, (and will pardon me if I tell it you) that the Apprehenſion of my Danger made the greateſt Part of all her Sufferings, not doubting but that the King,

in

in the Violence of his Anger, would fly to Extremities against me.

This Fear, which was not groundless, could not settle it self in her Heart, without a most sensible Affliction; and though she had Cause enough to lament for her own Captivity, seeing she was a Prisoner herself, and confin'd to the Limits of her Chamber, yet did she to that Consideration, add also that of *Arsaces*'s Ruin, and was excessively grieved for fear of seeing a Prince perish, (and perish by her Occasion) who had given himself wholly to her, and who by the Endeavours of his Services, had merited some Part in her Affection. These indeed were lawful Apprehensions, but they would have been much greater, if she had been of the King's Counsel, and had perfectly known his final Resolution. Truly it was a Stranger one than I expected, and you will not only disapprove it, Brother, but will also be astonish'd at it, and if you please will pardon me all those Words, which a just Sense thereof may make me utter in the Prosecution of my Discourse.

I was in my Chamber with *Critan*, where were also *Theocles* and *Hyander*, my Two faithful *Scythian* Servants, when I saw one of those that commanded my Guards come in, followed by Five or Six of his Men, in a Manner that was something extraordinary: He brought a Cup in his Right Hand, and a Dagger in his Left. His Countenance was altered by the Business he had undertaken, and all things about him contributed to make me know his Errand: I was surpriz'd at this Encounter, and guess'd, though with some Repugnance, the Truth of his Commission.

Yet did I give him Time to tell me what it was, and he trembling, and stammering, at last got out these Words; Sir, (said he) the King is resolv'd that you must dye; but the Consideration he has of your Person, and of the Services you have done this State, will not suffer him to employ the Hands of any of his Subjects to do that Office; therefore he leaves it to your own Choice, to take either this Ponyard, or this Poison, for the Execution of his Will.

Ah!

Ah! Brother, (cry'd out Prince *Oroondates*, at this Part of *Arſaces*'s Diſcourſe,) What Prodigies are theſe you tell me, and what Shame will you have me ſuffer, for being born of a more cruel and a more barbarous Monſter, than any that *Africk* ever bred! Oh thou inhuman Tyger, I diſavow thee, and ſince thou doeſt ſo little conſider, both the chiefeſt Blood in all the World, and the Perſon that ought to be moſt dear, and moſt conſiderable to thee; I account my Birth more vile and ſhameful, than if I had receiv'd it from the baſeſt Dregs of the People. *Oroondates*, tranſported by his Reſentment, would have gone on with his Invective, if *Arſaces* had not hindred him by proſecuting his Story on this Manner:

I confeſs, Brother, I was as much ſurpriz'd as you are at this cruel Propoſition, for though I began to be acquainted with the King's Humour, and that I had ſome Reaſon to look for ſome ill Uſage, I could never have believed he would have run to that Extremity againſt a Prince of my Quality, and a Prince who had ſerv'd him both in his Affairs, and in his own Perſon. And indeed I teſtified my Aſtoniſhment by a Silence, which perchance made theſe Guards think it was caus'd by the Fear of Death. True it is, I had ceas'd to deſire it, as well by Reaſon of the Proofs I receiv'd of my Princeſs's Affection, as of the Hopes I had in your Aſſiſtance; and that if my Life (which the Sweetneſs of theſe Hopes began to make much dearer to me than it was before) could be preſerv'd without doing an unworthy Action, I did not diſdain to lay hold of the Occaſion. Yet was it not ſo much the Fear of loſing it, as the Horror of that Uſage, together with Deſpite and Amazement, that caus'd the Greatneſs of my Confuſion. But as great as it was, I quickly recovered my ſelf, and looking upon that fatal Meſſenger with an Action that utterly took away the little Courage he had left: Is it poſſible, ſaid I, the King ſhould have given you this Commiſſion againſt a Prince whoſe Birth is known to him, and againſt a Prince to whom he owes his Life and the Peace of his Dominions? 'Twas he himſelf that gave it me, (replied the Man) but I took it not without Repugnance, yet am I oblig'd to obey his Orders, and punctually to exe-

cute

cute his Commands. What, said I, you who are one of the very *Scythians*, who have often seen me at the Head of your Armies, securing your Quietness by the Loss of my own Blood, are you resolved to obey his Orders, and to execute his Commands? Yes Sir, (answered that barbarous Fellow) and if after the Choice I have offer'd you, your Hand refuse to perform his Sentence, mine must become the Instrument to supply that Defect. I'll save it that Labour, (reply'd I with a Countenance far more resolute than his) and Death is too familiar to me, to borrow that from thy Hands, which I can easily compass with mine own: Give me that Dagger, (continued I, putting forth my Hand) the other kind of Death would little become the Life of *Arsaces*, and he has been prodigal enough of his Blood for thee and all thy Country-men, to make thee believe he can himself pour forth the Remainder of it, to satisfy the Ingratitude of the King of *Scythia*.

As I ended these Words, I took the Dagger from his Hand, but 'twas with an Intention very different from his; and as soon as ever I had hold of it, I lifted up my Arm, and instead of striking my own Breast, stabb'd it up to the Hilt in his. Scarce had I pull'd it out again, all hot and bloody, but instantly I plung'd it into the Body of his neareſt Companion, who by reason of the Suddenness of my Action had not Time to prevent it; and then immediately taking away his Sword, I began to dispute my Life against the rest. I might perhaps have perish'd, being unarm'd as I was, but I was furiously seconded by *Criton*, who had gotten up the Sword of the first, and by my Two *Scythians*, who being resolv'd to die with me, laid hold of the Swords and Javelins of those they saw fall, and plac'd themselves by my Side with a marvellous Courage. By their Assistance, I was quickly deliver'd from my Enemies, who were no better arm'd than we, and the last of them was turning his Back to save himself in the Hall, where he had left more of his Companions; when I saw them come to his Relief, I was so heated, that the Number of my Enemies frighted me but little; but they were so terrify'd themselves by the Death of their Fellows, and by the Resoluteness

where-

wherewith we came upon them, that they did not what they might have done, to revenge their Companions, and to oppose my Passage. True it is, the Knowledge I had that this was the only Way for my Safety, and for my Revenge, and my Desire to sell a Life at the dearest Rate, which they so unworthily would have taken away, made me do Things beyond my Strength, and I gave but few Blows that dispatch'd not an Enemy out of the Fight. *Criton* and my Two *Scythians* assisted me so valiantly, that they laid Five or Six of them at their Feet, and the rest were so possess'd with Fear, that they left the Passage, and the Door open to me. They followed us down Stairs, but very coldly, and those that came in our Way, to hinder our going out, felt such Effects either of our Courage, or of our Despair, that the last of them were constrain'd to open the outermost Gate, to seek their Safety in the Town. We rush'd out after them without Delay, and came into the Street all bloody, and in a Posture that might have caus'd Terror in the most undaunted Persons. My Guards cry'd out in the Streets, and call'd for Help in the King's Name; their Cries drew a great many People together, but the Sight of us put them to a Stand; and when I saw them waver in the Resolution they should take, People of *Issedon*, said I, for you I have often given the better Part of my Blood, and will you favour my Enemies in a base and cruel Assassinate? Or rather, will you see him murther'd by traiterous, ingrateful Wretches, who at your Head has both fought and conquer'd for you? I am your General, I am your Fellow-Soldier *Arsaces*, the very Man to whom you so voluntarily submitted your selves, and the very Man whom you have followed in War with so much Affection.

As I spake these Words, I open'd my Way with my Sword among those Enemies I still had left, and they wrought such an Effect upon the People, that whether it were that my Face representing yet some Idea of that which had commanded them, stirr'd up some Remainders of Respect toward me, or that the Cruelty and Injustice of the Usage which was shew'd me, caus'd some Horror and Aversion in them, or that they had still preserv'd some Remnant of that Love which they had formerly born

born me, they never ſtirred to do me any Hurt; nay, and there were many among them, who, to facilitate my Retreat, peſter'd my Enemies, and clear'd my Paſſage as much as poſſibly they could. They would have done more for my Safety, if they had dared, but I made ſuch Uſe of thoſe Proofs of their good Will, that I got a great deal of Ground toward the City Gate, and kept my Enemies ſtill out of the reach of my Sword. All this Reſiſtance, and all this Favour of the *Scythians* did indeed defer my Death, but it was not ſufficient to have hindered it, without Heaven's particular Aſſiſtance. The News of this Adventure was already carried to the King, and there was no doubt but he would ſoon ſend Troops againſt me.

I was a-foot, without other Arms ſave my Sword, wounded with ſome light Hurts; but thoſe that accompanied me had few parts of their Bodies free, and poor *Hyander* one of my moſt faithful *Scythians*, after he had done Actions worthy of eternal Memory, fell dead by me, leaving his Fellow in a Condition little different from his. I already ſaw more Soldiers coming to the Relief of their Companions, and in ſhort, I ſaw evident Death before my Eyes, ſo that what Reſolution ſoever I had taken to ſell my Life as dearly as I could, I ſhould certainly have loſt it, if the Gods had not ſent me a miraculous Succour; I call it miraculous, becauſe in the conjuncture of it, there was ſomething very extraordinary, which made me obſerve their particular Care of my Safety. I was ſtriving (weary and wounded as I was) to prolong my Deſtiny, when I ſaw fifteen or twenty Horſemen come up to me, at the Head of whom I knew my dear *Theodates*; *Theodates* who I thought had been in the Prince's Army, who was then coming into the Town, or rather who was then ſent thither by the Heavens, for my Relief. Before he came to us he had heard ſome Rumour of that Adventure at his arrival, and his Eyes then telling him the Truth of it, he never ſtood conſidering what Reſolution he ſhould take, but galloping up with his Sword drawn, he did ſo ſcatter thoſe that were before me, that he had a free and open Paſſage. Courage valiant *Arſaces*, (cried he) we muſt eſcape, and *Theodates*

muſt either bring you off from this Danger, or periſh with you. He gave me not leiſure to reply, but as he ſpake thoſe Words, made two or three of his Men alight, and offer'd me their Horſes: For all I was ſo wounded, I got reaſonably lightly upon the firſt, *Criton* took another, but poor *Theocles*'s Strength fail'd him, and at that very moment, his Life forſook him; and having ſtayed but juſt as long as it was neceſſary to me. The Death of theſe two faithful Servants would have been a great Affliction to me, if I had then been in a Condition to be as ſenſible of it as I ſhould have been at another time. As ſoon as I was on Horſeback, I believed my ſelf out of Danger, and trampling thoſe under my Horſes Feet who would have oppoſed my Paſſage, I ran with *Theodates* and his Men to the neareſt Gate. We came thither juſt as the King ſent an Order to have it ſhut, and a Soldier was thruſting out his Arm for that Purpoſe, when giving him a good ſlaſh with my Sword I made him let go his hold, and with the ſhock of our Horſes overturning thoſe that were in our Way, we got out of the Town, and took toward the Field with our utmoſt ſpeed. The Swiftneſs of our Flight carried us off without further Difficulty; and before thoſe whom the King ſent to purſue us were got on Horſeback, we were already above fifty Furlongs from the Town. Then we were favour'd by the Night, which preſently overtook us, and leaving the Highways, we rode croſs the Field, and in the dark toward thoſe great Foreſts that are about three or four hundred Furlongs from *Iſſedon*. As ſoon as *Theodates* thought us enough at liberty to converſe, he ſuffered me to embrace him, and give him Thanks for what he had done toward my Eſcape. Never were more ardent nor more tender Endearments us'd between two Friends; and tho' I had not lov'd *Theodates* ſo well as I did, yet I ſhould have been the moſt ungrateful Man in the World, if ſuch a Service as that I had newly receiv'd, had not made me abſolutely his. My dear Deliverer (ſaid I.) or rather the Genius of *Arſaces*'s Life and Fortune, muſt you needs happen to be, or rather muſt you appear by Miracle in all Places where you are neceſſary to my Safety, and muſt I never find an Occaſion to requite you with an

Office

Office of the like Nature. I am ſo extremely engaged to you already, (replied the affectionate *Theodates*) that you have no Cauſe at all to wiſh me more oblig'd; and I much more juſtly am indebted to you, for a Life which ſhall ever be readily laid down for yours.

We accompanied theſe Words, and many others of the ſame Stile, with an infinite number of moſt dear Embraces; and when we had given Truce to them a little, we began to ask one another concerning our mutual Affairs. I preſently queſtioned *Theodates* about the Prince my Brother, and about the Occaſion of his going to *Iſſedon*; but he would tell me nothing, till he had heard my laſt Adventures, and the Cauſe of the Condition he had found me in. I told him all I knew, and he at that Relation trembled, and deteſted the King's Cruelty and Ingratitude, in Terms which gave me new Aſſurances of his hatred to Vice, and of the Affection he bore me. When I had given him that Account, he ſatisfied me in what I deſired to know of him, and made me the Recital of the Battel you had won againſt *Zopirio*, with ſome other of your particular Actions, which fill'd me with Joy and Admiration, and then coming to the Cauſe of his Departure from the Army: My Impatiency to ſee you again, (continued he) and the perpetual Apprehenſions I was in for you, made me return toward *Iſſedon*; but I wanted not another Pretence, and ſome Conteſtations that paſſed between *Arſacomes* and me in matter of Command, furniſhed me with one ſpecious enough, to ask the Prince's leave to come away. Not but that I was very much troubled to leave him, and had a deſire to ſhare in the Glory of what he had yet to do; but as often as I remembred that I had left you a Priſoner, and expoſed to the Anger of a Prince, whoſe Humour was well enough known to me, I fell into Diſquiets that would not ſuffer me to take any Reſt. I even repented me that I had obey'd the King's Orders, and that I had forſaken you in a Condition wherein my Services were moſt neceſſary to you. I alſo found a great deal of Conſtraint in the Oath you had exacted from me, and not being able to tell the Prince the Truth till the End of the War, I on the other ſide could not endure to leave him in that Ignorance as

my

my Departure. I therefore found out a middle way, and reſolved to deliver him that in Writing, which it was forbidden me to tell him; yet obſerving what you had enjoined me, and tying him to the ſame Promiſe I had given you; for this Purpoſe, the Day of my Departure I wrote theſe Words:

Theodates to Prince *Orcondates*.

AN inviolable Oath has kept me hitherto from declaring what it is neceſſary you ſhould know; but ſince I now have the liberty, I will acquaint you, Sir, that the Great Arſaces, *to whom the King your Father is indebted for his Life, and your Country for the Quietneſs it hath enjoyed, is Prince* Artaxerxes *the Son of* Darius, *your dear Friend, your dear Brother; and he, on whom you have beſtowed ſo many Tears. The Gods ſaved him miraculouſly from that Battel where you thought he had been ſlain, and ſince that Time, his Paſſion for the Princeſs* Berenice, *and the Occaſions of doing Service to your Friends have kept him in* Scythia. *He is now a Priſoner to the King your Father, who, without doubt has diſcovered him to be the Son of* Darius: *Judge of his Danger by your Knowledge of the King's Humour; and by the Friendſhip that was between you, think what Hope he ought to have in your Aſſiſtance.*

O Gods! (cried Prince *Orcondates*, when *Arſaces* had repeated that Letter) how many Misfortunes would the ſight of theſe Words have ſav'd me, if you had ſuffer'd me to caſt my Eyes upon them! but you had otherwiſe decreed, and that Knowledge would certainly have overturned the order of thoſe Adventures that have ſince befallen me. My Voyage to *Suſa* had been diverted, or at leaſt deferred, and I ſhould have thrown off all Conſideration of my own Intereſt, and run to the Succour of my dear *Artaxerxes*. Ah! Brother, how I blame your unjuſt Cautiouſneſs, in concealing from me the only Happineſs,

pineſs, from whence in the ſad Condition I then was, could draw any Conſolation; and how I ſhould hat *Theodates* for being ſo ſcrupulous, if I had not ſo mar Occaſions to love him for the good Offices he has don you! It is true, Brother, (continued *Orondates*) and will ſay this to ſpare you ſomething of your Diſcourſ *Theodates* the Day of his Departure having drawn me aſid deliver'd me a Letter faſt ſealed up, and before he gav it me, Sir, (ſaid he) in this Paper which I preſent you you ſhall find the moſt pleaſing News, and the moſt im portant Advertiſement you can receive, doubt not at a of the Truth of thoſe Things you ſhall find written i it; it will be very eaſy for you to certify your ſelf; bu before I put it into your Hand, be pleaſed to give m your Word, that you will not open it till the End of thi War. I was ſurprized at this Diſcourſe of *Theodate* and being deſirous to perſuade him to ſatisfy my Curi oſity ſooner: If this News (replied I) will be ſo plea ſing to me, why do you ſo long defer my Knowledge c it, and why do you delay a Joy, which it is in your Powe to give me? Sir, (anſwered he) I am bound up by on of thoſe Oaths which you know the *Scythians* can neve violate; and becauſe I am injoined this Silence no lon ger than for the Time I have demanded, you may the ſee in this Paper, what my Abſence will not ſuffer me t tell you by Word of Mouth: But, Sir, I beſeech yo keep it carefully, and if you love your ſelf, forget no to look upon it as ſoon as the War is at at End. I wa conſtrained to make *Theodates* the Promiſe he deſired, an I lockt up that Paper amongſt thoſe Things which eſteem'd moſt precious. *Theodates* went away the ſam Day, leaving me much troubled for his Departure; bu he had alledged ſuch ſpecious Reaſons to me, touchin the Diſputes he had had with *Arſacomes*, and the impor tant Affairs which recall'd him to the Court, that I coul not deny him the leave he demanded. I kipt this Wri ting with a great deal of Care, and with as much Impa tience to read it as ſoon as I ſhould be free of my En gagement, but the ſtrange Revolution that happened i my Soul, and in my Affairs by the arrival of *Tyreus*, an by the News of *Statira*, put it quite out of my Head a

my ſudden Departure from *Orchilachia*; and till I was at Sea, I never remembered the Box I had left it in, which the new Trouble of my Mind had made me utterly to forget, with many other Things that were very dear to me.

The Gods would have it ſo, (replied *Arſaces*) to bring our Affairs to the Iſſue they had ordained, and to make us know the Power they reſerve unto themſelves over all our Propoſals. It is true, Brother, *Theodates* told me almoſt the very ſame Words we have now heard from you; and then in a few more he inform'd me of the Condition he had left you in, and of the Succeſs of his own Journey, wherein he had no conſiderable Encounter. When we had thus inſtructed one another, we fell to think whither we ſhould retire, and what order we ſhould take to get my Wounds dreſt; they began to trouble me, and tho' they were but ſlight ones, the violent Exerciſe I had uſed, my Loſs of Blood, and the Vapours of the Night made them a great deal worſe than elſe they would have been. *Criton* was no leſs hurt than I, but his Affection was ſo ſtrong, that he forgot his own Danger, to take care for mine. After we had conſulted a while, *Theodates* would need have us go (for the remainder of that Night, and the Day following) to the Houſe of one of thoſe Men who then was with him, which was not above an hundred Furlongs from the Place where we were. I ſuffered my ſelf to be guided by his Will; and as we rode along, *Theodates* calling all his Company to him, drew a new Promiſe from them of their Fidelity, and tied them by all manner of Entreaties to be as ſecret as we could deſire. They were all very affectionate to their Maſter, and ſome of them were ſo well inclined toward me, that they were both forward in promiſing, and exact in performing what we demanded. The Houſe we went to, was far from any great Road, upon the edge of a huge Foreſt, and in ſuch a Place as was very unlikely to be ſuſpected for our Retreat. When we were come thither, the Maſter of the Houſe, and ſome Women we found there, took the beſt order they could to receive us, and by good Fortune, *Theodates* having brought his Phyſician, and his Chirurgeon from the Army

Army with him, furniſhed him with ſuch Things as were neceſſary for any Wound, we had the Means to have ours dreſſed as commodiouſly as if we had been at *Iſſedon*. I had but three, and thoſe were found to be ſuch light ones, that it was not probable they ſhould keep me long in Bed. They applied what they thought moſt convenient to them, and likewiſe to *Criton*, who had four or five greater than mine, but not at all more dangerous. The Phyſician enjoined me to give the remainder of that Night to reſt, contrary to the Intention I had to ſpend it in diſcourſing with *Theodates*, but the next Day I had Leiſure enough, and ask'd him a thouſand Queſtions concerning my dear *Oroondates*. By what he had done in my behalf he was become as criminal as I, and his acceſs to Court was as difficult, and as unſafe as mine. His Affection to me was ſufficient to make him undergo it with Patience, but I was afflicted at it for him, and his Love to *Theomiris* being known to me, I doubted not but he had a reſtleſs longing to ſee her again.

We fell to deliberate what we ſhould do with our ſelves, and were a long time before we could reſolve. I was too firmly fixt in *Scythia*, to ſuffer ſo much as a Thought of going out of it, and would rather have expoſed my ſelf to a thouſand evident Deaths, than have perſuaded my ſelf to leave *Berenice*; but if I had been ſo minded, it would have been exceeding difficult to do it, and we doubted not but that the King had ſent to ſtop all the Ports, and to lay all the other Paſſages by which we could get out of his Territories. We believ'd alſo, that how ſecret ſoever our preſent Retreat was, it could not ſerve us many Days, and that thoſe Perſons the King employ'd in ſearch of us, might at laſt diſcover where we were. After we had long conſulted, we believed the ſureſt way we could take would be to return to *Iſſedon*, where when the firſt Troubles were once paſt over, we might have free Entrance by Night, and where by reaſon of the greatneſs of the City, and the multitude of new Affairs that ſprung up daily in the Court, and in that Throng of People we might eaſily lie conceal'd in Houſes that were at *Theodates*'s diſpoſing, eſpecially being the

King

King would never ſuſpect we were returned thither, and that we had taken Sanctuary ſo near him againſt his Anger. This Advice ſeem'd the moſt reaſonable, and was moſt conformable to my Humour, and to the Deſire I had not to go far from *Berenice*; in the mean time we ſent two witty underſtanding Fellows back to the Town, to fetch us ſuch Things as we wanted, and to enquire after what concern'd us. They performed their Commiſſion very cunningly, and in the Evening brought us the ſame News we had imagined. They told us that the King had appeared more ſenſible of this laſt Diſcontent than of any other he had ever felt before, and that for all the remainder of that Day, thoſe that were moſt in his favour, hardly had the Boldneſs to come near him, that he had left no Body at Home that was able to ride on Horſeback, but had ſent them all in purſuit of us, and that (as we had foreſeen) he had given order to ſtop all the Ports and Paſſages of his Kingdom; that nevertheleſs they ſaid in Town that none but thoſe that were intereſſed, obey'd his Orders without Trouble, and that the better part of *Scythians*, amongſt whom the Name of *Arſaces* was ſtill in high Eſteem, rejoyc'd at his Eſcape, and favoured him with their Wiſhes as much as they could poſſibly. In this News I found ſome Conſolation; but when I ask'd them concerning *Berenice*, they could tell me nothing, but that the Rumour was, how ſince this Accident the King had commanded ſhe ſhould be ſecurely guarded, and that very few Perſons were allow'd to ſee her. This Report made me gueſs at part of the Truth; and I believed that the King's late Reſolution againſt me, had proceeded only from the Knowledge he had gotten of my Paſſion. Ah! how many Torments did that Belief cauſe in me, and how many Sighs did it coſt me when I thought what that fair Princeſs was like to ſuffer by my Occaſion! O King of *Scythia*, (cried I) revenge thy ſelf upon *Arſaces*, but do not puniſh *Berenice*; and though that be the moſt ſenſible Part wherein thou canſt wound thine Enemy; remember that *Berenice* is above thy Laws, and above the Empire of Mankind. The ſecond Day being paſſed, *Theodates* was of Opinion we might be much more ſecure in *Iſſedon*, (as we had already thought)

thought) than in that Houſe; and for that Purpoſe, having ſent to make ready a Lodging, where he was confident we might ſafely truſt our ſelves, we took our Way thither the Night following. Our Wounds would not ſuffer us to ride without Inconveniency, but I had ſo great an Inclination to be near *Berenice* again, that I was ſcarcely ſenſible of mine, and having rid it in little more than two Hours, we entered after Midnight into the Town; the Gates whereof were not wont to be ſhut.

Thoſe that accompanied us, parted ſeveral Ways, ſome of them retiring to other Places; and for fear our Number ſhould at laſt make us be diſcover'd, we kept none with us but thoſe that were neceſſary. They did our Buſineſs, and fetch'd us in Proviſions by Night: And during the Day-time, the Doors of our Houſe were always ſhut; it ſtood in the moſt unfrequented Quarter of all the Town, and we were ſo careful to make no Noiſe, that there could hardly be any Ground for Suſpicion; yet we were in a great deal of Danger: But by the Order the King had taken, we ſhould have been ſo likewiſe in any other Place; and the Conſideration of Peril was not able to drive me from *Berenice*. *Theodates* and I were not without a good Number of Friends at Court, to whom we ſhould have made no Difficulty to truſt our ſelves if it had been neceſſary; Prince *Carthaſis*, tho' the King's Brother, would have receiv'd us with a great deal of Affection; and his Friendſhip to us, as alſo his Averſion to *Anſacomes*, and his Diſcontent at the Greatneſs of his Fortune, were ſufficient to have made him expoſe himſelf to any Hazard for our Conſideration. Many others, of the Chief of *Scythia*, had ſtill preſerved the Remembrance of the good Offices I had done them, or which I had endeavour'd to do them, during the Time I was in Favour, and I doubted not but that they would have ventured very far to have obliged me; but I was loth to endanger them without Neceſſity, believing that whoſoever ſhould be known to be my Friend would be the firſt ſuſpected, and that by how much the more ſecret our Abode was, ſo much the ſafer alſo would it be. We paſs'd many Days on this Manner, which being ſepa-

rated

rated from my Princeſs I ſhould have thought unſupportable, if ſince the Time of my Impriſonment I had not been inur'd to ſuffer. Yet was I marvellouſly impatient to ſee her, and as ſoon as my Wounds permitted me to ſtir out of my Bed, I reſolv'd to hazard that Viſit in Spight of *Theodates*'s Oppoſitions. What, ſaid I, ſhall I be free in *Iſſedon*, and not ſee *Berenice*? Ah! *Theodates*, my Life is not ſo dear to me as that I would ſecure it at that Rate, nor can I preſerve it without *Berenice*, ſince it is for her alone that I preſerve it. *Theodates* comply'd with my Deſign when he ſaw he could not divert it, and that Conſent was not without ſome Mixture of his own Intereſt. The Princeſs *Theomiris* was ſtill with *Berenice*; and for all her Father's rigorous Uſage of her, at the Requeſt of Prince *Carthaſis*, ſhe was allow'd the Company of that Princeſs, whom ſhe made her Bedfellow, and to whom ſhe had entruſted her moſt ſecret Thoughts. *Theodates* had not ſeen her ſince his Departure, but now he hoped we might ſhare that Viſit together. After we had long contrived the leaſt difficult Expedients, we at laſt made Choice of this: We remember'd that the Princeſs's Anti-chamber had an Iron-grated Window not very high, which ſtood towards a little narrow Street that was almoſt uninhabited by reaſon it was ſo exceeding dirty, that hardly any Body could paſs that way; it was not near the Palace-gate, nor any of thoſe Places where there us'd to be Guards, and I thought when all the World was aſleep, we by that Window might get to ſpeak with *Cyllenia*, and by her Means enjoy the Happineſs of entertaining our Princeſſes.

After we had thus laid our Deſign, we got on Horſeback, and took Two truſty Men along with us, whom we ſet as Centinels at each End of that Street, to come and give us Notice in caſe they ſhould ſee any Body that could diſcover our Converſation. In the mean Time, there had happen'd Things to my Princeſs, which the Courſe of my Story hindred me from telling you, and which I will not recount before I paſs further in my Narration. It would be fitter (interrupted *Oroondates*) that my Siſter ſhould tell us them herſelf; that little Breathing Time will not be needleſs in ſo long a Diſcourſe as this

this of yours, and it were good you reſted your ſelf a little, that you may be able to proſecute the Remainder of it without Inconveniency. *Arſaces* made no Anſwer, leaving the Princeſs to ſatisfy her Brother's Motion, and *Berenice* knowing his Deſire: Since you will have it ſo, Brother (ſaid ſhe) and that your Friendſhip to *Arſaces*, and your Knowledge of his Vertue makes you pardon my Faults and my Diſobedience, I'll ſpare him the Trouble of a few Moments, but I have ſo little to ſay, that ſo ſhort an Intermiſſion will not be much conſiderable.

I will not ſtand to repeat again (after the Relation you have heard already from the Prince) what my Thoughts were after the cruel Accident of the Surprizal of my Letters, and after the Knowledge I had both of my being made a Priſoner, and of the Danger that threatned Prince *Artaxerxes*. It ſuffices me, that you already know I lov'd him, as much as I believed I ought, and as he could deſire, to make you judge that my Apprehenſions for him, were my moſt cruel Diſquiets. All my Comfort was in the Princeſs *Theomiris*, and in *Cyllenia*, whoſe Company the King afforded me, notwithſtanding all his Severity. *Theomiris* had obtained it of the King, by her Father's Mediation; and my Enemies thought it was not neceſſary to take *Cyllenia* from me, who, in their Opinion, was not able to do me any Service that could be prejudicial to them. It is true alſo, that I received thoſe petty Satisfactions by the Queen's Means, who with a cunning Diſſimulation feign'd to be ſorry for the Misfortune which ſhe her ſelf had brought upon me, and by Courteſies of ſmall Importance, endeavour'd to take off Part of that Reſentment which ſhe believ'd I had againſt her. However it were, *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia* continued with me; and tho' at that Time I could not gueſs by whom I had been ſo unworthily betray'd, I never had ſo much as a Thought to ſuſpect *Cyllenia*. I therefore truſted theſe Two dear Perſons with all my Diſcontents, and with all my Fears; and they help'd what they could to ſtop that Current of Tears which both thoſe Occaſions drew from my Eyes in great Abundance. Ah! Couſin, ſaid I, Ah! *Cyllenia*, I am undone, and poor *Artaxerxes* will undoubtedly be ruin'd, and

ruin'd meerly by my Imprudence. That Prince, who after the Loſs of his Empire, and after the Loſs of all his Friends, has eſcaped ſuch numberleſs Dangers, under the Weight of which, any other Body would certainly have ſunk, he who amidſt his moſt bitter Enemies has ſubſiſted with ſuch Dexterity, and who, by ſo many marvellous Actions, had ſo well gain'd their Affections, falls now by my Fault alone; and ſhe, to whom all *Scythia* owes that Repoſe it holds from him, owes the Life of its King, and owes ſuch important Services, ſacrifices him now her ſelf, to his Inhumanity, and to his Ingratitude.

Ah! *Berenice*, (continued I) *Berenice*, the ſole Cauſe of that great Prince's Misfortunes, do not out-live his Afflictions; and if thou canſt not hinder the Death of poor *Artaxerxes*, at leaſt fore-run it with thine own. I accompany'd theſe Words with ſuch a Flood of Tears, and expreſs'd my Sorrow by ſuch moving Actions, that not only *Themiris* and *Cyllenia*, but even People of the harſheſt Natures, would have been touch'd with Compaſſion. I ſpent the Remainder of that Day in this Employment, and would needs have my Couſin lie with me, to help to paſs away the cruelleſt Night I had ever known in all my Life. She alledg'd all the Arguments ſhe could think of to cure me of my Fears, and often perſuaded me it was not likely the King would fly to Extremities againſt a Prince of *Artaxerxes*'s Quality, and againſt a Prince to whom (beſides that of his Life) he had other ſuch important Obligations; that the whole Kingdom ſo powerfully indebted to his Valour, would oppoſe the King's rigorous Intentions; and that he was too prudent and too politick to ſuffer himſelf to be tranſported by his Paſſion to ſuch a Violence as was without Example.

I found ſo much Reaſon in this Diſcourſe of *Themiris*, that if my Affection had been more moderate, I ſhould without Queſtion have drawn ſome Comfort from it; but it was by her Inſpirations, and by thoſe of *Cyllenia*, that I took a little Courage, and reſolv'd to ſuffer the King's Preſence, and to receive his Words with more Spirit than I had done before. Having ſpent the Night on this Manner, and likewiſe Part of the Day following, I ſaw the King when I leaſt expected him, come all alone into

into my Chamber. I roſe up, and went to meet him trembling, but he diſdained my Reception, and ſitting down upon a Chair, from whence he darted nothing but furious Looks at me, I come not to viſit thee, ſaid he, ungrateful and diſloyal Girl, I owe not ſo much Civility to the Daughter-in-law of *Darius*; and from hence forward I cannot deſire thy Sight otherwiſe than as that of my moſt mortal Enemy. I come only to reproach thee with thy Ingratitude and Infidelity, or to examine thee as a Criminal convicted of Treaſon againſt her King. Speak, wicked Creature, continued he, (ſeeing me daunted, and ſtrucken half dead with theſe cruel Words) open thy Mouth to excuſe thy ſelf, and juſtify thy Infidelities, if it be poſſible: Didſt thou then think the Son of my implacable Enemy more lovely than a Prince whom I had choſen for thee, and whoſe Affections I had expreſly commanded thee to receive? And if thou hadſt Eyes to judge of the Difference there was between *Arſacomes* and thee, hadſt thou none to conſider that without betraying thy Father, and ſhamefully betraying thy ſelf, thou couldſt not match thy ſelf to the Enemy of thy Houſe, and to him who had baſely abandon'd his Father and his Country to their new Enemies, to compaſs his treacherous Practices againſt their old ones, and to ſeek that Revenge by his ſecret Conſpiracies, which neither he nor his could ever find in open War. While the King brought forth theſe Words, with many others of the ſame kind, I ſummon'd all my Courage to anſwer him, as he commanded me; and tho' I had much ado to recollect my ſelf, at laſt my Affection, my Senſe of the ill Uſage I receiv'd, and the Reſolution I had taken, gave me a Boldneſs that was not natural to me; and when the King had made an End of ſpeaking, charging me expreſly to reply, Sir, ſaid I, I would not open my Mouth for my Juſtification, if your Majeſty had not abſolutely commanded me; but in my preferring *Arſaces* before *Arſacomes*, I can find no Cauſe at all to repent my ſelf. *Arſacomes* is born my Father's Subject, *Arſacomes* never did me nor mine any conſiderable Service, nor have I ever ſeen any thing either in the Actions or Perſon of *Arſacomes*, which ought not to have oblig'd me to hate him. *Arſaces*

is born the Greateſt Prince in the World, and born Prince of a Thouſand Subjects more conſiderable than *Arſacomes*; I owe to *Arſaces* the Life of the King my Father, and my own; the Queen, and *Arſacomes* himſelf, are indebted to him for theirs, and all *Scythia* for the better Part of its Tranquility; and in the Action and Perſon of *Arſaces* I never ſaw any thing that ought not to oblige me to love him.

If he be the Son of your Enemy, Sir, the Services he has done you, makes you ſufficiently to know how far he is from any of thoſe Thoughts you ſuſpect him of; if he had deſired the Ruin of your Kingdom, he would not have labour'd with the Loſs of his Blood for its Conſervation; and if your Majeſty's Life had been odious to him, he would not ſo viſibly have hazarded his own for its Defence. I alledge not to your Majeſty the Engagements we had to him, in the Perſon of the Prince my Brother; the good Offices he did to him paſs not, in your Opinion, for Obligations; and tho' I were indebted to him for none but thoſe which are common to me and to your ſelf, for the Loſs of his Dominions, which he perhaps might have avoided, if your Service had not taken him up; and for the particular Proofs of Affection he has ſhewn me, I think that thoſe he has receiv'd from mine, will not paſs for ſhameful Crimes, and that I have confin'd them within ſuch Limits, that the Want of your Allowance is all the Fault can be objected againſt me.

I have lov'd him enough to prefer him before a Subject, before whom he would have been moſt worthy to be preferr'd, though their Qualities and Obligations had been equal. I have lov'd him enough to approve of his Services, waiting till ſuch Time as thoſe he daily rendred you, ſhould diſſipate the Hatred you bore his Family, by the Example of the King his Father, in whom leſs important Services, in Spight of your inveterate Enmities, begot ſuch tender Affections to the Prince my Brother; and in ſhort, I have lov'd him enough, to hope with Contentment, that after that Reconciliation, you would make Choice of him rather than of *Arſacomes*, and rather than of any other Body that ſhould have an Ambition like that of his; but I have not lov'd him enough to

grant

grant him any Favours that can make me bluſh, not to give him either Promiſes, or Hopes to the Prejudice of what I owe unto your Majeſty. Though *Arſaces* and I were both at Liberty, I ſhould be ſo much Miſtreſs of my Affection to him, as to die rather than marry him, or go along with him without your Conſent; but if your Will would agree with my Inclination, I confeſs, Sir, that as much forſaken by Fortune, and as much diſpoſſeſt of his Dominions as he is, I would prefer him before all the Princes upon the Face of the Earth. At theſe laſt Words, the King was ſo enflam'd with Anger, that it was eaſy to obſerve it in his Face; and ſtamping with his Foot as he roſe up from his Chair with a furious Action, And I ſwear by all the Gods, ſaid he, that I will quickly deprive thee of the Liberty of preferring him before any Body; and thy indiſcreet and diſloyal Affection ſhall be more fatal to my Enemy, than all thoſe ill Deſigns he has againſt me: Prepare thy ſelf for his Death, which I tell thee of my ſelf, as thou telleſt me of thy perfidious Tricks, and believe that the only Choice I will leave thee from hence forward, ſhall be that of *Arſacomes* living, or of *Arſaces* in his Grave. If the Beginning of the King's Diſcourſe had not prepar'd me for theſe cruel Words, they were enough to have made me loſe my Senſes; but as well reſolv'd as I was, I had much ado to keep my ſelf from falling into a Swound, and ſinking into *Cyllenia*'s Arms, who ſtretch'd them forth to receive me, ſeeing me change Colour, I look'd upon the King with a pitiful Eye, tho' it were animated with ſome Reſentment; and ſtruggling againſt my Faintneſs, The Aſhes of *Arſaces*, ſaid I, ſhall ever be dearer to me than the Perſon of *Arſacomes*; and if I muſt ſhut up my Hopes, and my Life it ſelf within this Tomb, I ſhall eſteem my Condition happier than if I were Poſſeſſor of all *Europe* with *Arſacomes*. Theſe laſt Words abſolutely took away all the Reaſon the King had left; and though my chiefeſt Deſires were bounded in *Artaxerxes*'s Safety, I innocently procur'd his Ruin by theſe extraordinary Marks of my Affection. The King could hardly retain himſelf in the Violence of his Wrath; but moderating it by Thought of that Revenge he was preparing, he was content with

expressing his Intention by furious Looks, and went out of my Chamber with a Face, which sufficiently declar'd the Action he was going to do.

I remain'd in an Excess of Grief, or rather in a mortal Agony, and all the Apprehension I had for *Arsaces* before, was nothing in Comparison of the Fears which then assaulted me. I knew the King's relentless Nature, and his Perseverence in his cruel Resolutions, and that put me into the most sorrowful Condition you can possibly imagine. *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia* knew not which way to comfort me, and I think without their Assistance, I should have been reduc'd to very great Extremities: I every Moment fancied poor *Arsaces* either dead or dying; and the King's harsh Threats had made such an Impression in my Mind, that 'twas impossible for me to withdraw my Thoughts one Minute from that fatal Remembrance. Oh! King of *Scythia*, said I, if thou accomplish thy horrible Resolutions, thou mayst well prepare thy self for the Funerals of thine own Children; *Berenice* will not survive poor *Artaxerxes*, and *Oroondates* will without question die for Grief, when he shall hear that the Life of his Brother, for the Loss whereof he had shed so many Tears, was preserv'd only to fall under the Hands of the King his Father. I said many other Things, whose Length makes me forbear to entertain you with them, and I tormented my self on that Fashion, from the Morning when the King had visited me, till it was almost Night. I did not believe he would so soon have gone on to the Execution of his Threatnings; and I thought that to put a Man of *Arsaces*'s Quality to Death, there had been need of longer Deliberation: But I was deceiv'd in my Opinion; and tho' my Fears were violent, they were not of so long Continuance as I expected. It began already to grow late, when there was a great Noise in the next Court, and amidst a great Confusion of Voices, I heard the Name of *Arsaces* pronounced several Times.

At that reiterated Name, my mortal Fears were redoubled, and I fell immediately into the most fatal Apprehension. *Arsaces* is dead, (cry'd I, throwing my self from my Bed) *Arsaces* is dead, Cousin, and without doubt

doubt this confuſed Noiſe is caus'd by the News of his Death. As I ſpoke theſe Words, I ran to the Window which look'd into the next Court, where I ſaw a great many People got together, who, in Talking of *Arſaces*, clapt their Hands, and did Actions that ſufficiently expreſs'd their Aſtoniſhment. I then heard a Calling for Arms, and ſaw a great many of the Guard go out of the Palace in Haſte and Confuſion. All theſe Things confirm'd me in my Fears, and I was ſo affrighted, that I had not the Heart to open my Mouth, to ask what the Matter was. In the End, the Court was almoſt empty, and for a Time there was a Silence as great as the Noiſe had been before it. *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia* laid me upon my Bed again, in a Condition little different from that of Perſons without Life. I had not the Leiſure to expreſs my Sorrow by any long Complaints; for, before I had been a Quarter of an Hour upon my Bed, I heard a ſecond Noiſe in the Palace, much greater than the former: It wrought the ſame Effect upon me the other had done; I ran quite tranſported to the Window, where I heard the Officers of the Guard, and many others, calling for Horſes with a Precipitateneſs which teſtify'd their Diſorder. After I had remain'd a while in a Perplexity that cannot be expreſs'd, I ſaw Prince *Carthaſis*, my Uncle, come into the Court; by good Fortune he preſently caſt up his Eyes to our Window, and I no ſooner ſaw that he look'd upon me, but I, by Signs, and by a beſeeching Geſture, begg'd a Viſit from him. As ſoon as he underſtood my Meaning, he came up the Stairs, and finding no Hindrance at my Chamber-door, by reaſon of his Quality, he entred immediately after. He was acquainted with all Matters that paſt, both by what he had heard from the King, and what I had confeſt to him my ſelf; nor had I any Cauſe to repent that he was privy to them, ſeeing there were no Proofs of Affection I could deſire of him which he did not give me, in all manner of Encounters to his utmoſt Power. He had a particular Eſteem, and a ſtrong Affection for *Arſaces*, and I receiv'd no ſmall Aſſurance of it by his Action in coming toward me.

I caſt my ſelf all in Tears into his Arms, but I had not open'd my Mouth to ask him the cruel News I apprehended, when to put me out of Pain, he broke Silence firſt. Madam, ſaid he, the King would have put *Arſaces* to Death, but his Genius is more powerful than that of the *Scythians*; and it is not under ſuch Arms as theirs, that ſuch a Man as he can fall.

Theſe Words began to produce their Effect upon me, when my Uncle, not willing to let me ſuffer any longer, *Arſaces* is eſcap'd, ſaid he, but he has made his Eſcape like *Arſaces*, and he has appeared to the ingrateful *Scythians* the ſame gallant Man that he appeared to the affectionate *Scythians*, when he fought ſo valiantly at the Head of them. They have found him as invincible againſt them, as againſt *Arimbas*, and the *Tauro-Scythians*; and if they formerly have ſeen him win Battles by his ſole Courage in the Front of their Armies, they To-day have ſeen him alone and unarm'd, make Rivers of Blood run through the Streets of their principal City, and with his Sword hewn out the Way unto his Safety, through the Midſt of their ſtouteſt Troops. This News having ſuddenly reviv'd me, I appear'd very different from what I was a few Minutes before; and tho' I was little inform'd of the Truth of the Buſineſs, I found my ſelf well enough recover'd to enquire it of the Prince, and to hear the Relation of it very patiently.

He told me what had paſs'd in *Arſaces*'s Eſcape, as it was reported by thoſe of his Guard which had ſeen the Beginning, and by thoſe that had ſeen the End of that Action; he made me often grow pale and trembling during this Diſcourſe; but when at laſt I heard, that after having done Things above the Power of Man, he had been ſuccour'd by *Theodates*, whom the Gods had miraculouſly ſent him, and that with him he was gotten out of the Town, with little Probability that he could be overtaken by thoſe that were ſent in Purſuit of them, my greateſt Fears began to vaniſh, and I remain'd as quiet, and as well contented, as I could hope to be in that Adventure. Modeſty forbad me to expreſs my Satisfaction to the full before my Uncle; but he ſaw it plainly enough in my Face, and might eaſily have perceiv'd

ceiv'd in his Daughter's, if he had obſerved it, that ſhe was not inſenſible at the News of *Theodates*'s Arrival, and of the Share he had in the Deſtiny of *Arſaces*. Tho' I conceal'd Part of my Thoughts from my Uncle, I made him acquainted with the reſt, not being willing to give him Cauſe by my Diſtruſt, to repent the Affection he ſhew'd me in a Seaſon when it might be prejudicial to him.

When I had teſtify'd my Acknowledgment of that Favour as much as poſſibly I could, I entreated him to be gone, for fear a long Viſit at that Time might be hurtful to him, and gain him the King's Jealouſy and Hatred.

After his Departure, *Theomiris* and I diſcourſed of that laſt Accident; and when I had compared the Danger *Arſaces* had eſcap'd, with thoſe he might yet fall into, and the Rigour of his Impriſonment with that of his Abſence, I thought my Condition a great deal better than it was before, and I believ'd I ought to be much better pleas'd with my Fortune, than I had been at any Time ſince my Reſtraint. I paſs'd that Night in leſs violent Diſquiets; and tho' I found Cauſe enough of Affliction in being ſeparated from *Arſaces*, I found Matter of Comfort in his Liberty, and choſe much rather to have him abſent, than a Priſoner to the King my Father. *Arſaces*, ſaid I, will not forſake me, I am too certain that he loves me, to fear he will go away from me for ever; he by being out of the Way for the preſent, will avoid the evident Danger that threatens him, and without doubt will return to me as ſoon as he can be able to make uſe of my Brother's Aſſiſtance. *Oroondates* has lov'd him too perfectly, ever to abandon his Intereſts, and perhaps my Father's cruel Humour may one Day be appeas'd, by the Conſideration of his whole Family.

Thus did I flatter my ſelf in my Diſcontents, while the King was tranſported with Exceſs of Rage, not being able to bear the Affront he had receiv'd, with ſuch an Impatiency as nothing can repreſent. He baniſh'd thoſe Guards for ever that had eſcap'd *Arſaces*'s Valour, and look'd upon the reſt with ſuch a Fury as put them all into a mortal Terror. What, ſaid he, has a ſingle Man in the Heart of my Dominions, in the chiefeſt of all my

Cities, near my own Perſon, and in the midſt of all my Subjects, made his Eſcape from my juſt Indignation; and are the *Scythians* ſo cowardly as to quit the Paſſage to one Man alone, or ſo faithleſs as to open it of their own Accord to their King's chief Enemy? He ſpoke theſe Words with many furious Actions, and grew ſo terrible to thoſe that were moſt familiar with him, that the Queen her ſelf durſt hardly venture to come near him.

His Belief that I would be glad of the Diſcontent he had receiv'd by *Arſaces*'s Deliverance, redoubled the Averſion he had receiv'd againſt me, and he was ready to have diſcharged Part of that Wrath upon me, which before was kindled againſt him. He neither ſaw me, nor would ſuffer me to be ſeen but by very few; yet about Three Days after this Accident, I was viſited by the Queen, from whom I neither had expected nor deſir'd that Honour. I was not ſo good a Diſſembler, as to make my Face ſhew a different Welcome from what my Heart afforded her; but though I could not doubt that her Malice alone had brought me into that Condition I then was in, I ſtrove all I could to pay her, in my own Chamber, ſome part of what was due to my Father's Wife. After the firſt Diſcourſes of a very forc'd Civility, Madam, ſaid ſhe, by rendring you this Viſit which I owe you, I ſhall without queſtion move the King to ſome Diſpleaſure againſt me, but I was willing to hazard that, to aſſure you that I am very ſenſible of what you ſuffer, and very ready to labour for your Redreſs as much as poſſibly I can. I am much oblig'd to your Goodneſs, anſwer'd I, but my Fear of the King's being diſpleas'd with you for it, could have made me wiſh you had not honour'd me with this Viſit. *Stratonice*, who had a great deal of Wit, took my Words in the ſame Senſe they were intended; and ſhewing by a Smile, that ſhe very well underſtood my Meaning, I do not doubt, reply'd ſhe, but that you are angry with me, and that you ſuſpect I have done what I could to maintain *Arſacomes*'s Intereſt againſt *Arſaces*. In this I am very ſorry I have been conſtrain'd to thwart your Inclinations, but 'tis a Proceeding that is both very natural, and very ordinary; and you are too full of Reaſon to believe, that I ought

to

to hold the Son of *Darius*, and my own Brother, in equal Consideration.

I should not have fallen upon this Discourse, if the Queen had not begun it. But when I saw she entred so far into it her self, I thought I might very well reply, It was not just, said I, Madam, that you should favour *Arsaces* with your Assistance, to the Prejudice of *Arsacomes*, neither did he demand it of you; but by the Service you had receiv'd from him, he had Reason to believe you would not endeavour his Destruction, nor had I ever offended you so much, as to imagine you ought to seek for mine. I have done nothing, added the Queen, that should make you think I had an Intention to hurt you; nor did I perhaps seek your Disadvantage, when I labour'd to make you prefer Prince *Arsacomes*, before a Prince whose Birth and Merit indeed were considerable, but he was an Enemy to the King your Father, an Enemy to this State, and one to whom the Gods have left nothing of which his Ancestors possess'd. If the Gods (reply'd I, with more Boldness than ordinary) have depriv'd Prince *Artaxerxes* of his Fore-fathers Empire, they have left him Characters which all their Anger cannot take away; they have left him a Sword that can recover his Dominions, as it hath defended ours; and briefly, they have left him Marks of what he was, and what he still is, which can suffer no Comparison with any of my Father's Subjects: If he be the Son of our Enemy, 'tis of an Enemy that us'd the Prince my Brother as the dearest of his Children; and if he be our Enemy himself, he's an Enemy, Madam, without whom the King had not now been alive, without whom *Arsacomes* had not been alive, without whom both you and I had either been dead or Captives, and without whom perhaps this Kingdom had been lost.

The Queen was nettled, seeing me take *Arsaces*'s Part so sharply; and not being able to dissemble it, after a Blush which appear'd in her Face, Your Affection to *Arsaces*, said she, gives you Thoughts in Favour of him, and to the Contempt of others, which would be very advantageous to him, if they were approv'd of by the King your Father; but it has pleas'd the Gods, his Mind

shou[ld]

ſhould be different from yours; and though he was not unſenſible of *Arſaces*'s Services while he believ'd him to be his Friend, nor blind to the Knowledge of his good Qualities, yet was not his Opinion the ſame with yours, for the Choice of him whom he thought worthy to be your Servant.

That *Arſacomes* whom you deſpiſe ſo much, was not ſo contemptible to him, but that he deſtin'd him to the Honour which you made *Darius*'s Son to hope for, and has ſettled the Pardon of the Offence he believes he has received from you, in the Obedience you ſhall render him, in Favour of my Brother.

The King (anſwered I, being next to the very Heart at theſe Words) cannot deſtine me to *Arſacomes* without deſtining me to my Grave; and what Obedience ſoever I owe him, Death is able to give me a Diſpenſation. You ſhall not die, (reply'd the Queen, riſing from her Chair) but Time will make you know what Maids of your Birth and Quality owe unto their Father, and unto their King; and how great Difficulty ſoever you make of ſubmitting your ſelf to it, you underſtand your ſelf too well, directly to oppoſe the Will of yours.

After theſe Words, and ſome other of a feigned Civility, ſhe went away, and left me ſo ill ſatisfy'd with her Converſation, that I was not ſettled again of all that Day. I paſs'd the next, and ſome others, in the ſame Manner, 'till the Time we were viſited with *Arſaces* and *Theodates*. *Theomiris* and I were in Bed together, and not being able to ſleep, I was entertaining her with my ordinary Diſquiets, when *Cyllenia* (who took as little Reſt as we) heard a Knocking at the Grate of my Window. At firſt ſhe regarded it not, but finding it continu'd, ſhe leapt out of her Bed, and coming cloſe to mine, told me of it, and ask'd me what I would have her do: Altho' I did not abſolutely gueſs the Truth, and that I believ'd not *Arſaces* to be in *Iſſedon*, yet did I imagine it was to give me Notice of ſomething, that any Body came to my Window at ſuch an Hour, and in Conceit, I commanded *Cyllenia* to open it. She had no ſooner done ſo, but ſhe perceiv'd Two Men on Horſe-back, one of which preſently call'd her by her Name,

and

and was known to her by his Voice to be *Arſaces*. As ſoon as ſhe was certain of it, ſhe gave him not the Leiſure to diſcourſe with her, but running to my Bed-ſide, brought me the News, tranſported either with Joy or Aſtoniſhment. I was ſtrangely ſurpriz'd at it, as you may well imagine; and notwithſtanding the infinite Deſire I had to ſee *Arſaces* again, I could not hear he was ſo near his Enemies, without being extremely affrighted. I roſe with *Theomiris*, and each of us taking a Night-Gown, we went unto that Window, and made *Cyllenia* ſtay at the Chamber-door, for fear we ſhould be ſurpriz'd in that Converſation. I had no ſooner diſcover'd *Arſaces*, and his Friend, through that gloomy Night, but my Fear and my Affection ſharing my Soul between them, made me immoveable, and alſo inſenſible; but as ſoon as the Two Princes knew us, they bow'd down to their very Saddles, and having given us a Salute full of Reſpect, *Arſaces* breaking Silence firſt, *Madam*, ſaid he, Arſaces *is yet permitted to ſee you again, and the Gods have ſav'd this Priſoner, this condemn'd Man, this Fugitive, to reſtore him a Sight which is a Thouſand Times more dear to him than the Liberty they had taken, or the Life they would have taken from him.* He would have gone on with this Diſcourſe as he had begun, if I had not interrupted him. Yes *Arſaces*, ſaid I, you ſee me, and I ſee you again; but tho' your Sight be as dear to me as you can wiſh, it cauſes greater Diſquiets in me, than thoſe your Abſence would make me ſuffer; and if you had lov'd me as you are oblig'd to do by the laſt Proofs of your Affection, you had kept my Heart from thoſe Terrors to which you now expoſe it. You doubt not that I was as much concern'd in your Safety as in my own; but you ought as little to doubt that I can ſee you in the Danger into which you precipitate your ſelf, without mortal Apprehenſions. What, (purſu'd I with the ſame Tone) is *Arſaces* in *Iſſedon*, and under the Palace-Window? *Arſaces*, the ſole Aim of the King's Wrath and Hatred, and *Arſaces* for whoſe Deſtruction he would hazard that of his Empire? I ſaid a great deal more that expreſs'd my Fear for him, but all ſerv'd only to give him new Marks of my Affection: And after he had quietly

gi-

given me the Hearing, I know no Danger, reply'd he, that can fright me from the Sight of my Princeſs; and I ſhould have ſcorn'd my Liberty, and given up my Life to them that would have taken it away, if I had believ'd there had been any Conſideration ſtrong enough to keep me from ſeeing you again: Do not therefore moderate my Happineſs by your too obliging Fears, but ſuffer me, after an Impriſonment, which nothing but your Abſence made me think unſupportable, to enjoy what was ſo cruelly forbidden me, and to return through the midſt of all manner of Dangers, to that Felicity for which alone I have preſerv'd my ſelf. He accompany'd theſe with many other paſſionate Words; after which I receiv'd *Theodates*'s Civilities, and gave him thoſe Welcomes that were due to his Quality, and to his Deſerts, and to the good Offices he had done his Friend. I thank'd him for *Arſaces*'s Safety, with as much Acknowledgment as poſſibly I could, and then I would no longer rob him of the ſame Advantage we enjoy'd, but left him to entertain *Theomiris* with an equal Liberty; that Lady lov'd him, as ſhe was oblig'd by all manner of Conſiderations; but 'twas with ſo much Diſcretion and Reſervedneſs, that the ſevereſt Perſons could not have found any thing to condemn in her Affection. The Window at which we talk'd was ſo low, that the Two Princes being on Horſeback, could eaſily reach it with their Hand, and though it were grated, the Bars ſtood ſo far without, that we could hear one another tho' we ſpoke but ſoftly, and alſo ſee one another as well as the Light of the Stars would ſuffer us. After I had teſtify'd to *Arſaces* how ſenſible I had been of the Dangers he had run, and with what Joy I had receiv'd the News of his Eſcape, I told him all that happen'd to me ſince the Time I had not been able to write to him, and recounted all you have heard, as well about the taking of my Letters, as the King's cruel Threats, the Queen's Viſits, and all that I had ſuffer'd for his Sake. He was ſo paſſionate at that Diſcourſe, that he had hardly Patience to let me finiſh it; and in the Anſwers I had made to the King and Queen to his Advantage, as likewiſe in the Conſtancy I had ſhewn to favour him, he

found

found so much Reason to be satisfied with me, and with his Fortune, that he knew not how to express the least part of his Acknowledgments. Is it possible (said he) that what I hear should be a Truth, and that *Arsaces* should be so happy as to attaint his high degree of Felicity? Ah! Loss of my Dominions; Ah! Dangers that I have run; Ah! Pains that I have suffer'd, how gloriously are you all rewarded; and how unable is the King of *Scythia* to shake so firm a Fortune as mine? Since my Princess judges me worthy of her Affection, and that in spite of such cruel Rigours and Persecutions she perseveres to keep it for me, I henceforth apprehend nothing from the Power of Men, and my Happiness is above the reach of all they can attempt against me. From this he fell into such tender, and such affectionate Expressions of Thanks, that it was hard to hear them, and to repent what one had done for him; and I redoubled his Contentment by all the Confirmations he could desire of my Friendship.

We then began all together to consult what was best to be done, and when we had severally delivered our Opinions, my Design (added he) if it be permitted for a Person that is subject, and dependent to have a Design, is for some Days to enjoy the Happiness which now is granted me, if I can do it without troubling and disquieting my Princess, and when I shall have obtained leave of my Love to be able to depart from her for some time, and that by the settling of the King's Anger I may think my Passage will be a little freer, I'll go away to the Prince my Brother, to show him the Face of him he hath so dearly loved, and to take Sanctuary with him against the Indignation of his Father. I hope for all Things from his Friendship, and he commands an Army, which after him would be at my Devotion against the rest of all Mankind. I shall have no other Enemy there but *Arsacomes*, and if the Consideration of *Oroondates* make me defer the Effect of my Resentments against him, I am most certain I shall be preferred before him in *Oroondates*'s Friendship; but if, without offending my dear Brother, I may be suffered to let them loose, I shall find Ways enough to free my self of a Rival, who hath made

made, and who perhaps would yet make the greateſt part of all my Miſeries; neither ought he to hope that he can enjoy his Life, with his Ambition of ſerving *Berenice*; and tho' I fear not he ſhould be able to ſhake the Conſtancy of my Princeſs, I ought however to puniſh him for the Pains and Perſecutions he hath made her ſuffer. This was *Arſaces*'s Intention, part whereof I approved, and labouring to divert the Violence of the reſt, I would needs moderate his Spleen againſt *Arſacomes*, by the Promiſe I made him, that all his Endeavours ſhould never ſerve for any Thing but to make him the more odious to me. I will not trouble you, Brother, with all the Particulars of our Converſation, that Diſcourſe would be too long, ſince it was not much ſhorter than the Night; in brief, judging that the Day began to draw near, I diſmiſſed *Arſaces*, after having confirmed him by all manner of Proteſtations, in the Hope he had of my Conſtancy; and after having given him leave to take the ſame Opportunities for a like Entertainment, while he could ſtay at *Iſſedon* with any Safety. This Deſign was put in Execution, and I ſaw him many times in the ſame manner, without either being ſurprized, or troubled by any Encounter; and *Arſaces*, at my urgent Entreaties, was ſo careful to keep himſelf concealed, that his being at *Iſſedon* was never ſo much as ſuſpected. In the interim the King was ſo extremely vext at the Shame he thought he had received, that his Diſcontent moderated, or rather ſtifled all the Joy he ought to have received, for the happy Proceedings of my Brother's Army. He had heard of his Victory over *Zopirio*, and afterwards of the taking of many Towns, which either by Force or Gentleneſs he had brought under his Obedience; but he had hardly appear'd any way ſenſible of thoſe Succeſſes, which in another Seaſon would have found him very ready to bear a part in the publick Joy. But he received no ſmall ſurcharge to his Affliction, when by an Expreſs that came from *Arſacomes*, he heard how Prince *Oroondates* had left the Army, the Cauſe of his Departure being unknown to every Body, as likewiſe the Place whither he was gone. He delivered him a Letter which my Brother had written to *Arſacomes*, whereby he reſign'd the Army into his

Command,

Command, and gave up into his Hand the Charge the King had impoſed upon him. This News caſt the King into furious redoublings of his Anger, but it was raiſed to the Extremity, when that Meſſenger delivered him a Cabinet which my Brother had forgotten, in which among many other Papers there had been found the Information *Theodates* gave him of the Life, Fortune, and Impriſonment of *Artaxerxes*. The Reading of that Letter produced many ſeveral Effects in him, for if it made him judge that *Orcondates* had till then been innocent of the treacherous Deſigns whereof he accuſed *Artaxerxes*, it made him alſo believe that it was that Advertiſement that made him leave his Army, to go to that dear Friend, and to join with him againſt his Father's Service. Neither was he without ſome Suſpicion, that *Orcondates* had cunningly left that Letter, to make it be believed that the Deſigns and Perſon of *Arſaces* had been unknown to him, and to gain the more Facility by that Device, to effect the Plots they had contrived together. But howſoever it were, the King could not fix upon any of theſe Opinions, without finding Cauſe to redouble his Wrath and Hatred againſt *Artaxerxes*, nor did he neglect any Thing that could ſerve toward his Revenge; and ſeeing that the Gods, or his ill Fortune had made him 'ſcape out of his Hands, he ſought out all the Ways to miſchief him that could fall into his Imagination. He cauſed many Manifeſts to be drawn, and ſent into all the Quarters of his Kingdom, wherein he accuſed him of Treaſon, and of a Conſpiracy againſt his Life; exhorted all his Subjects to endeavour his Deſtruction; and the more ſtrongly to invite them to it, promiſed five hundred Talents to whoſoever ſhould bring him his Head. The News of this Cruelty and Malice of the King's, drave *Arſaces* into Reſentments which were like to have made him go beyond thoſe Conſiderations which till then he had preſerved towards his Perſon. Ah! (ſaid he) why muſt this barbarous Man be the Father of *Berenice* and *Oroondates*; and why is it not permitted me to revenge with the Blood of ſo cruel an Enemy, the ingrateful Deſigns he has againſt my Life, and the Wrong he would do my Reputation?

After

After theſe Words he returned again to himſelf, and repenting that he had ſpoken to them, ask'd me Pardon, and proteſted he never would fall any more into thoſe violent Thoughts againſt my Father. And indeed till then, he endeavoured to force himſelf to Patience, but he utterly loſt it, at the laſt Effects of the King's Indignation.

How great Compliance ſoever the King had till then ſhewed to *Stratonice*, yet had he never reſolved to marry me to *Arſacomes*; and tho' he was driven to it by the Conſiderations of his Love, and by the Queen's eternal Perſecutions, his Ambition, and ſome remainder of his Affection to me, made him repugnant to that Alliance; but when once he began to loſe the Hope of taking Revenge upon *Arſaces* by any other Way, he overcame the remnant of his Love to me, and believing he could not afflict his Enemy more ſenſibly than by giving me to his Rival, he reſolved abſolutely upon the Marriage. He had heard there was nothing more to do in the Country, where *Arſacomes* was with his Army; and having determined that he ſhould return with his Forces, he ſent an Expreſs to him, with Orders to bring him back, and with a Letter which he wrote to him, the Words whereof were to this Purpoſe:

The King of *Scythia* to Prince *Arſacomes.*

SINCE you are the only Man worthy of my Friendſhip and of my Alliance, I intend that you ſhall have them both; come therefore Arſacomes, *to receive the Recompence that expects you, as well for the Services I have received from you, as for thoſe you have rendred* Berenice; *from hence forward ſhe ſhall be yours, and all the Difficulties you have found in winning her, ſhall yield to the Authority of her Father, and of her King.*

He

He ſhewed this Letter to divers of the Court, and publiſhed his Reſolution to every Body, to the end *Arſaces* might come to hear of it, and feel the Sorrow he prepared for him. He would needs alſo give me my Share of it, and the next Day after the Departure of that fatal Meſſenger, he came into my Chamber, and bearing the Marks of his cruel Intention in his Forehead, put me into as great a Fear as I could poſſibly be capable of. He took not ſo much leiſure as to ſit down for the ſhort Viſit he meant to make me, but looking upon me with a ſeverer Eye than ever he had done before, *Berenice*, (ſaid he) hitherto I have been too favourable to you, but you too unworthily abuſed my Indulgence, therefore now know my laſt Intentions, and diſpoſe your ſelf (once for all) to marry *Arſacomes*; I give you as much Time to reſolve upon it, as will be neceſſary for his Voyage hither; but I declare to you, that he ſhall be your Husband from the very Day of his arrival. Tho' I was infinitely ſurprized at this ſtrange Diſcourſe, yet did I call up all the Courage I had, to make reply to that ſevere Propoſition of the King's, and looking upon him with an Eye that was more animated than ordinary, I will obey you, Sir, (ſaid I) to the laſt Minute of my Life; but my Death I hope will be free from the Obedience I owe you. You ſhall have leave to die, (replied the King) if you prefer Death before *Arſacomes*, but you ſhall never obtain a more favourable Election. He ſtay'd not for my Anſwer, but going out of the Room left me in the Condition you may judge I was reduced to by that cruel Threat: Truly it was a very lamentable one, and *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia* had never been more ſorrowfully employed about me, than they were all the reſt of that Day. I would have diſſembled my Grief to *Arſaces*, whom I was to ſee that Night, and I prayed my Couſin not to tell him of that Viſit of the King's, but 'twas impoſſible for me to hold my Reſolution; and as ſoon as ever I ſaw him, my Tears broke forth in ſuch abundance, that before I was able to ſpeak, he was but too well inſtructed in my Misfortune; wherefore I was forced to confeſs it to him, after the Tears that had betray'd me, and ſeeing he ſuſpecte'

thing more fatal, I was fain to tell him all I knew, both of the King's Meſſage to *Arſacomes*, and of the cruel Command I had received from his own Mouth. *Arſaces* never appeared ſo terrible to me as at that killing News, and I do not wonder his Enemies ſhould think him ſo dreadful in Fight, ſince in the Anger I ſaw him at that time, I could not but be afraid of him my ſelf. Yet did he all that poſſibly he could to maſter it before me, and when he had a little conquer'd that firſt Fury, which made him fly into an Extremity of Rage againſt the King's violent Proceeding, and that he had kept Silence for a few Moments; 'Tis too long deferred, (added he) *Arſacomes* muſt die, and the Blood of that unworthy Favourite muſt pay for the King's Tyranny, and for his own. Oppoſe not this juſt Reſolution, Madam, with unjuſt Commands; my Obedience in this Encounter would be Cowardice, and in the Extremity we are now reduced to, I ought to be exempted from it. The King doth but vainly prepare a Marriage for him, to which he has unworthily pretended; neither am I ſo forſaken of the Gods or Men, no nor of my own Courage, which hitherto hath ſerved me faithfully enough, but that I can make that Rival fall at the Head of his Army. The King of *Scythia* perhaps ſhall find that the Remembrance of *Arſaces* is not yet extinguiſh'd in the Court of *Scythia*, and I hope it ſhall be with his own Forces that I'll oppoſe his unjuſt and tyrannical Deſigns. Theſe were *Arſaces*'s Words, and I ſaw him ſo fixt upon that Reſolution, that I had not the Confidence to oppoſe it with all the Power I had over him. Yet did I ſtrive to pacify him as much as poſſibly I could, and alledged all the Reaſons I thought capable to divert his Purpoſe. I lov'd not Blood, and could have wiſh'd to be rid of *Arſacomes* otherwiſe than by his Death; and beſides, I ſaw ſuch great and manifeſt Dangers to *Arſaces* in that Enterprize, that it was hard to hope for a favourable Iſſue of it. I repreſented it to him as well as I was able, and endeavoured to touch him by the Conſideration of my Fears for the evident Peril of his Life. He having ever been very ready to comply with my Entreaties, ſtrove to appear more moderate, and having proteſted he would make his Inclinations

tions yield to mine as much as he could possibly, he left me in some Belief that I had obtained what I desired of him. I past the rest of that Day in those Disquiets which that Uncertainty caused in me; but in the Night, at the Hour when I expected him, I only received a Letter by one of *Theodates*'s Servants, the Words whereof were these:

Arsaces to the Princess *Berenice.*

I Depart, Madam, since my Honour, since my Repose will not suffer me to remain longer near you, and perhaps I shall not return to you again, till I am freed of a Rival, and reveng'd of an Enemy: Remember your faithful Arsaces; *and if it please the Gods he die in this Enterprize, suffer him not to die also in your Memory.*

The Reading of these Words did infinitely augment my Grief, and put me again into my former Apprehensions. I began to be afflicted for his Absence, and to tremble for the Dangers into which he was going to expose himself. What likelihood is there (said I to *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia*) that he can attempt to kill *Arsacomes* at the Head of his Army, without perishing himself in the Design? Ah! without doubt, Cousin, we shall never see him more, and his Despair will make him so far to neglect the Means of his Safety, that he by his own Ruin will secure the Pretensions of *Arsacomes*.

I afflicted my self on this manner, notwithstanding all the Consolations I received from *Theomiris*, and could never be cured of my Fears during all the time he continued in that Journey. But, Brother, I think I am at the End of the Recital you demanded of me, and if you desire to know the wonderful Events of *Arsaces*'s Voyage, you may learn them much better from himself than me, who am little capable of relating such Adventures as those you are going to hear from him. It is just, fair Princess (replied *Arsaces*) that I should ease you of that Pains

Pains, and you, out of your Goodneſs, have given me reſt enough to be able to finiſh this Narration. *Arſaces* held his Peace at theſe Words, and when he had thought a while of the Diſcourſe he was to make, he proceeded in theſe Terms:

As ſoon as I had left the Princeſs, and that I was retired with *Theodates*, I made that dear Friend acquainted with my Reſolution of departing the next Night, to go to *Arſacomes*, and either give him his Death in the middle of his Troops, or put an End, by my own, to all the Pains to which I ſaw my ſelf condemned. *Theodates* was amazed at that Deſign, but he argued not much againſt it, and only told me he would run my Fortune, and that into what Peril ſoever I expos'd my ſelf, he never would forſake me while he liv'd: Theſe tender Proofs of his Friendſhip, did infinitely redouble mine, and not having the Power to refuſe his Company in ſuch an Enterprize, eſpecially ſeeing there was no more Safety for him in *Iſſedon* than for me, and that in what Part of *Scythia* ſoever he could be, his Abode would ſtill be dangerous, becauſe beſides what he had done to favour my Eſcape, the Letter which had come to the King's Eye, and which was known to be his Hand, had exceedingly aggravated his Diſpleaſure againſt him, I conſented to let him go along with me, and expoſe himſelf with me to all the Dangers which in Probability we went to Encounter.

That Day we gave order to get good Arms, and good Horſes, and other Things that were moſt neceſſary for us; but we would take no other Company along with us, except *Criton*, who had already well recovered his Wounds, *Theodates*'s 'Squire, and two of his Servants to take care of our Horſes and Arms, believing that a greater Train would but make our Paſſage the more difficult, and the more eaſily diſcover us. I wrote thoſe few Words to my Princeſs which ſhe repeated to you, and tho' her Abſence was the greateſt Misfortune I was ſenſible of in that Attempt, yet would I go away without ſeeing her for fear ſhe ſhould oppoſe my Intention with her abſolute Authority

I gave my Letter into the Hands of a truſty Servant of *Theodates*; and when a good part of the Night was ſpent, we took Horſe, and going out of the Town, put our ſelves into a Way that was not unknown to thoſe that attended us. By good Fortune we had no River to paſs that was not fordable, nor no Town in our Paſſage which we could not avoid, ſending only *Theodates*'s Servants through them, to buy ſuch Proviſions as we needed. This did much facilitate our Voyage, and we perform'd it without any Encounter that was able to croſs our Purpoſe.

But before we came to the Army, I thought fit to diſcover the Bottom of my Deſign to *Theodates*; and to that End, Do not believe, ſaid I, that my Reſolution proceeds totally from my Deſpair, and that my Enterprize (for all it is ſo hazardous) is without ſome Beam of Hope, grounded upon a great deal of Reaſon. The Army now under *Arſacomes*, is the ſame you know that I commanded againſt the *Tauro-Scythians*, in the Country of the *Agatirſians*, and afterwards againſt *Arimbas*; 'twas with it we obtained ſome Victories againſt the King of *Scythia*'s Enemies; There is no Commander among thoſe Troops whom I have not oblig'd by ſome particular Courteſy; there is hardly any Soldier whoſe Face and Name is not known to me, and never did any General receive more Teſtimonies of Affection from his Men, than I from them, while we march'd together.

This Remembrance makes me hope for Favour amongſt them, tho' I ſhould come to be ſo unfortunate, as to have ill Succeſs in my Deſign againſt *Arſacomes*'s Perſon; and for all he is their General, perhaps he will have much ado to find more Friends than I among them. You have Reaſon to believe it, anſwer'd *Theodates*, and as I can aſſure you, that your Memory is ſtill dearer to them than you can imagine, I can alſo tell you, that by reaſon of *Arſacomes*'s Pride, and of his haughty Carriage, all the Soldiers and all the Officers have a great Averſion to him; and I am confident they never ſubmitted to his Command without a great deal of Unwillingneſs.

Theſe Words of *Theodates* redoubled my Hopes, and in the mean Time we advanc'd toward the Army, with as much Speed as the Compaſſes we were fain to take would ſuffer us, and we found it ſooner than we expected. The King's Meſſenger had made very great haſte, and had been arriv'd there many Days; and *Arſacomes*, who with ſuch lofty Hopes had receiv'd ſo pleaſing an Order, has rais'd his Camp from the Banks of *Boriſthenes*, and was returning ſtrait to *Iſſedon*, with as long Marches as he could. He, by Order from the King, had left Five or Six Thouſand Men upon the Frontier, which he had put in Garriſon in ſome of thoſe Towns that had been recover'd, and the reſt of the Army was about Eighteen or Twenty Thouſand.

It was along the Bank of the River *Hypanis* that we ſaw the firſt Battalions march, and riding with our Beavers down, we paſſed without doubt, among the firſt that ſaw us, for Horſemen of their Army; we wore nothing upon our Arms that could diſcover our Quality, they were very good, but not enrich'd with any Ornament that could make them be taken Notice of; and we had made Choice of ſuch, that we might have the Liberty of paſſing every where with leſs Danger of being known. I had taken no particular Order about my Deſign, but had only reſolv'd to lay hold of the firſt Occaſion Fortune ſhould offer me to fight with *Arſacomes*, or kill him if I could do it upon even Terms, and without any Baſeneſs; but ſee how ſhe behav'd herſelf in that Adventure, and admire her Capriciouſneſs in one of the ſtrangeſt Events you ever heard.

One Part of the Army was already paſs'd, when I ſaw *Arſacomes* appear at the Head of a good Number of Commanders, among which I knew the good old *Cleoreſtes*, *Leotaris*, and ſome other of thoſe Friends I had greateſt Confidence in. He was compleatly arm'd, (as you know it is the Cuſtom among the *Scythians*, never to go without their Arms upon a March, or paſſing upon any Duty of their Command) but his Beaver was up, and he was eaſy to be known by many other Marks. As ſoon as ever I ſaw 'twas he, my Reſentments awaken'd in ſuch Manner, that I no longer was Maſter of them; and

and tho' in Appearance I could not take a more unſeaſonable Time for my Satisfaction, I was not capable of all neceſſary Conſiderations; and moreover, I believed, that in the Extremity I was reduc'd to, and in the Nature of the Cauſe that mov'd me, I could not ſtand conſidering; nor ſeek Ways to facilitate my Enterprize, and be cautious of my Safety, without Cowardiſe. In this Conceit, turning toward *Theodates*, Dear *Theodates*, ſaid I, I can no longer defer the Execution of my Deſign; ſtir not till you ſee I have need of your Aſſiſtance, and then do what you ſhall think convenient. I hearken'd not to what *Theodates* alledg'd, to diſſuade me from my raſh Intent; but advancing towards *Arſacomes*, I drew near him without any Difficulty. I ſaluted him, bowing to my Saddle Bow, and ſpeaking to him without putting up my Beaver, Sir, ſaid I, may I have a Word or two with you in private, to inform you of a thing of great Importance for the King's Service? *Arſacomes* accus'd me of Unmannerlineſs or Folly, for having ſpoken to him without diſcovering my Face; and looking upon me with an arrogant Faſhion, he ask'd me who I was. You ſhall know, Sir, anſwered I, and with my Name, ſhall alſo learn the Buſineſs I have to impart to you, if you pleaſe to withdraw about an Hundred Paces from this Company that is about you. With theſe Words I turn'd my Horſe, and rode toward the Place whither I deſir'd to draw him; and tho' they that were preſent would have perſuaded him not to follow me, and told him that by ſo doing he would injure his Dignity, yet being (as indeed he was) valiant, and deſirous of Glory, he believ'd that Diſtruſt would ſhew a Want of Spirit: In that Opinion he commanded them to march on, and forbidding them to follow him, he came galloping after me, and paſſing by the Place where I had ſtopt, went Five or Six Hundred Paces from his Men. I overtook him in an Inſtant, and he turning toward me as ſoon as I drew near, Speak now, ſaid he, at Liberty, and ſince no Body over-hears thee, tell me who thou art, and what thou haſt to communicate to me for the King's Service, I thought I might ſatisfy part of his Demand, by letting him ſee my Face; and for that Purpoſe, thruſting up the Beaver of my Caſk,

I am *Arſaces*, anſwered I, and by that Name alone thou mayeſt learn all I have to ſay to thee.

Arſacomes was ſo ſurpriz'd at theſe Words, and at the unexpected Sight of my Face, that for all he had a great deal of Courage, he chang'd Colour, and appear'd as immoveable as a Statue. I would not take Advantage of his Amazement, but to give him Leiſure to recover it, Come to thy ſelf again *Arſacomes*, ſaid I, and know him, whom neither the King of *Scythia*'s Ingratitude, nor thine, hath been able to ruin. I live ſtill in ſpite of his Orders, and in Spite of thine; and I live to diſpute *Berenice* with thee: Endeavour to defend thy Pretenſions with thy Life, and make thy ſelf worthy by that Action, of what neither thy Birth nor thy Services have been able to merit. Thou canſt never hope to poſſeſs her quietly while *Arſaces* is alive, and thou oughteſt to diſpatch him out of the World, if thou wilt free thy ſelf of a more fortunate Rival, and of an irreconcileable Enemy. My Birth is now well enough known to thee, to believe thou ſhalt not wrong thy Dignity by this Combate, nor is there ſo little Honour to be gotten with *Arſaces*, but that thou mayeſt reckon this Encounter as one of the moſt glorious of thy whole Life. By theſe Words, I ſtrove to draw him to a greater Diſtance from his Troops, yet he would go but very little further; and having ſettled himſelf while I was ſpeaking, after he had look'd upon me with a more reſolute Countenance than before, Yes, ſaid he, I am ready to diſpute *Berenice* with thee; and ſince thou haſt eſcap'd the Juſtice of the King her Father, I ſhall be glad to revenge his Quarrel, and make my Sword the Inſtrument of that Death which thou oughteſt to have ſuffer'd for the Defence of thy Country. This cruel Reproach, to which I ſaw my ſelf unhappily expos'd, rais'd my Anger to the higheſt Pitch, and ſeeing that *Arſacomes* put his Hand to the Hilt of his Sword without moving any further, I drew mine with all the haſte I could, and making it glitter in his Eyes, quickly ſhew'd him that to give me my Death was not ſo eaſy a Matter as he imagin'd. I believ'd I had not much Time to ſatisfy Revenge, and that I ſhould ſoon have part of the Army upon me; wherefore deſiring to

ſhorten

ſhorten that Combate with an extraordinary Haſte, I flew at *Arſacames* with more Fury than Judgment, and with Two fortunate Blows gave him Two Wounds, one in the Body, the other in the Right Arm, which diſabled him to fight, and put him in ſuch Diſorder, that ruſhing fiercely againſt him at the ſame Time, I threw him headlong out of his Saddle upon the Ground. Tho' the Sight of our Combate had already made a good many of thoſe that beheld it come running towards us, I had Time enough to have ſlain *Arſacames*, if I had had a Mind to it; but how great Intereſt ſoever I had in his Death, I was not able to give it him, being he was no longer in a Condition to defend himſelf; and ſeeing ſome of the Officers of the Army come thundring at me, I advanc'd a little toward them, with a Purpoſe to make my ſelf known, and with a Hope to moderate their Reſentments by the Sight of my Face. I found more Facility in it than I expected, by the Prudence of *Theodates*, for he no ſooner had ſeen them ſtir, but caſting off his Helmet, and ſhewing them his bare Head, he made toward them with all poſſible Speed, crying, O *Clearques*, O *Leoſaris*, whither run you? 'Tis *Arſames* your General, and your beſt Friend.

The Name of *Arſaces* often reiterated, ſlackned their Speed, and turning toward him that ſpoke it, they knew him to be *Theodates*, to whom they bore a particular Reſpect and Affection. They were ſeiz'd with a marvellous Aſtoniſhment, when I coming up to them with my Sword in my Hand, and my Head quite unarm'd, Do you come (cry'd I) dear Friends, to take away the Life of *Arſaces*? If it be ſo, I refuſe not Death, nor can I receive it from more welcome Hands, than thoſe of my ancient Friends, and of my valiant Companions. Theſe Words, and the Sight of my Face, ſtopp'd them ſhort at firſt, and put them into a wonderful Irreſolution; but within a while after, they made all other Conſiderations yield to their Affection, and putting up their Swords, they came to me with an Intention very different from that which before had drawn them.

This Accident had ſtaid the March of the Army, and all the Officers leaving their Places, with part alſo of the Soldiers, ran thronging to that Spectacle; but the Name of *Arſaces* which ſpread from one to another thro' the whole Army, preſently ſtilled all their Reſentments, and wakening in them the Remembrance of the ardent Love they had born me, they ran all about me, to take my part againſt *Arſacomes*'s Servants, and particular Friends. *Cleoreſtes* was the firſt who finding the Affection of the Soldiers, and incited to it by his own, got before all the reſt, and cried, Long live our General *Arſaces*, and may his Enemies periſh. *Leotaris* ſeconded him in his Cries, and in his Action, and immediately the Name of *Arſaces* ecchoed through all the Plain. I was almoſt overturn'd with the Croud of Officers, and Soldiers, ſome ask'd to ſee their General *Arſaces*, and ſome preſſed to ſalute me. I ſtretcht forth my Hands and embrac'd them one after another; and calling them by their Names, I made them ſee I had dearly preſerved their Remembrance. By little and little I was encompaſſed by the whole Army, and was fain to go all about without my Cask, and to ſhew my ſelf to thoſe that were furtheſt off, who with loud Cries demanded the ſight of their General. Never was there any Change of this Nature ſo ſudden, nor ſo wonderful as that, and all that my moſt affectionate Friends could have wiſh'd to my Advantage, would not have come near to what Fortune did for me in that Encounter. In the ſame Place where a few Minutes before I had been alone againſt an Enemy that commanded a powerful Army, I ſaw my ſelf triumphant, I ſaw my ſelf ador'd, and I ſaw my ſelf abſolute over twenty thouſand Men, whoſe Arms and Lives were at my Devotion. Let *Arſaces* (cried they confuſedly) take the Command of us again, and let him lead us over all the World to ſerve him, we'll obey no Body but him, and his Enemies ſhall be ours. Only *Arſacomes*'s Friends and Servants terrified with this Alteration, took care to ſhew how they reſented it, and perhaps being in fear of their Lives, offer'd not to come near me; but in all that Confuſion I was not forgetful of my Maſter, and being very confident he was not dead, I prayed *Cleoreſtes*, if they

they had not done it already, that he would cauſe him to be taken from the Place where he was, and make as careful Endeavours be uſed for his Recovery, as I could have deſired for my own. After I had given this Order, I entreated thoſe that ſtood near, to afford me a little Audience, and having obtained Silence with much ado, I ſpoke to the principal Officers who came round about me, and to as many of the reſt as were within hearing: My dear and generous Friends, (ſaid I) you by whom alone the Name of *Arſaces* has gain'd all the Honour it can boaſt of, you by whom I am now alive, and briefly, you to whom with my Glory, and with my Life, I owe all, and will acknowledge all; I ſhould be unworthy of this Affection which is my chiefeſt Happineſs, if I could abuſe it, and if I ſhould make uſe of your Goodneſs for the defence of an unjuſt Quarrel, and a Quarrel wherein you your ſelves had not ſome Intereſt. That which you had done for the King of *Scythia*, and that which I had done for him with your Aſſiſtance, was not ſo inconſiderable, that inſtead of Recompences he ſhould give us Shackles, he ſhould give us Puniſhments; and that after having unworthily wrong'd your General in his Perſon and in his Reputation, after having made him languiſh in a hard Captivity, he ſhould ſend him Executioners cruelly to tear away that Life which he ſo often had prodigally hazarded for his, and for the defence of his Dominions. 'Tis true, my Birth had made me criminal in his Opinion; and if your Thoughts are not more generous than his, it will likewiſe make me ſo in yours; but though I ſhould endanger this Life which I hold from you, I can no longer be able to diſſemble the Truth, and into what Neceſſity ſoever I can be reduced, I never will require Services from Perſons to whom I am not known. It is true, my Friends, if you can be ſo after my Declaration I make to you, it is I heretofore was *Artaxerxes* the dear Brother, and the faithful Friend of your Prince *Oroondates*; but *Darius*'s Son, and *Matheus*'s Enemy; you are not ignorant what my Family and I have done againſt you; but if you have found, that in what I have done for this Kingdom at the Head of you, I have preſerv'd the Hatred of an Enemy, I ſhall not think it ſtrange if yo-

follow the Example of your King; and if according to the Intention he had to do ſo, you take away a Life which you have newly given me, nor had I kept it hitherto but in hope to recover, by your Aſſiſtance, part of that Honour, and part of that Empire which I loſt while I was fighting here for yours; but I am only to blame to ſay I kept my Life only for that, no my valiant Fellow Soldiers, I kept it alſo for *Berenice*; and if my being in this Country has been any way advantageous to the *Scythians*, they owe it to the Love I bear their Princeſs, I ſerv'd her in ſerving you, ſhe has been pleas'd to approve my Services, and I thought I had rather merited her, than that ignominious Death the King would give me; but while he ſends me Poiſon, and preſents me with a Dagger to be my own Executioner, he alſo takes *Berenice* from me to beſtow her upon *Arſacomes*, and 'tis by that way alone he deprives me of a Life which I defended in ſpite of all his Jailors, and his Hangmen. He in favour of that Favourite, cruelly forces the Inclinations, and unnaturally impriſons the Perſon of that Princeſs, as he not long ago did the Perſon of your Prince, and by that Violence has driven the miſerable *Arſaces*, either to find a Death in the midſt of all your Swords, or to kill *Arſacomes* at the Head of all his Troops, and to demand of thoſe very Troops the Happineſs which his Enemies unjuſtly would rob him of. Behold, dear Friends, what I ought to fear, and what I ought to hope for from you; if you will have me live as *Arſaces*, I demand *Berenice* of you; and if you will have me die as *Artaxerxes*, I freely offer you my Breaſt, and deſire not to conſerve that Life againſt your Wills, for which I muſt confeſs my ſelf indebted to you. I had not made an end of theſe Words, when there aroſe a confuſed Noiſe amongſt the Soldiers, which at firſt might have been enough to beget Fear in a Perſon that had been much in love with his Life, but I had not the Leiſure to be ſtrucken with it, for I preſently underſtood the Reſolution of all that Multitude. The Recital of this Adventure is indeed ſhameful to the King of *Scythia*, ſince among ſo many thouſand Men, of mean and obſcure Birth, there were none whoſe Thoughts were not more full of Gratitude than his, and whoſe Know-

Knowledge of my real Quality was able to blot out the Remembrance of the Obligations they believ'd they had to me. Let him be *Arſaces*, (cried they) or let him be *Artaxerxes*, he is ſtill our General, he is the Friend, he is the Brother of our great Prince, we have no more War now againſt the *Perſians*, and we are ſo much the more oblig'd to Prince *Artaxerxes*, if for all he is a *Perſian*, he has given us ſuch Teſtimonies of Affection, as we never receiv'd from any of our own Country-men. Let him lead us (ſaid they preſently after) whither his Intereſts call him, let him lead us to the Conqueſt of *Berenice*, and to the Revenge of thoſe high Wrongs he has receiv'd, we'll ſerve him without any Diſtinction of Enemies, and will never put any Difference between his and ours. Theſe Words and many others that were to the ſame Senſe were often repeated through the whole Camp, and by a thouſand reſounding Cries, and a thouſand extraordinary Actions, all the Commanders, and all the Soldiers, teſtified that they longed for nothing ſo earneſtly as the Occaſion of going to fight for my Quarrel.

I cannot but acknowledge that I felt an exceſſive Joy at ſo favourable an Event: I could not keep my ſelf from having great Reſentments againſt the King, who after his unworthy Uſage of me, and the cruel Deſign he had ſhew'd to take away my Life in an ignominious manner, had ſet my Head at a Price, and ran to all the Extremities againſt me, that are wont to be uſed againſt the baſeſt Malefactors, and againſt the greateſt Traitors to a Kingdom. This Remembrance thruſt me upon the Deſign of revenging my ſelf againſt him with his own Arms, and of making him know that a Prince diſpoſſeſs'd of his Dominions, was not yet ſo weak, nor ſo forſaken, but that he could in the Heart of his Territories, deſtroy that Peace which he himſelf had ſettled. My Love join'd it ſelf to my Anger with a more abſolute Power, and my deſire of Revenge was nothing near ſo ſtrong, as that of obtaining *Berenice*; I was deſirous therefore, for the Satisfaction of both, to make uſe of the Happineſs that offered it ſelf to me, and thought I ought not to neglect a Fortune, which I ſhould never recover again while I

liv'd, if I ſhould ſuffer it to eſcape; with this Intent, ſhewing a more chearful Countenance to the Commanders and Soldiers than before, Generous Friends, (ſaid I) I know not how to oppoſe the Effects of your Goodneſs, nor refuſe the advantageous Offers you make me; ſince you deſire it, I entitle you to my Intereſts, and with a Confidence like that of yours, I put my Life and Fortune into your Hands; I henceforth will acknowledge nothing but from you, and ſince you are pleaſed I ſhould again take up the Honour I had heretofore amongſt you, I obey, with a Proteſtation that I never will abuſe it while I live, and that demanding nothing of you but a Miſtreſs, I will always own you for my Maſters and for my Protectors.

After theſe Words, I rode about every where amongſt them, and as I received the Oath which the Officers voluntarily made to me, I embraced them, and almoſt all the Soldiers after them. This Ceremony being ended, I fell into great Expreſſions of Kindneſs to *Cleoreſtes*, *Leataris*, and the reſt of my particular Friends; and *Theodates*, who was extremely belov'd and much conſidered amongſt them, receiv'd a thouſand Civilities from them, and a thouſand Praiſes for the Affection he had ſhew'd to me, we encamp'd that Day in that very Place, and that Situation appear'd very commodious for a ſtay of three or four Days, which was not unneceſſary, to deliberate about the managing of my Affairs. In the mean time *Arſacomes* was in his Tent, attended as if he had been in his better Fortune; his Wounds were found to be neither great nor dangerous, and the Chirurgeons promis'd his Cure in a few Days; he wanted nothing but Liberty, which in that Condition would have been uſeleſs to him, and my Friends knowing how highly it concerned me to keep him faſt, had taken Care to ſet Guards upon him. They judg'd with Reaſon that I could not ſecure my ſelf of *Berenice*, but by keeping *Arſacomes*; and that as long as he was in my Power, the King could not force *Berenice* to marry him. Within in a few Days, though he was not abſolutely cured, yet was he able to endure a Litter, and I heard by thoſe that waited on him, that his Captivity was his moſt ſenſible Diſcontent. How great

great Intereſt ſoever I had to keep him, I ſcorned to make uſe of that Advantage which I held from Fortune, and ſince he had eſcaped my Sword, I believed my ſelf oblig'd in Honour, to reſtore him a Liberty, which he had loſt only by the Defection of his Army. To this Conſideration I added, that if he was generous he would remember my Carriage toward him, and that as I had not abus'd his Captivity to concern *Berenice*, ſo neither would he perhaps abuſe his Liberty to take her from me. All my Friends, and *Theodates* himſelf oppoſed my Intention, and judged it contrary to the Laws of Prudence; but they were not able to ſhake my Reſolution, and after having pray'd them to give me leave in this Encounter which concern'd no Body but my ſelf, to make uſe of the Power they had given me, I went to *Arſacomes*, whom I had not ſeen ſince he was wounded.

Although the Power I had over him, ſtifled all my Anger, I could not ſee him without being mov'd, and I obſerv'd he changed Colour at my coming in; but not deſiring any long Converſation with him, I quickly told him the Cauſe of my Viſit, and took away all thoſe Apprehenſions he might have had. *Arſacomes*, (ſaid I) I come not hither to reproach you with the Injuries you have done me, I endeavoured to revenge them by a way which you have eſcaped, and all others were too diſhonourable for me to uſe. I will not take any Advantage againſt you, by what the Army have done in favour of me, and when you are well enough to endure a Journey, you ſhall be free to go away at your own Time. I know I give my ſelf Death, in giving you Liberty, and that you will make no other Uſe of it than to deprive me of that Princeſs, who is the Cauſe of all our Differences; but that Knowledge is not able to alter my Deſign: Go ſee *Berenice* again when you pleaſe, but remember that a generous Man ought to win her Affection rather by his Services, than by her Father's Authority, and that the Recompence you owe to what I now do for you, is not to ſuffer *Berenice* to be forc'd.

Arſacomes was going to reply, but I hearken'd not to his Anſwer, not deſiring to hold any long Diſcourſe with him, wherefore going out of his Tent, I commanded the Soldiers that guarded him, to retire. He, without any further Delay, made uſe of the Favour I had done him, and the next Morning cauſing himſelf to be put into a Litter, which Prince *Orondates* had left at the Army, and which he had us'd during the Cure of thoſe Wounds he had received in the Battel, he went on his Way toward *Iſſedon*, but went full of Threat, and full of Reſentment, not of the Favour, but of the Injury he had received from me.

I ſtaid a few Days after his Departure upon the Banks of the River *Hypanis*, not being willing to fly to Extremities againſt the Father of *Berenice*, and *Orondates*, without having well deliberated the Matter, and without having us'd all the Caution that might free me from Blame in the Opinions of my Princeſs, and of my Friends. For this Purpoſe, retarding the Motion of the Army, and making but very ſhort Marches toward *Iſſedon*, before I engaged my ſelf in a War to which I was inſtigated by my Love, I deſired to let the King ſee I was Maſter of my Reſentments, how juſt ſoever they were, and therefore I diſpatched away a Meſſenger with a Letter to him, the Words whereof were theſe:

Arſaces to the King of *Scythia.*

I Will not put you in Mind, Sir, what I have done for you, and what you have done againſt me. It ſuffices that you remember you are beholden to me for your Life, and for the Security of your Kingdom; and that for my Recompence you have ſent me a Dagger and a Draught of Poiſon; you have perſecuted me as the baſeſt of all Malefactors, and ſet my Head at a Price, as that of a Traitor, and of an infamous Perſon: This Uſage muſt needs be very ſenſible to a Prince, whoſe Quality is not inferior to your own, but it is ſupportable to Arſaces, *from the Father of* Berenice, *and*

and Oroondates; *and if yet you ſtop the Courſe of your Cruelties, I will lay down the Authority I have found in the Place where I only ſought for Sanctuary againſt your Perſecutions. I demand no Satisfaction for the Wrongs you have done me; and tho' perhaps I am in a Condition to right my ſelf, I will forget them all, as you have forgot my Services, provided you remember that the Princeſs* Bereuice *is your Daughter, and that you force not her Inclinations, in Favour of a Man, whom if I would, I could have made to loſe his Pretenſions with his Life. She is of a Birth not fit to be uſed with Violence for a Subject, and mine is not ſo deſpicable as to make her bluſh for having preferr'd me before* Arſacomes. *Perhaps you may have ſome Conſideration of it; and if all Generoſity be not utterly extinguiſhed in the Heart of a King, you will remember, I am ſtill that ſame* Arſaces, *who has loſt your Friendſhip only by his Misfortune, but who gain'd it by his Blood and by his Services.*

The Man I ſent to the King with this Letter, arriv'd at *Iſſedon* Two Days after *Arſacomes*, and found the King in Troubles and in Paſſions which it would be impoſſible to deſcribe. He partly ſhew'd them by his Uſage of my Meſſenger, whom he caus'd to be hang'd as ſoon as he had read my Letter. And not doubting but this laſt Offence, and his cruel Obſtinacy, would utterly take away that Remainder of Reſpect I yet bore toward him, he gave Order to raiſe Men, and endeavour'd to gather ſuch Forces as might enable him to defend himſelf. He had receiv'd *Arſacomes* as his Son; and after having comforted him for the Diſgrace he had receiv'd, by all the ſweeteſt Hopes he could poſſibly give him, he had preſented him to the Princeſs as her Husband, and had given her no longer Time to reſolve upon that Marriage, than till he were perfectly recover'd of his Wounds, which they hop'd he would be within a very few Days. Let not thy *Artaxerxes* think, ſaid he to her, to terrify me by the Infidelity of my Subjects; the Traytors that ſerve him, ſhall periſh with him, and thou ſhalt ſee his Deſtruction, as he ſhall ſee thy Marriage. The ſorrowful Princeſs anſwer'd thoſe Threatnings only with her Tears; and when ſhe was forc'd to reply, It is not my

Deſir-

Desire, said she, that *Arsaces* should return in Arms, to take Satisfaction for the Injuries you have done him; and tho' I should be freed by those Ways, I know well enough what I owe to you, never to give my self to him without your Consent; but it shall never be with mine that *Arsacomes* shall be my Husband, nor can you give me to him, without giving me to my Grave. You are unworthy, reply'd the King, I say you are unworthy of his Constancy toward you; and if he were not blinded with Affection, for all you are a King's Daughter, he would despise you for your indiscreet, and obstinate Fondness of his Rival. If he were generous himself, added the Princess, he would remember the Favour he receiv'd from his Enemy, and would consider that if *Arsaces*'s Vertue had not carried it above his Interests, and above his Anger, he would have sacrific'd a Life so fatal to his own, and a Life which he before had saved. She used almost the same Discourses to *Arsacomes*, when he went about to entertain her with his Passion; and as confident as he was, she sometimes made him blush with Reproach. In the mean Time I was ignorant of my Messenger's Destiny, and had advanced but little toward the Town, looking for his Return; but I expected it in vain, and heard no News of him but in the Manner I am going to tell you.

Having put my Life into the Hands of the *Scythians*, I took but little Care what Guard was kept about my Person, but they all of them took a great deal, and with an extreme Affection testified how much they were concern'd in the Safety of it: Yet one Night when we were encamp'd by a Wood Side, some 5 or 600 Furlongs from the River *Hypanis*, the Soldiers that were upon the Watch did not so well perform what their Officers had given them in Charge, but that a little before Day, Two Men cutting the Backside of my Tent, and easily making a Hole wide enough to afford them Passage, came without Difficulty into my Chamber: By good Chance, I was wont, while I lay in the Field, to have Candles always burning by me, and 'twas by their Light that those Fellows having observ'd all the Parts of my Chamber, drew near to my Bedside to execute their Resolution. They were

were beginning to pull open my Curtains, when by ſome Noiſe they made in that Action, I awaken'd in a Start, and preſently looking about, I ſpied thoſe Two Men with their Swords in their Hands, in a Poſture which made me ſufficiently know their wicked Deſign. A ſudden Cry I gave at Sight of thoſe Villains, frighted them ſo, that I had Leiſure to leap out of Bed; yet ſeeing me without Arms, they recovered Courage, and went to proſecute their Intent of taking away my Life, but I was already gotten on the far Side of a Table, which ſav'd me from their firſt Blows, and had catch'd up a Sword, wherewith I thought I ſhould be able to diſpute my Life againſt them; nor was I deceiv'd in my Belief, for with the firſt Thruſt I made, I ran it up to the Hilt in the Breaſt of him that was next me, and laid him dead at the Feet of his Companion: The other was ſo terrified at that Execution, that he loſt Heart; and ſeeing the Hole he came in at, endeavour'd to have ſav'd himſelf by Flight, but I oppoſed his Paſſage, and preſenting him the Point of my Sword, Stay, Miſcreant, ſaid I, ſtay, and ſince thou haſt dar'd to venture upon ſo great a Deſign, ſee if thou beeſt able to make an End of it. The cowardly Wretch was quite daunted at theſe Words, and throwing down his Sword, fell upon his Knees before me, Ah! Sir, ſaid he, if you be that Great, that Generous *Arſaces*, who can pardon, as well as conquer, give me my Life. Thou ſhalt have it, ſaid I, tho' thou haſt not deſerved it; but tell me———, I was going to proceed, when thoſe that lay near my Chamber, being waken'd with that Noiſe, came running in one after another, and finding me with my Sword in my Hand, a Man upon his Knees before me, and another breathing out his Life with his Blood, which ran all about the Floor, they fell into a great Admiration; inſtantly they drew their Swords, but I commanded them not to ſtir; and having told them the Truth of that Adventure in a few Words, I examined the Fellow in their Preſence: He was ſo frighted, that he was hardly able to open his Mouth; but after I had hearten'd him a little, by the Promiſe of his Life, which I often repeated, Sir, ſaid he, I think the Cauſe of this Attempt is not unknown to you; the

the King ſent us to have killed you, and beſides the Five Hundred Talents he had offered to whoſoever ſhould bring your Head, he gained us by particular Promiſes of an exceſſive Recompence.

Orondates could not ſuffer *Arſaces* to continue his Diſcourſe, without trembling for Horror, nor without deteſting the Cruelty, and the abominable Unworthineſs of the King his Father, in very reſenting Words, which he would not have put an End to of a great while, if *Arſaces* who deſired to do ſo to his long Narration, had not taken him off to go on with it on this Manner.

The End of the Fourth BOOK.

The

The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK V.

BE not afflicted, Brother, at my Recital of the King's Cruelty, but employ that Goodneſs which makes you fall thus into Paſſion againſt him, to pardon the Things my Reſentment made me undertake; which certainly, how much ſoever I was concern'd, and what Indignities ſoever I had ſuffered, I ſhould never have been overcome to do againſt a King that had given you your Birth, if in all his Actions he had not treated you as the moſt odious of all his Enemies, and had not endeavoured to blot out all the Characters of that Reſpect

Reſpect which your Friends would have paid him for your ſake.

The Attempt of this Aſſaſſination taught me nothing that I knew not, or at leaſt doubted not before; but it made the Hair ſtand on End of all that heard it, whoſe Number was ſo encreaſed, that they already fill'd my Chamber. *Theodates* who lay in another hard by mine, was one of the firſt that came running thither, and after him, the Noiſe of this Adventure had drawn the principal Officers of the Army. All began highly to abhor the King's Proceedings, to term him cruel and ungrateful, and the Ways he took, unworthy of a King, and unworthy of the old down-right Simplicity of the *Scythians*. After that the Tumult was appeaſed, I queſtion'd the Man, and asked him particular News concerning the King, *Berenice*, *Arſacomes*, and the Meſſenger I had ſent. He told me how my Meſſenger had been hang'd, the Things I have already related to you of *Arſacomes* and *Berenice*, and the King's final Reſolution to force her to that Marriage, as ſoon as *Arſacomes* was quite recover'd.

I was much more ſenſible of this News, than I had been of the Deſigns they had againſt my Life, and I reſolved to oppoſe that Violence, with all the Powers Fortune had put into my Hand; and in this Determination, turning toward my Friends, My dear Companions, ſaid I, the King makes uſe of all things for my Deſtruction; and ſo he may but ruin me, he thinks not Scorn to give himſelf over to all the moſt ſhameful Ways that can be imagined; truly I cannot but bluſh for him, remembring how paſſionately I have honoured him, and remembring that he is the Father of my Princeſs, and of my Friend. In Conſideration of that Remembrance, I would paſs over all the Injuries he does me, if his Cruelties were directed to me alone; and perhaps I ſhould be Maſter enough of my Anger, but I cannot be ſo of my Love. I forgive the King all the Attempts he has made againſt my Life; but if I may be aſſured of your good Wills to the utmoſt, I will not ſuffer him to execute the Reſolution he has taken to ſacrifice *Berenice* to the Hatred he bears me, and (contrary to all divine and human Laws) to force a free-born Princeſs, and a Princeſs conſiderable

ſiderable enough to be ſecure from all manner of Violence. We'll ſerve you (reply'd thoſe generous Friends) what Deſign ſoever you can have; and except *Oroondates* our natural Prince, we will acknowledge no Body when your Intereſts come in Queſtion. Carry the King this News, ſaid I, (turning towards that Fellow) and tell him he ſhall ſhortly have a gallanter Way to kill me, than this he employ'd you in. He ſhall ſee me before his Walls, at the Head of this ſame Army, wherewith I conquered his Enemies; and he may procure my Death by open War, with leſs Diſhonour than by the Hands of Murtherers. Tell *Arſacomes*, that if I had pleaſed, I could have hinder'd his Marriage; that I'll have another Encounter with him for that Life which he abuſes, after having receiv'd it from me; and that ſo long as I am in the World, he has little Reaſon to hope he ſhall poſſeſs *Berenice*; and if thou art ſo happy as to ſee that Princeſs, and faithful enough to diſcharge a Meſſage to her, ſay, That the Reſpect I owe her, cannot hinder me from oppoſing the Tyranny of her Father by the Way of Arms, and that a whole Army of valiant Men will periſh with me for her Quarrel, or reſtore her that Liberty whereof ſhe has been unworthily depriv'd. After theſe Words, I ſent back that Man, giving him a Convoy to carry him ſafe a good Way from the Camp, though all they that were with me, urg'd very earneſtly to have him led to the Gallows. Within Two or Three Hours after, I made the Army diſencamp, and when I had told my Friends my laſt Intention, we march'd directly toward *Iſſedon*, without conſidering any longer. We liv'd upon the King's Country, juſt as we had done when we march'd there for his Service; and when the Towns that were in our Way, ſent out towards us to learn what they ſhould fear, or what they ſhould hope, I declared that I was not their Enemy, that I demanded nothing but free Paſſage, and ſome ſmall Subſiſtance that my Soldiers might live, whom I had not Means to pay, and that if they would grant it me, I would uſe them as my Friends, and as my Brothers. By this Way we gain'd part of them, and all the open Country, which being too weak to oppoſe us, choſe much rather to contribute toward

ward the Maintenance of the Army, than draw the Power of it againſt it ſelf. 'Twas by this Order we ſubſiſted; and after we had furniſh'd our ſelves with thoſe Things that were moſt neceſſary for us, we proſecuted our Courſe, and arrived without any conſiderable Obſtacle within a Day's March of *Iſſedon*; what do I ſay within a Day's March? Rather within Sight of the very Walls: And certain Scouts whom the King had ſent out to diſcover, and who hardly ſtay'd for ours, no ſooner ſaw themſelves charg'd, but they left the Field, and ſought their Safety behind their Ramparts. I in many Occaſions had known the Strength of the King of *Scythia*, but at that Time I admired at his Weakneſs; and not conſidering that his Choler having blinded him, had taken away the greateſt part of that Care he ought to have had for his Defence, I thought the Gods, whom his laſt Actions had exaſperated againſt him, had contributed to his Weakneſs, and had oppoſed the Levying of his Troops, ſince he had none to form a Body of an Army able to keep the Field againſt us; and that he was conſtrain'd at our Approach, to ſhut them up within his Walls. True it is, that he was ſurpriz'd by our ſudden Coming, and that in the little Time we gave him, the Levies he had ſent to make in the Provinces, could not be got ready to do him Service. He thought nevertheleſs, that he might well enough ſtay for them, and that the Town being ſtrengthened as it was with a great Number of Soldiers, might endure a Siege long enough to afford them Leiſure to get on Foot, and to advance to his Relief. He alſo doubted whether I would adventure to beſiege him; and though after the Things I had done for his Service, he had no Reaſon to deſpiſe me, yet could he not fear a Man over whom he had formerly had ſo great a Power; a Man that commanded none but Troops compoſed of his own Subjects, and a Man that had no other Foundation in the World, than that of ſome revolted Forces; or to ſay better, he knew that he had the better Part of me in his Cuſtody; and that being Maſter of *Berenice*, he had the Power in his Hand to make me ſtoop to what Conditions ſoever he would impoſe. However it were, we without receiving any Hindrance,

Hindrance, encamp'd within ſight of the City Walls, and though, according to the uſual Cuſtom, our Army was not ſtrong enough to undertake a Siege of that Importance of the heart of the Kingdom, I paſſed over that Conſideration, and believed I might make uſe of the Diſorder the King was in, to labour for the Liberty of *Berenice*

The next Day he made eight hundred Horſe ſally forth upon us, under the Command of Prince *Carthaſis* his Brother. They broke through the firſt of ours very vigorouſly, and advanc'd with a great deal of Courage toward the reſt, when I came in to their Relief, with thoſe Men that happen'd to be on Horſeback with me, and our number encreaſing in a little time, we gave them ſo ſmart a Charge, that after a light Reſiſtance, they turned their Backs, and their Fear redoubling at the Name of *Arſaces*, which our Soldiers repeated every Moment, they forſook their Commander, with a very few that ſtuck to him, in the middle of one of our Squadrons, where but for my arrival he had been in a great deal of Danger. Thoſe that had ſtaid with Prince *Carthaſis*, having often nam'd him, to move our Men to ſome Reſpect of his Perſon, I caſt my Eyes upon him as I came in; and having known him by ſeveral Marks, I commanded all thoſe that had encompaſſed him to retire, and putting up the Beaver of my Helment, I made my ſelf known to the Prince, and drawing near to him with a Countenance which had nothing in it of an Enemy: Ah! Sir, (ſaid I) is it poſſible that you ſhould labour your ſelf for the Ruin of *Arſaces* who has ſo much honoured you? *Carthaſis* diſcover'd his Face by my Example, and looking upon me with an Action as obliging as mine: I never will labour (anſwered he) for the Ruin of Prince *Artaxerxes*, but he knows well enough that I cannot diſobey the King's Order, nor refuſe the Employments he gives me, with Honour. I found that in ſpeaking thoſe Words, he was fain to force himſelf before thoſe that were with him; and not being willing to render him ſuſpected by my Endearments, I forbore them for the ſame Conſideration. I am your Priſoner, (added he) but I hope you will give me fair Quarter, and my Captivi-

earneſtly of the Gods in ſome degree to appeaſe the King's Anger, and to give us ſome Means to avoid thoſe Misfortunes, whereinto his cruel Obſtinacy was going to precipitate us. The three Days within which the Prince had promiſed I ſhould hear from him were already paſt, as alſo part of the Night that followed them; and I began to complain of Breach of his Word, when a little before Day they brought a Man into my Tent, who preſently made himſelf known to me for one of his Servants. *Carthaſis* had taken care himſelf to get him out of the Gates by his Authority, for fear he ſhould have been ſearcht, and the Letters taken which he had about him. As ſoon as he was come in he delivered them to me, and having open'd them with great Impatiency, I read theſe Words in the firſt:

Prince *Carthaſis* to Prince *Arſaces*.

SIR,

I Have forgotten nothing that I owe to your Friendſhip, and to the Remembrance of your firſt and laſt Obligations; but my moſt ſenſible Grief is, that I have had too little Credit with the King, as not to be able to ſhake the leaſt of his Reſolutions; all that endeavour to diſſuade him from them, paſt in his Opinion for his Enemies, and I wanted but very little of being put into that number. In fine, he will have Berenice *marry* Arſacomes, *and though that Princeſs tells him, ſhe ſhall meet her Funeral in that Marriage, ſhe has no longer delay granted her than the remainder of this Night, and the Day following is deſtin'd without fail for thoſe unjuſt and cruel Nuptials; 'tis with an extreme Sorrow I ſend you ſuch unwelcome News; think of the Means you have to prevent it, and never doubt of my Fidelity, ſince you are too generous to deſire any Proofs of it that are contrary to Virtue.*

I was

I was so exceedingly transported at the Reading of this Letter, that if I had not hop'd the other was from my Princess, I should never have had the Patience to look upon it; and scarce was I able in the Rage that blinded me, to know her lovely Characters; yet did I cast my Eyes upon them, after I had kiss'd them, and with inward Motions that were altogether extraordinary, I read these Words:

The Princess *Berenice* to Prince *Arsaces.*

THE Hour of my Death is near, my dear Arsaces, *and to Morrow must be the Day of my Funeral. I write these Words, not so much to tell you this ill News, as to protest to you, that I will persevere to my very Grave in my first Resolution. Take Comfort in a Misfortune you cannot divert, and be at least assured, that if* Berenice *cannot be yours, you shall never have the Discontent to see her live with* Arsacomes.

It is most certain that if my Anger had not strengthned me, I should have fallen into dangerous Faintings at the sorrowful reading of this Letter, and all the Sensibleness I had ever shewed in my most cruel Afflictions, was a Matter of nothing in Comparison of this last; and indeed I had never been so near to my Destruction, nor had I ever had so great Reason to fear my utmost Misfortunes. They that saw me then, said I was so chang'd that it was not possible to know me, and that I did Actions so different from my ordinary Carriage, as nothing but my Rage alone could have made excusable. How (cried I with a furious Action) shall I live, and shall *Berenice* be in the Arms of *Arsacomes*? Shall I stand idle at the Head of twenty thousand Men, while my Life is sacrific'd within these Walls; and briefly, shall I suffer my adored Princess to be violently taken from me,

and

and that unworthy Rival to triumph over my Happineſs, and over my Reputation? Ah! no *Arſacomes*, thou ſhalt not ſo eaſily effect ſo high an Enterprize, I can tear away that Life, for all theſe Ramparts, which I could have taken from thee at the Head of thy Army, and this nuptial Torch, ſhall without doubt be that which muſt light thee to thy Burial. No, King of *Scythia*, thou ſhalt not have the Satisfaction, to have ſo cruelly made an End of the Remnants of miſerable *Darius*; and that which thou haſt not been able to do by Poiſon, by the Weapons of thy Guards, and by the Swords of thy Aſſaſſinates, ſhall not be executed by the Violence thou uſeſt againſt *Berenice*. No, my dear Princeſs, I'll not abandon you in the Extremity you are brought to for happy *Arſaces*; I ſay happy, ſince they that think they labour for his Ruin, labour for his Glory, and for his Fortune; and that the Conſtancy you ſhew in his Favour, is a thouſand times more dear to him, than all the Miſchiefs which his Enemies prepare him can be terrible. Fear nothing, virtuous Princeſs, while *Arſaces* is alive, and believe there are no Walls ſo ſtrong, as to keep a deſperate Lover from coming to you. While I was ſpeaking theſe Words, my Tent fill'd with a good number of my chiefeſt Friends, and of the principal Officers of the Army, whom deſire of hearing the News I had received, and that of the Affliction I expreſs'd, brought thither.

The ſight of them comforted me very much, and not being willing longer to defer demanding the laſt effect of their good Will. Now it is, (ſaid I) my brave and generous Friends, that *Arſaces* challenges the accompliſhment of your Promiſes; he has but a Minute more to live, unleſs his Life be prolong'd by your Aſſiſtance. All that you have done for me hitherto, is but a Preparative to what I deſire of you to Day; and that which I deſire of you to Day is of ſuch infinite Conſequence, that if you will ſuffer me to caſt my ſelf at your Feet and embrace your Knees to obtain it, you ſhall ſee me abaſe my ſelf to all manner of Submiſſions to work upon you. Behold, (ſaid I, ſhewing them the Letters I had receiv'd, which *Theodates* began to read aloud) behold to what Eſtate my Affairs are reduced, and how much Time I

have

have left to make uſe of your Friendſhip. You know I have deferred it as long as poſſibly I could, and that even contrary to your own Counſel, I have conſerved a Reſpect toward the King of *Scythia*, for the Loſs whereof his Cruelty would have diſpenc'd with me ſufficiently. How all Conſiderations are quench'd in the Deſpair into which he has thrown me, and being no longer in a Condition to have any of my own Safety, I muſt at length caſt away all thoſe that have till now imprudently withheld me. I would have ſaid more if that Company of generous Men had ſuffered me, and if they had not interrupted me altogether, crying that I ſhould lead them whither I would, and that I ſhould preſently declare what I intended, with a perfect Aſſurance that it ſhould be executed, or that they would all periſh to the very laſt Man. When I ſaw them in that courageous Reſolution; My dear Friends, (ſaid I) ſince you will have me uſe that Term, to Day I will aſſault this Town; not that I deſire the Ruin of it, or that I would ſhed the Blood of your Countrymen, and of a People to which I neither can nor will bear a Hatred, but I will this Day pull *Berenice* by meer force out of the Hands of a cruel Father, and of an unworthy Husband, to whom they have deſtined her. For this Purpoſe, I my ſelf will fall on with three thouſand Men, at this next Gate, and having open'd our Paſſage by the Violence of our Rams, I hope I ſhall make my Way to the Palace for the Execution of my Enterprize. To make it the more feaſible, you, my gallant Friends, muſt begin the Storm in three other Places, which ſhall be aſſign'd to three amongſt you. You ſhall advance with your Rams, and preſent your Ladders, but being I deſire your Aſſault ſhould only ſerve to make a Diverſion, and to draw the Reſiſtance thither, to the end I may find the more Facility on the other Side, you ſhall not need to proſecute your Attempt more obſtinately than Neceſſity will require to amaze the Enemy, not deſiring (as I have told you) to expoſe this City, where I have a great many very dear Friends, to the utmoſt Calamities and Misfortunes which uſually accompany the taking of Places by Force. Go therefore, if you pleaſe, to prepare, and put all Things in the Readi-

neſs that will be needful for this Deſign, but I conjure you let it be done with all the haſte that can be poſſible; and ſince 'tis upon it alone my Life depends, as you deſire the Gods ſhould favour you, take ſome Care for the Safety of him, whom you have judg'd worthy of your Friendſhip.

Leotaris, with two thouſand Men, ſhall attack the Gate of the *Iſſedons*, *Cleoreſtes* with a like Number that of *Sorey*, *Mazentes* that of *Mars*, and Prince *Theodates*, if he pleaſe, ſhall ſtay at the Head of our main Body, which he ſhall draw up into Battalia, and keep in Readineſs to re-inforce the Aſſault where there ſhall be need of his Aſſiſtance. Although this Reſolution proceeded from my Deſpair, yet nevertheleſs it was approved, and all theſe valiant Men ran to execute the Orders I had given them, with ſo much Affection that I conceived a marvellous Hope of the Succeſs of my Enterprize. I will not detain you longer in the Recital of our Preparations, nor with that of the Thoughts wherewith I was then tormented; to be brief, within two Hours after the Sun was up, all the Engines for Battery were ready, and all the Squadrons prepared to march againſt the Town. They drew near to it in gallant Order, and divided themſelves according to the Quarters that were aſſign'd them. They that ſaw them appear from the top of the Walls, trembled at that Object; and the King himſelf, who was told of it, judged quickly he ſhould have other Employments that Day than that of the Marriage for which he had appointed it. The three Commanders having taken the Ways to their ſeveral Places, fell on at the firſt Entrenchments of the Town, and though they found them guarded with ſome Men, they aſſaulted them ſo vigorouſly, that after a faint Reſiſtance, and a very ſmall Loſs, they made themſelves Maſters of them; and coming up to the Moat, began, at the Mercy of a Shower of Arrows that pour'd upon them, to caſt in Bavins, and to endeavour to fill it up with an admirable Reſolution.

They had been fighting above half an Hour, and the greateſt part of the Garriſon was run to the Defence of thoſe Ports; when I, at the Head of my Battalion, making thoſe that had the Conduct of the Engines to advance,

vance, ſet forward with a wondrous Confidence drawn from the Looks of thoſe that accompanied me, in which I read an unalterable Reſolution to conquer, or elſe to die for my Intereſts. I confirm'd them in that generous Deſign, by all the Words my Paſſion could put into my Mouth, and finding them as forward as my ſelf, we advanc'd toward the Gate, in a faſhion that froze the fearful Hearts of thoſe that were there to defend it. I had choſen that Port as moſt convenient for my Deſign, and though it was fortified with ſome Works that were reaſonable good, it was yet the weakeſt of any about the Town, becauſe of the exceſſive Hardneſs of a Rock in that Place, into which it was impoſſible to cut a Moat. Wherefore after being Maſters of the Out-works, one might eaſily march on Horſeback to the very Gate, there being nothing to oppoſe the Paſſage of the Rams, nor of the Cavalry. I inſtantly ſummon'd the Out-works by a Trumpet, and having let them know it was *Arſaces* that aſſaulted them in Perſon, my good Fortune had made that Name ſo terrible, that nothing but their fear of the King kept them in any manner of Defence. But ſcarce had they ſeen me alight, with a good part of my Men, to advance with our Swords towards their Entrenchments, when after having ſhot a few Arrows, which hardly wounded any of our Men, they retired in Diſorder toward the Gate. There they made ſome ſlight Reſiſtance, but when they ſaw us get on Horſeback again to fall upon them, and that inſtead of making our Rams advance, we prepared our ſelves to break into the Town along with them, they quitted the Gates, and having ſhut them, left us free acceſs, without any other Hinderance than that of their Arrows which play'd upon us from the top of the Wall.

They ſhot ſo great a number of them, that our Approach was very difficult, and dangerous, but I gave order to our Archers to aim at thoſe that appear'd upon the Battlements, and at the ſame time covering our ſelves with our Shields, we drove our Rams very impetuouſly againſt the Gate. A great many of our Men fell in this Aſſault, I had two Horſes kill'd under me, and moſt of thoſe that made the Rams play (whereof divers were

without Arms) loſt their Lives in that Service. Yet thoſe that remained, perſiſted ſo firmly in their Office, and I encourag'd them ſo well, keeping ſtill at the Head of them, that in ſpite of all Reſiſtance, they came up to the Gates, batter'd them in Pieces, and open'd us as large a Paſſage as we could deſire. Then did I get again on Horſeback the fourth time, and ruſhed on with my Sword in my Hand into the middle of thoſe that defended the Entrance, in which Action I was ſo bravely ſeconded, that within a ſhort time, part of my Enemies being ſlain, and the reſt put to flight, I had free Way into the Streets, and began to enter them with Facility enough. Some Soldiers that were either obſtinate, or intereſſed in *Arſacomes* his Party, found their Death in the Point of our Weapons; but as ſoon as ever I believed my ſelf Maſter, I, by a Trumpet, commanded the Inhabitants to retire into their Houſes, promiſing they ſhould receive no Hurt either in their Goods or Perſons; and at the ſame time gave order from one to another thro' all the Squadrons that followed me, that none ſhould dare to kill either Citizens or Soldiers, except thoſe who by their wilful Reſiſtance drew their Death upon themſelves.

By this Command I ſav'd the Lives of many thouſands, who would have loſt them in the firſt Fury of our Soldiers; but yet the Town was in a general Conſternation, and notwithſtanding all the Endeavours that were uſed to beget an Aſſurance in the Inhabitants, there was no Poſſibility to hinder the confuſed Noiſe that was heard on all Sides, nor the Cries of Women and Children, which reſounded every where in a very lamentable manner. The King, who from one to another had heard that I was Maſter of the Town, ſtrucken with a mortal Grief, and fancying the Miſchief to be greater than it was, becauſe he was conſcious he had given me Reaſon enough to caſt away all Conſideration of him, had left thoſe Places whither the Noiſe of the firſt Aſſaults had drawn him, and being followed by *Arſacomes*, Prince *Carthaſis*, and many of his Men, had reſolv'd to die fighting, and not ſurvive the Shame, which a Stranger alone, and abandoned, made him ſuffer in the middle of his Dominions.

While

While he was coming toward me, I was advanced as far as the Palace, where I heard he had left the Princeſs guarded, and having open'd my Way with my Sword through them that ſtrove to ſtop it, I was got at laſt to the Gates thereof, and ſeeing them defended by a great number of Soldiers, I flew in amongſt them, and made my Paſſage free, by the Death of thoſe that would have hindred it. When once I had entred the Court, I alighted, and having commanded as many of thoſe that were with me as I had need of, to do the like I left the reſt at the Gate, with Orders to ſtay there till my return, and went up the Stairs with my Sword in my Hand, my Arms beſmear'd with Blood in many Places, in a Poſture that ſtruck Fear into all that were in my Way. I met no Obſtacle till I came to the Princeſs's Lodgings, where they the King had left to guard her, hoping for no Pardon from him if they abandoned her, perſiſted in a Reſiſtance which was fatal to them, and which made the greateſt Part of them fall at the Doors which they defended. At laſt that of my Princeſs's Chamber was open to me, and as ſoon as I had ſet my Foot within it, I ſaw her in a Corner of the Room, as much affrighted as if our Deſign had been againſt her very Life. True it is that ſuch a Spectacle, the Fight that had been at her Chamber Door, the Blood whereof ran all about, and the Sight of a great many dead, and dying, was up, all the Engines for Battery were ready, and Soldiers, were ſufficient to beget a Fear in her, neither did I think it any thing ſtrange, but judging that I had no Time to loſe in Words, I only ſaid, Madam, you are free, nor ſhall this be the Day that you ſhall marry *Arſacomes*. After theſe Words, (to which I neither receiv'd, nor expected any Anſwer) I took her in my Arms fainting, and almoſt in a Swoon, and commanded *Criton* to do the like to *Cyllenia*; then going out again with that precious Burthen, and no longer finding any Hinderance that could retard me, I went down into the Court the ſame Way that I came up. In the mean time the Princeſs's Spirits were abſolutely gone, which I not perceiving, put her into the Arms of one of my Men, while I got on Horſeback, and received her from him again,

without obſerving it; ſo much was I tranſported in the Condition I then ſaw my ſelf, and ſo extremely taken up with the Thought of what I had yet to do. Scarce was I out of the Palace-Gate, when I ſaw the King accompanied by Prince *Carthaſis*, *Arſacomes*, and many others, but their Number was little able to diſpute the Victory againſt me. He had no ſooner known me, and ſeen the Princeſs his Daughter in my Arms, but advancing before all his Men, after he had often call'd me Traitor, he darted a Javelin at me which he held in his Right-hand, and which came whizzing over my Shoulder. I trembled for fear of *Berenice*; but that was not able to make me loſe the Reſpect I bore to the King's Perſon, wherefore having given my Men a command only to defend themſelves, and to make the Retreat after me; King of *Scythia*, (cried I) I will neither have thy Life, nor thy City, but leave them both for my Princeſs. *Arſacomes* may live alſo, ſince I cannot give him his Death without Advantage, but he ſhall live without *Berenice*: At theſe Words, calling to thoſe of my Party to open and give me Paſſage, I put on my Horſe in the midſt of them, covering my Princeſs with my Shield, and crying to my Men to follow me, ſince I had gotten what I deſired. I returned to the Gate by which I came in, without ony other Difficulty, except the Croud of my own Soldiers. They all followed me out, and whether it were that they were glad to receive the Command of ſparing their Countrymen, or that really they bore that Reſpect to me, I could not have wiſh'd a more exact Obedience than they ſhew'd in that Encounter.

I was out of the Gates, and retiring toward our Camp with a Satisfaction which you may better imagine than I expreſs, when I perceived that my Princeſs was in a Swoond, the Knowledge whereof did extremely moderate my Joy; and though I very well judg'd that it was but a Faintneſs cauſed by her Fear, out of which ſhe would eaſily come to her ſelf again, and that thereby I gain'd the Liberty to ſteal Favours which had never been granted me, yet could I not ſee her in that Condition, without falling into a mortal Sorrow; and I rode back to my Tents with a Countenance which did but little teſtify

teſtify the fortunate Succeſs of my Enterprize. In the mean time I had ſent to *Leotaris*, and the other Commanders, to draw off from their Aſſaults, and within a little while the Town was left free, and in the ſame Condition it had been the Day before. As ſoon as I was come into my Tent, and had laid my Princeſs upon a Bed, I caſt cold Water often upon her Face, ſent for Phyſicians, and all Perſons that were able to give her any help, but their Aſſiſtance was not neceſſary, for either the Water or Time brought her to her ſelf again. No ſooner did ſhe open her Eyes, but ſhe ſaw me by her upon my Knees, having my Lips faſt cemented to one of her fair Hands. She look'd a while about the Chamber, and preſently after, having turn'd her Eyes upon my Face, upon *Theodates*, and upon *Cyllenia* who ſtood by her, ſhe knew the Truth of that Adventure; and ſitting up, after ſhe had pull'd away her Hand from between mine; *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) what have you done? I have done what you have Reaſon to expect from my Affection (anſwered I) and I have drawn you out of the Arms of that unworthy Husband they intended you. Yes, (ſaid *Berenice*) but you have alſo pull'd me out of my Father's.

The Princeſs had no ſooner ſpoken theſe Words, but a Chilneſs ran through all my Veins, and my Aſtoniſhment was ſo great, that not being able to make any Reply, I only fix'd my Eyes upon her Face. All they that were in the Room obſerv'd my Confuſion, and the Princeſs making uſe of my Silence to proceed: *Arſaces*, (continued ſhe) ſince you have ſatisfied your Love, ſatisfy my Honour alſo; I am not offended at your Action, but if you have lov'd me, I beſeech you in the Name of all the Gods, to reſtore me my Liberty. If her firſt Words had aſtoniſhed me, theſe laſt pierc'd my very Heart, and giving me that Senſe again, which her former ones had taken from me, they likewiſe gave me the Strength to expreſs it. How, Madam, (ſaid I) do you demand your Liberty of me, and are not you free, are not you Soveraign amongſt us, whereas before you were a Captive, and a Priſoner in that Place from whence I have delivered you? 'Tis true, (added the Princeſs) I was a Captive,

and I was unfortunate, but that Captivity, and thoſe Misfortunes were better becoming, and more advantageous to *Berenice*, than this Liberty you have reſtor'd her, or this Empire you have given her over you; and if you will have me make Uſe of it, it ſhall only be to conjure you to ſend me back to the King my Father.

This Diſcourſe abſolutely kill'd me, or at leaſt it left me a Life much worſe than Death it ſelf, and gave me a Deſire to put an End to't before the Eyes of that cruel Princeſs. What, Madam, (reply'd I, quite tranſported) would you have me ſend you back to the King, and put you again into the Power of that *Arſacomes*, to whom you had ſo great an Averſion, and who this Day ſhould have been your Husband? Has half a Day been able to make ſo great a Change in your Mind? And do you now reject *Arſaces* to prefer that *Arſacomes* whom yeſterday you hated worſe than Death? *Arſaces* (anſwer'd the Princeſs, with a more reſolute Voice than before) never was more dear to me, and *Arſacomes* never more odious than at this preſent; and if you well remember the Hopes I have given, you cannot accuſe me of a Change, which neither half a Day, no nor my whole Life ever made me capable of. I promis'd you I would never love any Body but your ſelf, I promiſed you that I would marry Death rather than *Arſacomes*; but I never made you hope, either by my Diſcourſes, or by my Actions, that I would fly from my Father's Arms to follow you, and that I would licence my ſelf in Favour of you, to do ſhameful Actions, and ſuch as are unworthy of a Princeſs.

I never demanded any Proofs of your Affection, interrupted I, which the ſtricteſt Severity could condemn; but what other Remedy could I apply to ſo preſſing an Extremity, and what Means had you to avoid that Misfortune, which you your ſelf had given me Notice of? *Death*, reply'd the Princeſs, *which ſhall ever be leſs cruel to me, than the Shame you have prepared me; and tho' I gave you Notice of my Misfortune, I did not demand Remedies of you which you could not give me without ruining me. I only proteſted to you that I would never be but yours, and that Promiſe ſhall be inviolably performed.* And which Way do

you

you keep that Promiſe (ſaid I, quite tranſported) if you command me to reſtore you to *Arſacomes? You ſhall not reſtore me to* Arſacomes, (added the Princeſs) *but only to the King my Father, whom my Honour ſuffers me not to forſake without his Conſent; and if the King give me to* Arſacomes, *I by my Death can oppoſe his Tyranny without offending my Reputation.* Ah! Madam, (cry'd I, ſtepping back a little, and lifting up my Hands and Eyes to Heaven) I had rather leave you to *Arſacomes*, than leave you unto Death; and if one of us muſt die, 'tis only this forſaken *Arſaces*, this *Arſaces* who no way but by dying can juſtify the Cowardiſe that will reflect upon him for quitting you to his Rival. Yes, Madam, I am ready to give you the cruel Proofs of my Submiſſion which you demand; and if you yet deſire any others, you ſhall ſee me run to them with the ſame Reſignation. Let's be gone from this Place, which is more odious to us both, than the Priſon from whence I deliver'd you; let's be gone from this Place, ſo fatal to your Reputation; and ſince you find ſo much Shame, and ſo much Misfortune in the Company of *Arſaces*, let's go again to the King of *Scythia*, let's go and receive *Arſacomes*; I am ready to ſacrifice my Intereſts, to ſacrifice my Life to the Glory of that Rival, that I may ſerve *Berenice* to the utmoſt, as ungrateful, and as much changed as ſhe is; and it ſhall never be reproach'd to me, that either her Ingratitude, or her Change, diſpenſed me from the Obedience I owe her. With theſe Words, I commanded a Chariot to be made ready; but tho' my Grief, or rather my Diſpair, was viſible in my Face, and that my Princeſs was deeply touch'd with it, yet was ſhe not ſhaken in her Reſolution; only ſhe let me ſee by her Tears, that it was not without Sorrow ſhe parted from me: And having look'd upon me a while without ſpeaking, *You are ungrateful your ſelf*, ſaid ſhe, *to accuſe her of Ingratitude, and of Change, who for all you are ſo Great, for all you are ſo worthy to be lov'd, loves you better than ſhe ought, ſince ſhe loves you better than her Quiet, and better than her Life. The Event perhaps will make my Intentions better known to you than they are; and you without doubt will learn,*

that tho' I prefer my Duty before your Satisfaction, I'll prefer my Grave before any Man in the World except Arſaces.

In another Seaſon this Diſcourſe would have been ſufficient to content me; but in the preſſing Extremity I was then reduc'd to, there was little Probability I could be ſatisfied with Words; neither did I forbear to teſtify enough by my Actions how little Effect they had wrought upon me, and how firm a Conſtancy ſoever I affected, to ſhew her to my lateſt End, that I made no Difficulty to obey her: I could not be Maſter of thoſe impetuous Motions that drove me headlong into Rage; and not being willing to ſay any more to *Berenice*, that could make her believe I waver'd in the Execution of her Commands, I turn'd towards *Theodates*, and thoſe gallant Men that had ſeconded me ſo bravely. Ah! My generous Companions, (ſaid I, with Tears in my Eyes) how unprofitably have I employ'd your Valour, and how vainly have I engaged you, to ſhed the Blood of your Countrymen, and your own! You, out of your extraordinary Generoſity, have link'd your ſelves to the Intereſt of a poor Stranger; you have marched chearfully againſt your King, for the Eſtabliſhment of my Repoſe, and of my Fortune: You have ſeen the Walls of the Metropolis of *Scythia*, nay you have made your ſelves Maſters in a few Moments, of a City, the Taking whereof, my Men leſs valiant, would have required whole Years; and briefly, by the Effects of a prodigious Courage, you have given me this Princeſs, for whoſe Sake alone I had accepted your Aſſiſtance: But, O Gods, how little do I profit by all you have done for me, and how cruel, how fatal will the Fruit of your Victory be to me? Ah! how much more happy had I been, to have fallen by the Sword of *Arſacomes*, or to have loſt my Life before the Gates of *Iſſedon*, than to give it up now to the Inhumanity of *Berenice!*

While I was lamenting in this Manner, and drew Tears of Compaſſion from all that heard me, I ſaw the Chariot coming, which I had given Order for, to carry back the Princeſs. That Sight re-doubled my Affliction, but ſtruggling with my utmoſt Power to get the Maſtery of it, in an Occaſion wherein I ſtood in need of all my

Forti-

Fortitude, I drew near to *Berenice*, and offering her my Hand, with a forc'd Conſtancy, Come, Madam, ſaid I, let's go back again to the King your Father; ſtay no longer here in the Camp, and in the Tent of his Enemy; all Things are ready for your Departure, and you are as free as you can deſire.

Berenice's Tears which ſhe ſhed in great Abundance, would not ſuffer her to reply; but only taking my Hand, which I had preſented her, ſhe went out of the Tent in ſuch a Condition as made me know it was not without a great deal of Reluctance ſhe gave her ſelf up to the ſevere Precepts of her Duty: When ſhe was gotten into the Chariot, and *Cyllenia* with her, ſhe ſtrove to break the Silence ſhe ſo long had kept; and looking upon me with drowned Eyes, You ſhall quickly know (ſaid ſhe) that without Inhumanity you cannot accuſe me, and that the Action you ſee me do, ought rather to draw Pity from you, than thoſe cruel Reproaches you have uſed.

Farewel *Artaxerxes*, (purſued ſhe, forcing her Modeſty to embrace me) leave the Care of my Deſtiny to me, and remember that if *Berenice* live not for you, ſhe will not live for her ſelf. With theſe Words, after ſhe had expreſsly commanded me not to ſtir out of my Tent, and to give her only a ſmall Convoy to the City-Gate, ſhe turn'd her Eyes from me, and bidding the Charioteer drive away, departed, and carried with her all my Joy, and all the Hopes I had conceived. *Theodates* took the Care to conduct her, and following at a little Diſtance, loſt not Sight of the Chariot till it entred into the Gates.

O Gods! in what a ſad Condition did I remain after ſhe was gone, how full of Sorrow were my Words, my Actions, and my Thoughts? All my Friends endeavour'd but in vain to comfort me, and when I had endured their Perſecutions a good while, I pray'd them toward the Evening to leave me alone, and having perſuaded them to it with much ado, I paſs'd the ſmall Remainder of that Day, and the Night following, in Torments that cannot poſſibly be conceiv'd. All that the Conſideration of the greateſt Miſeries can produce in a Heart, all the utmoſt Cruelty, all the utmoſt Violence that can enter

in a Man's Thoughts, was Gentleneſs, and Mildneſs in reſpect of what mine made me ſuffer. In the Beginning, they tended all to Fury, and following the firſt Motions of my Anger, I let my ſelf be impetuouſly carried away by my Paſſions. Why do I complain, (ſaid I) why do I weakly ſhed Tears like a Woman, ſince I have the Force, ſince I have the Courage of a Man, and ſince I ſtill have Arms in my Hand, to make part of my Miſeries fall back upon the Heads of my Enemies? Let's no longer deliberate upon a Matter, which my juſt Indignation ought to have reſolv'd; and ſince we muſt neceſſarily periſh, let us make whatſoever contributes to our Ruin periſh with us. I have ſtill the ſame Forces which this very Day made me Maſter of this City, where my ingrateful Princeſs, and my barbarous Enemies are ſhut up. The Valour of my Companions is not cool'd ſince Morning, and I have Courage enough my ſelf, to execute in this higheſt Pitch of Deſpair, what I have executed once already in my more moderate Reſentments; Let's go therefore, and employ both theirs and mine for my final Revenge; and ſince we muſt run to our Grave, let us make a ruined Palace, and a deſolate City our Monument: Let us once more force our Entrance into the Gates of this hated Town; but let us uſe our Victory otherwiſe than we did before; let's waſh the Streets of it with Rivers of that Blood, for which we have undeſervedly been laviſh of our own; let's carry a Thouſand Deaths (if it be capable to receive ſo many) into the Breaſt of unworthy and unthankful *Arſacomes:* Let's ſacrifice that Victim to ingrateful *Berenice*, which is but too juſtly due unto my Love; and to ſatisfy our ſelf by a compleat Revenge, in a Seaſon when all Reſpect, and all paſs'd Conſiderations ought to be extinguiſh'd in us, let us bury the King of *Scythia*, I ſay the King of *Scythia* himſelf, in the Ruins of his Capital City; let us pour forth to our lawful Anger the Blood of that barbarous King, who by ſo many unworthy Means, has ſought our Deſtruction; and if *Berenice* be offended at that Revenge, let us make her Satisfaction by employing our own Hands to give her this Life, which ſhe for trivial Scruples has ſo ungratefully abandoned; let's never

ſtand

ſtand conſidering in this Deſign, but run to execute it without deferring any longer. It is not neceſſary to ſtay till it be Morning, the Night is much more proper for the Execution I intend; its gloomy Horror is far more ſuitable to that of my afflicted Soul, and the Darkneſs of it will ſerve to blind that Pity which might perhaps be cauſed by the Sight of diſmal Objects. In this impetuous Torrent, which hurried me away, I ſtarted up in my Bed, fully perſuaded and ſatisfied in the Reſolution I had taken: I had nothing in my Mouth, and in my Thoughts, but Death, Blood, Fire, and all the moſt dreadful Imaginations that can be fancied, and I found ſome Sweetneſs and ſome Comfort in the Satisfaction I hop'd for. I was already opening my Mouth, to call for thoſe that were neceſſary for the Orders I meant to give, when a more gentle Spirit than that of Revenge, crept inſenſibly into my Heart, and moderated the Violences of it with more Succeſs than I expected. It firſt made me partly to abhor the Things I had reſolv'd on, and then it endeavour'd to diſſuade me from them by all the Reaſons it could repreſent. By little and little, Tenderneſs ſtole into the Place of Anger, and I felt my ſelf mollified by Reflections that were too powerful to be oppoſed.

It is true, (ſaid I to my ſelf again) there is a Neceſſity thou muſt die, but thou muſt die as thou haſt liv'd, and not ſuffer thy Death to caſt a Scandal upon thy Love, nor upon thy former Actions. 'Tis nothing but thy Life, and thine alone that's due to thy Misfortunes; and the Gods do juſtly demand it of thee, ſince thou haſt ſhamefully conſerved it, after the Loſs of all thy Friends: The People of *Iſſedor*, this poor People, in whom thou haſt found nothing but Affection towards thee, is innocent of thy Miſeries, nor canſt thou ſacrifice it to thine Indignation, without blaſting thy Fame with Cruelty and Ingratitude. *Arſacomes* indeed is perhaps worthy of Death, but thou oughteſt to leave him a Life, which thou haſt ſav'd him more than once, to keep the Glory of thy Actions entire to the End of thine. The King of *Scythia* would deſtroy thee, but he's the Father of *Berenice* and *Orondates*; and if the Gods had given thee a Thouſand

Thouſand Lives, thou oughteſt to loſe them all, rather than attempt any thing againſt his. Rather ask Pardon of thy Miſtreſs, and of thy Friend, for the cruel Thought thou haſt had againſt their Father, and bluſh at that paricidial Deſign, which renders thee the moſt criminal of all Men living: No, (added I, within a while after) 'tis not by violent Ways that thou muſt ſatisfy thy ſelf; *Berenice* diſapproves them, and I ought no more to intereſt her, nor hers in the Effects of my Diſpair. Let's die in ſuch a Faſhion as may be obliging to *Berenice*, and obliging to the King of *Scythia*; let's at the End of our Life take up that Reſpect again, which we ſeem'd to have loſt; and let us order it ſo, that my Miſtreſs, and my Friend, may in the laſt of my Actions, find Reparation for the Diſcontents I have given their Father. This laſt Thought drew me into a Deſign that was more pleaſing to me than all thoſe I before had fancied, and after having a little examin'd it, I fix'd upon it ſo firmly, that nothing was able to divert me.

The Day beginning to appear, juſt as I had ſettled my Reſolution, I got out of Bed, and calling for Paper, wrote theſe Words, with an Intent to make them be deliver'd to *Theodates*.

Arſaces to *Theodates.*

MY too dear and too generous Friend, one of the moſt ſenſible Griefs that accompany me to my Grave, is that of parting with you for ever, after having engag'd you, and ſo many gallant Men after you, in a Party deſtructive to your Repoſe, and to your Fortune; neither in the Reaſons I have here to die, ſhould I have ever reſolv'd to forſake you, if I did not know that I leave you in a Condition, wherein you are able to make an advantageous Peace, both for your ſelf, and for the reſt. The King of Scythia *who demands nothing but the Death of* Arſaces, *and whom the Death of* Arſaces *ſhall have ſatisfied, will grant you all the Conditions you could ask, and ſo long as you have Arms in your Hands, you may make them your ſelves with all manner of Advantage. Pardon me the Troubles wherewith the Miſeries*

of

of my Life have caſt you, obtain the ſame Pardon for one of our faithful Friends, and love the Memory of Arſaces, *ſince if he could have liv'd, he would have lived that he might have been always yours.*

I left this Letter upon my Table, with a Command to one of my Servants to give it to *Theodates* within Two Hours; and at the ſame Time calling for my Arms, and a Horſe, I got upon him, not ſuffering any Body to go along with me. I even refus'd the Attendance of *Criton* and *Leotaris*, with many others, being come to the Door of my Tent while I was taking Horſe, I oppoſed the Offer they made to accompany me, and entreated them ſo earneſtly, to afford my Sorrow an Hour's Solitarineſs, that not being able to deny it, they left me at Liberty. I firſt took a little Circuit to hinder them from knowing what Way I went; and when I was out of their Sight, I turn'd toward the neareſt Gate of the City, I quickly heard the outmoſt *Corps de Garde*, and found Soldiers in thoſe Places from whence I had driven them the Day before. I deſired thoſe that bad me ſtand, (putting up the Beaver of my Head-piece but very little) that they would carry me to the King, to whom I had a Matter of Conſequence to impart; and they having led me to the Gates, thoſe that were there upon the Guard, ſeeing but a ſingle Man, made no Difficulty to let him in.

Having ask'd the firſt I met where the King was; He is at the Temple of *Tellus*, ſaid they, where the greateſt Part of the Court is aſſembled, and where the King intends this Morning to celebrate the Marriage of the Princeſs with *Arſacomes*. Scarce was I able to forbear diſcovering my ſelf at this Anſwer; but my Helmet cover'd the Alteration of my Countenance, as it alſo diſguiſed my Voice; nor was it thought ſtrange, that paſſing for a Man who was come over from the Party of *Arſaces*, to give the King ſome Intelligence, I ſhould keep my Beaver down, and deſire to be unknown to every Body but the King himſelf, to whom they were leading me. I came to the Gates of that fatal Temple, where my Funeral was preparing: And tho' one would

hav-

have thought, that in the Condition the Town then was, the People ſhould rather have been manning the Walls, than in that Temple; yet was the Croud ſo great there, that if they that carried me had not employ'd the King's Authority, I ſhould hardly have gotten Paſſage. The King had not been long come to the Temple, and he was gone thither ſo early, for fear his Intention ſhould be hinder'd by ſome new Accident. Neither the Reſpect I had ſhewn towards his Perſon, and towards his Town which I had quitted to him, after I had made my ſelf Maſter of it, nor the laſt Proof I had given him in ſending back the Princeſs, had been ſufficient to appeaſe him, or to arm him againſt the Incitements of the Queen, and *Arſacomes*; but knowing very well that I was in a Condition to overthrow all his Deſigns, if he deferred them any longer, he had a Mind to haſten the only Revenge he was able to take of me, for fear I ſhould prevent him, and ſhould a ſecond Time deprive him of the Means he had to effect it. For this Purpoſe, neglecting the Defence of his City, and truſting it to the Hands of others, he gave himſelf over wholly to his Anger, and was much more eagerly fixt upon his Deſire of puniſhing *Arſaces*, than upon that of protecting his People, and conſerving his Dominions. All the Princeſs's Tears, and all her Reſiſtance was but unprofitable; ſhe had vainly begg'd of the King for ſome Delay, and that Prince abandon'd to his Wrath, without giving Ear to her earneſt Prayers, had caus'd her to be put into his Chariot, and had carried her himſelf to the Temple, whither *Arſacomes* was gone before, with the Queen and all thoſe of his Party. As ſoon as ever the Prieſt had appeared, the Princeſs caſting her ſelf at the King's Feet, had proteſted that ſhe would rather die there, than yield the Conſent that was demanded of her; ſhe had conjured him by a Flood of Tears, to recede from his cruel Determination, to have Regard unto the laſt Effects of her Reſpect and Duty, which had made her forſake *Arſaces*, to put her ſelf again into his Hands: But her Tears and Prayers were all to no Purpoſe; and when once ſhe had found that nothing in the World was able to mollify him, ſhe had turned toward *Arſacomes*, who full of Hopes, permitted

mitted the King to preſs her in his Favour; and looking upon him with Eyes enflam'd with Anger, Think not, wicked Man, (had ſhe ſaid) that this Authority which thou unworthily abuſeſt, can ever be able to change my Inclinations; with what Violence ſoever they are oppoſed, I will never look upon thee as other than as my mortal Enemy; and thou well may'ſt make me ſuffer Death, but never make me to become thy Wife. *Arſacomes* left the Care of anſwering theſe Words unto the King, and he was going to do it with a Sharpneſs that made all the Company tremble for that poor Princeſs, when I preſented my ſelf before him, and preventing the Reply he was about to make, Stay, (cried I to him) ſtay King of *Scythia*, and be not ſo haſty to diſpatch a Sacrifice, whereof I am the principal Victim. With theſe Words I made an End of opening my Paſſage to him, and caſting my Helmet at his Feet, diſcover'd the Face of *Arſaces* to him, and to the whole Aſſembly. I know not whether Fear or Amazement ſeiz'd firſt upon the King; the Remembrance of the Day before, coming preſently into his Mind, made him believe I had entred the Town again in Arms, and that having forc'd the Gates a ſecond Time, I came now at the laſt to croſs his Deſign, and take Revenge for all the Injuries I had received.

I read his Apprehenſion in his Countenance, but I ſuffered him not long to continue in it; for looking upon him with an Action much more reſolute than his, Settle thy ſelf (ſaid I) and do not fear the Sight of a ſingle Man, and of a Man whom all thy Cruelties have not been able to make thine Enemy. I neither come with a Power, nor with an Intention to take Revenge for ſo many unſpeakable Wrongs; I only bring thee a Head, which is neceſſary for thy perfect Satisfaction, and a Head which with *Berenice* thou ſhould'ſt preſent to *Arſacomes*. Behold my Arms, which I throw down at thy Feet, (purſued I, letting fall my Sword) and behold at laſt this *Arſaces*, to whom thou bear'ſt ſo implacable a Hatred, who comes both alone, and unarm'd, to expoſe himſelf to all Indignation; but as it is with no Deſign to hurt thee, ſo neither is it with any to appeaſe

peaſe thee that he here preſents himſelf; he demands no Reparation for the Injuries thou haſt done him, nor does he pretend to any Favour by thoſe thou haſt receiv'd from him, and he would be aſham'd to receive Life from them, to whom he has been accuſtomed to give it.

Pour forth all the Effects of thine Anger upon this *Artaxerxes*, the Son of *Darius*, who with thine own Forces has aſſaulted thy Walls, has forc'd thy Town, has pulled thy Daughter out of thy Arms, and has reduc'd thee thy ſelf, once more to be beholding to him for a Kingdom, and for a Life which he hath ſo often preſerved; but ſpare *Berenice* who is not guilty of *Arſaces* his Crimes. Revenge not foreign Wrongs upon thine own Blood, and ſince it has no Affinity with that of *Darius*, wreak upon that of *Darius* alone, whatſoever of greateſt Cruelty thy Rage can think. *Arſaces* has deſerv'd Death, but *Berenice* has not deſerv'd the Puniſhment thou inflict'ſt upon her; or if ſhe had deſerv'd it, 'tis only for having forſaken me, and for having expoſed her ſelf a new to the Mercy of her Enemies. Let alone the innocent *Berenice* then, and overwhelm the Criminal *Arſaces*; thou could'ſt not deſire more Facility for this Revenge, to which thou haſt run headlong by ſo many baſe, and ſhameful Ways; and beſides the Conſervation of thy Life, and Kingdom, thou haſt yet this laſt Obligation to me, that I my ſelf have deliver'd thee a Perſon whoſe Ruin thou ſo often haſt in vain attempted, and that I have ſav'd thee the Labour of ſeeking out new Murderers, to give Death to the greateſt of thine Enemies. While I ſpoke on this manner, the whole Aſſembly liſten'd to my Words, and with a marvellous Attention expected what would be the Iſſue of that Adventure. I will not tell you what *Berenice*'s Thoughts were at this laſt Expreſſion of my Love, nor what were thoſe of *Arſacomes*, ſince they were the the King's that firſt manifeſted themſelves. If he had been aſtoniſhed at my Sight, and at the beginning of my Diſcourſe, he was no leſs at the Knowledge of my ſtrange Reſolution, and he ſaw ſo little likelihood to hope, that commanding a potent Army, wherewith I was in a manner able to diſpoſe of his

his Deſtiny, I ſhould abandon all the Means I had to fruſtrate what he had determin'd, to come and expoſe my ſelf alone to his Mercy, that he could not ſuffer his Belief to credit what he ſaw. Wherefore he remain'd a great while in doubt of the Truth, but when he beheld me alone, without Caſk, without Sword, in the mid'ſt of a throng of his own Followers, and that he heard no Noiſe at all in the Streets, that could make him fear the coming of his Enemies, he began at laſt to believe, that my Love had brought me to that Reſolution, and that my Deſpair making me deſpiſe my Life, had made me alſo neglect the Means I had to preſerve it. This Aſſurance ſettled it ſelf in his Mind with Joy, and his Fear was no ſooner lull'd aſleep, but his Anger was awaken'd again. The ſight of his Enemy, and the Fierceneſs of his Words, kindled his Wrath afreſh with all its Violence, and he had ſcarce had time to recover his firſt Apprehenſions, when he open'd his Mouth to give it vent. Yet wicked Wretch, (cried he) thou ſhalt die, and this falſe Generoſity which thy Deſpair hath inſpir'd into thee, ſhall not ſave thee from my lawful Fury. Yes, I will die, (replied I) and if I would not have died, I would have come with a Power that might have defended me from thine. Boaſt not of an Advantage, which thou holdeſt from no Body but my ſelf, nor threaten me with a Death, wherein thou only ſerv'ſt for the Miniſter of my Deſpair.

I rather ſerve the Juſtice of the Gods, (anſwered *Matheus*) and all Kings who are intereſted in my Quarrel; but whether it be from the Anger of Heaven, or from thine own Deſpair that I have this Occaſion to Revenge me of thee, thou ſhalt not ſee me neglect it, nor for many Conſiderations, ſpare him that hath ſeduc'd my Subjects, and that led an Army of Rebels, and Traitors, againſt their Prince, into his City, into his Palaces, and even againſt his own Perſon. He had hardly ended theſe Words, making ſign to his Guard to encompaſs me, and to hinder my getting out of the Temple, when the Princeſs who till then had heard us without Interruption, mov'd from the Place where ſhe ſtood, and coming toward me with a Countenance animated with an extraordinary

dinary Confidence; You ſhall not die alone *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) and ſince you have been ſo little fearful to afflict me, in laviſhing a Life that was dearer to me than my own, you alſo ſhall have the Grief to ſee me run to a Death, which I owe to nothing but your Deſpair. You ought to have expected the Event of what I had reſolved to do for you, if I had been ſo baſe as to have given my ſelf to *Arſacomes*, that Baſeneſs would have been enough to have cured you, and if I had preferred Death before him, you might have followed me to the Grave, without the Blame of having thrown me into it. By theſe Words, and by my Princeſs's Action ſo different from her Humour, and from her uſual Moderation, I knew the Greatneſs of her Affection, better than ever I had done before, and forgetting all that I had taken ill from her, I gave my ſelf up again totally to my Love. Ah! my deareſt Princeſs, (ſaid I) what a Thought is this of yours, and with what a Reproach do you aggravate my Sorrows! I defended my Life as long as I believ'd you car'd for it, and you know that after the Loſſes I have ſuffered, nothing could have made me think of its Preſervation but the Opinion I had that it was not indifferent to you. That was it that made me oppoſe the King your Father's Arms, which after the Ruin of my Family I ſhould have welcom'd into my Breaſt; that was it that ſet me at the Head of an Army; and in ſhort, that was it that has made me do many Actions, which could not have been expected but from a Perſon that had been much in love with his Life. Yes, Madam, I did love it, while I flatter'd my ſelf with a Conceit that it was dear to you; but when I ſaw you help towards its Deſtruction, by forſaking me to put your ſelf again into thoſe Hands from which I had delivered you; I believed I ought to follow your Inclinations, and not leave a Thing in the World, that might be an Obſtacle to your Repoſe. After my Death, you may live in a greater Tranquility than you have done hitherto; and the Gods to whom your Virtue, to which your Perſon is dear, having afflicted you till now, only to puniſh me by the part I bore in all your Sufferings, will ceaſe to torment you any longer, when

you

you no more can be infected by the contagious Afflictions of miſerable *Arſaces*.

The Princeſs had not Patience to let me go on with this Diſcourſe, but haſtily interrupting me; Ceaſe to offend me (ſaid ſhe) with your Reproaches, and do not accuſe me of a Change, whereof all the Conſideration in the World ſhall never make me capable; 'Tis true, I would needs come away from you, to put my ſelf again into my Father's Hands, 'tis an Action which I yet would do, and which I cannot repent of, but 'tis not an Action that ſhould make you believe you are leſs dear to me, than you have been formerly. If I could have ſtaid with you with Honour, I would not have left you, neither for *Arſacomes*, nor for a thouſand Empires; and in returning to my Father, to whom the Gods and Nature hath ſubmitted me, I did not uſe a leſs Violence upon my ſelf than that you ſuffer'd, nor expoſe my ſelf to lighter Diſcontents than yours; if I had ceaſed to love you Yeſterday, I would not have begun again to Day; and if I could have diſpoſed my ſelf to live without you, I would not now diſpoſe my ſelf to die with you. You ſhall not die, dear Princeſs, (replied I violently) you ſhall not die, nor can you continue in that Thought, without making my Death terrible to me; you ſhall live for a better Fortune than that you yet have met with; and if my Death cauſe any Sorrow in you, as your Goodneſs makes me hope it will, Time, the Friendſhip of Prince *Oroondates*, whom the Gods will bring home to you again, and my ardent Requeſt, at this laſt Minute of my Life, will cure you of it. I will not pray you to live for *Arſacomes*, you deſerve a happier Fortune, and you have too gallant a Spirit to ſtoop to a Perſon unworthy of you; moreover I believe my Death will change the King's Intentions in favour of you, for purpoſing to give you to *Arſacomes*, not ſo much with a deſign to make him happy, as to make *Arſaces* miſerable; he, by *Arſaces*'s Death, will loſe thoſe cruel Reſolutions, which he had taken againſt you, only out of his Enmity to me; he loves you, tho' he has hated me, and the end of his Hatred toward me, will waken his Affection to you again. I would conjure thee to it, King of *Scythia*, (continued I, turn-

ir

ing towards him) if I believ'd the lateſt Word of a Prince who abandon'd all his Intereſts to ſerve thee, who ſav'd thy Life with the Peril of his own; who fought for thy Dominions, inſtead of defending thoſe he was born to; and who, to compleat his Services, gluts thee even at the Price of his very Life, in the Greedineſs of thy laſt Deſires, were able to work any thing upon thee. I upbraid thee not with what I have done for thee, and thine, tho' it be conſiderable enough to deſerve ſome Place in thy Remembrance: All I could poſſibly do, was due to the Father of *Berenice*, and *Oroondates*; and the Gods are my Witneſſes, that all thy Ingratitudes have never been able to make me repent it, but by that Memory I may well demand the Repoſe of *Berenice* of thee. I was yet in a Poſture to defend her againſt *Arſacomes*, if I would longer have defended her againſt her Father, and ſhe her ſelf was in a Condition to diſpoſe of her own Affections, if ſhe had not preferred her Reſpect and her Obedience to thee, before her Quiet, nay before her Life it ſelf. If thou art born of Royal, or if thou art born of Noble Blood, all the incitements of Generoſity ſue to thee in her Favour, and tell thee that ſo pure a Virtue, and ſo perfect a Reſignation, ought to drive all the Cruelty out of thy Mind, that harbours in it againſt this lovely Princeſs. While I ſpoke theſe Words, I fixt my Eyes upon *Matheus*'s Face, where, by an unlook'd for Effect, I obſerv'd a very ſtrange Alteration. You have wondred, without doubt, how in the Condition I then was, we had the Liberty of ſo long a Converſation, without being interrupted by the King's Anger, who in Probability ſhould not have ſuffer'd it with Patience; but you will wonder a great deal more, when I ſhall tell you, that after having given a peaceable Audience to the Princeſs's Words, and likewiſe unto mine, he found Things in them that were powerful enough to ſtop the Impetuouſneſs of his Diſpleaſure. As ſoon as Reaſon began to find ſome Admittance into his Thoughts, it made him look upon all his Actions, with a different Eye from what he had done before. He admir'd the Contempt I ſhow'd of Death, in ſeeing me expoſe my ſelf to it ſo voluntarily, when I had ſo great a Strength to have ſecured me from it.

it. He consider'd my last Actions, wherein he found a Respect, from which he thought I might lawfully enough have been exempted; he remembered that having made my self Master of his City by the Right of Arms, I had left it free to him, and that having desired no other Advantage by that happy Success, but the Liberty of my Princess, I had sent her back to him again the same Day; and if in what I said he found something that was sufficient to offend him, he attributed it to a Greatness of Courage which he could not disapprove. From this Consideration, he returned to that of my former Actions, and recalling to mind all I had done for him, he met with nothing that did not move his Heart to Love and Tenderness.

He for a while resisted these new Motions; but in the End, he was neither of Brass nor Marble as obdurate as he was; and tho' the Interest of *Stratonice*, and *Arsacomes*, who observed his Irresolution with mortal Apprehensions, with-held him for a few Moments, yet was he fain at last to yield to Compassion, and to Remmembrances which he was not able to resist. The first Token he shew'd of it was a Sigh follow'd by some Tears which all the Assembly saw run down his Cheeks, but presently after he turned on the other side, either to hide his Weakness, or to call back his former Resolutions, but there was no more room for them in his Heart, and all his Thoughts were so changed already, that he no longer had Power, no nor so much as an Intention to defend himself. O Gods! cried he, lifting up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, and stopping at those Words, he fix'd his Eyes upon the Ground, and kept Silence yet for some few Moments; at last he rose up from the Chair where he sate, and looking upon me with a Countenance absolutely mollified, or rather full of Confusion; *Arsaces*, (said he) generous *Arsaces*, you are my Conqueror; but, O Gods! how ought I to hope you will use your Victory? I was so surprized at this strange Alteration, that I was not able to reply, and within a little after, coming toward me with open Arms: Might I hope, (continued he) that after such high Provocations, and such Crimes as deserve no Pardon, *Arsaces* can have the Goodness to

rity. You are my Subject *Arſacomes*, and I have Power to do otherwiſe with you, than with the Son of *Darius*; I command you therefore to obey me without murmuring, and I entreat Prince *Artaxerxes* to leave me the diſpoſing of my Daughter, without offering to diſpute her againſt you; ſince he alone is able to croſs the Power I have over the *Scythians*, I ſhall know well enough how to maintain the Promiſe I make him againſt all others. While the King was ſpeaking on this manner, all the People in whoſe Memory the Affection of *Arſaces* was not yet extinguiſhed, who in this Reconciliation ſaw an End of the War, and of thoſe Miſeries they had fear'd, and who in my laſt Actions had found how I had ſpar'd them, after a clapping of Hands, which made the Temple ring, cried out aloud, that it was to *Arſaces* their Deliverer, and their Protector, that their Princeſs ought to be given; and this Action added to the King's Words, ſtirr'd up ſo great a Rage, and ſo much Confuſion in *Stratonice*, and *Arſacomes*, that after a threatning Murmur, they went out of the Temple in a very different manner from their coming in.

I will not tell you, ſince that Recital would be too long, with what Expreſſions the King confirm'd the Hope which he had given me, what Thanks I returned him, nor what were the Words and Actions of *Berenice*; all theſe Things paſſed in tranſports of Joy; but in the height of all the King's Endearments, I caſt my ſelf once more at his Feet; and after he had done his Endeavour to raiſe me up again, I proteſted to him, that I never would ceaſe to embrace his Knees, till he had granted me his Pardon for *Theodates*, and for all the Officers and Soldiers of our Army. The King was incenſed againſt them with a great deal of ſhew of Reaſon, but being he with Repentance acknowledged his unworthy Uſage of me, he thought that to make Reparation he ought to refuſe me nothing; and after having granted me the Pardon I requeſted for them, he would needs have Prince *Carthaſis* his Brother to go preſently and carry them the News. I was very forward to accompany him in that Action, and getting on Horſeback with him, we were followed by a great Number of the Inhabitants, who went

went thronging with us to the Camp. As the Grief of *Theodates*, and of my other Friends, had been great at the Reading of of my Letter, their Aſtoniſhment was not leſs when they ſaw me come in ſuch an unexpected manner; they were already getting on Horſeback to ſeek me every where, but when they ſaw their Fears ſo happily ended, they fell from one Extremity to another, and by the Exceſs of their Contentment teſtified that of their Friendſhip toward me. Prince *Carthaſis* having declar'd the King's Pardon to them, and told them in a few Words the Truth of that Adventure, after they had admired my Reſolution, and the ſtrange Event of it, they left the Camp, and upon the Prince's Word went along with us into the Town, where they caſt themſelves at the King's Feet. The King receiv'd them very handſomly, and inſtead of condemning *Theodates*, having praiſed his Affection to me, he promiſed him he would conſerve no Remembrance of it, but to eſteem him the more, and to the reſt confirm'd the Pardon he had granted them. I was ſettled again in the Palace in my former Lodgings, and in the Court: I will not ſay in my former Condition, but in another much more glorious, and much more conſiderable. To the Remembrance of *Arſaces*'s Services was added that of *Artaxerxes*'s Birth, and to both, the Conſideration of the Credit I had among the Soldiery, and of what I could do as a Friend, and as an Enemy. The Queen being preſſed with Diſcontent, came not to the King, and *Arſacomes* keeping retir'd in his Lodging, vented his in Threatnings, which were told the King; but he who was unwilling to ruin one whom he had lov'd ſo well, and to whom he had given ſuch lofty Hopes, ſent for him two Days after, and ſpoke to him in theſe Terms: Altho' I am not obliged, *Arſacomes*, to juſtify my Actions toward you, yet am I willing to let you ſee that it is not out of Inconſtancy I take *Berenice* from you; ſhe is but too juſtly due unto *Arſaces*, and I have but too obſtinately reſiſted to do what I ought to have done ſooner; I in your Favour have done Things that will for ever diſhonour my Memory; you ſhould bluſh at them for me, if you loved my Reputation, and believe as I do, that the greateſt Reparations I can make

to Prince *Artaxerxes*, are not able to blot out the Remembrance of my Cruelties. Moreover in yielding *Berenice* to him, you yield her but to the Son of *Darius*, the greateſt of all the Monarchs in the World; and but to him, who beſides the general Obligations you are particularly oblig'd to for your Life. If the Gods had given me another Daughter, I proteſt I would not diſdain you for my Son-in-Law, altho' you are my Subject; and if you can be ſatisfied with my good Will, I'll keep you always near me in the ſame Condition you have been, I'll recompence the Loſs of your Hopes with new Preferments, and with new Dignities; and except *Berenice*, there ſhall be nothing in my Kingdom you may not pretend to. And except *Berenice*, (interrupted audacious *Arſacomes*) there is nothing in your Kingdom which I do not diſdain; if a King fails of his Promiſe to me, I ſhall neither fail of Courage, nor of Friends to diſpute it to the laſt Moment of my Life. Thou oughteſt then (replied the King, exaſperated by that Anſwer) to have diſputed it when thou wert at the Head of an Army, where *Arſaces* all alone took from thee all the Rights thou hadſt to it, and had alſo taken away thy Life with them, if he had not been too generous to make his Glory give Place to his Intereſts. Thou oughteſt to have defended her here within our Walls, whence *Arſaces* carried her even before thy Face, thou not attempting any Thing to hinder him; and tho' my Promiſe had engag'd me toward thee, thou knoweſt I loſt the diſpoſing of *Berenice*, from the Time ſhe ceas'd to be within my Power; thou ſhouldeſt have fetcht her again out of the Hands of thy Rival, at the hazard of thy Life, if thou wouldeſt have been worthy of her, and not have ſtaid till he reſtored her into thine Arms himſelf; if thou hadſt had the leaſt Senſe of Honour left in thee, thou would'ſt not ſo ſhamefully have been beholden to thine Enemy for her; and tho' I were not at all oblig'd to *Arſaces*, I ſhould not be juſt if I gave *Berenice* to thee after thou hadſt ſo poorly diſputed her.

Arſacomes, confounded and ſtung with theſe Reproaches, ſtood a great while before he could find an Anſwer; but in the End, he began to reply, and loſing all

all the Reſpect he had yet remaining, flew out into ſuch irreverent Speeches, that the King being extremely incens'd, after he had proteſted that nothing but the Queen's Conſideration hindred him from chaſtiſing his Inſolency, commanded him to get out of his Preſence, and never to appear before him any more. *Arſacomes* withdrew in a deſperate Rage, and with ſuch Threats as would have been puniſhed with Death in any other Body but the Queen's Brother.

Prince *Oroondates*, who had hearkned to *Arſaces*'s laſt Adventures, with a Countenance that ſufficiently expreſs'd how much he was concern'd in them, broke Silence then, and with an Action like that of a Perſon who coming out of a long and dangerous Perplexity begins to recover a little Breath; Ah! Brother, (ſaid he) how you have made me ſuffer, and how you have eas'd me now, by letting me know my Father's Repentance, ſince nothing could have comforted me, if he had not in ſome degree repair'd his Ingratitude. But how is it poſſible, that the Fame of theſe Wonders you have told us, ſhould never have come to our Ears before, and that I have been ignorant of ſuch memorable Events, and wherein I had ſo great an Intereſt? The diſtance of Places, (replied *Arſaces*) and the little Time ſince they came to paſs, have, without doubt, kept them from their Knowledge. By what I can judge, they happen'd during your Sickneſs at *Suſa*, and ſince that Time few Perſons can have travell'd into *Scythia*, and few *Scythians* are come into theſe Countries. In the interim (continued *Arſaces*) I was in the height of my Felicities; the King, by all manner of Kindneſſes, endeavoured to make me loſe the Remembrance of his harſher Uſage; I ſaw my Princeſs with all the Freedom I could deſire; I could not doubt of her Affection, after the important Proofs I had receiv'd of it; and if we had not waited for the News of Prince *Oroondates*, whoſe Preſence was neceſſary to compleat my Fortune, I according to the Wiſhes of the whole Court, had obtain'd the King's Conſent for the entire Poſſeſſion of my Princeſs. Yes, Brother, 'twas nothing but your Abſence alone that retarded our Marriage, and how paſſionate, and how impatient ſoever I was, my Love to

you perſuaded me eaſily to expect your Return, and to approve, with a great deal of Satisfaction, that Reſpect of *Berenice's*, and that Teſtimony of the King's Conſideration of you. When I was happy in what concerned my Love, the Memory of my Honour waken'd in me again, and I judg'd that all I had done, could not ſerve my Reputation, while I ſuffer'd *Alexander* to Reign peaceably over thoſe Countries which he had uſurped from us by the Death of the King my Father, and by the Loſs of ſome of my Friends. This Remembrance brought back part of that Sadneſs into my Heart, which my preſent Happineſs ſeem'd to have baniſh'd thence, and though I found ſome Conſolation in the Hope of doing ſomething toward the Recovery of my Glory, and of my Father's Dominions, the neceſſity of parting with *Berenice* began to afflict me very ſenſibly; yet did I paſs over all that my Love repreſented contrary to my Glory, and having caſt my ſelf at the King's Feet, Sir, (ſaid I) after the Honour your Majeſty has done me to accept me for your Son, you ſhould not ſuffer me to live unworthy of that Quality; and ſince the Recovery of thoſe Dominions I have loſt is linkt to that of my Reputation, you are too much concern'd in both, to refuſe me the Aſſiſtance I deſire of you. *Alexander* has triumph'd over my Father's Empire and his Life, and Reigns quietly over thoſe Territories which heretofore were his. Without your help, Sir, I can neither revenge the Death of my Freinds, nor riſe to the Throne of my Predeceſſors; and if your Majeſty refuſe it me, the Princeſs your Daughter muſt be the Wife of a private Man, and of a Man diſpoſſeſſed of his Inheritance; be pleaſed to grant me, Sir, for the higheſt Effect of Generoſity, ſome part of thoſe valiant *Scythians* who have thought me worthy of their Friendſhip. By their Courage I hope to repair my Shame, and to re-conquer my Dominions. That Deſtroyer of our Houſe is an Enemy to all Kings in general, he already has invaded your Frontiers, and will, without doubt come into the Bowels of your Kingdom, if we carry not the War to him, into thoſe Countries whereof he is yet but ill aſſured; I ſaid ſome other Things to the King, which he heard with Patience, and anſwer'd with a great deal

deal of Kindneſs. Doubt not Son, (ſaid he) but that your Intereſts ſhall henceforth be mine own, not but that I will contribute with my utmoſt Powers, and even with mine own Perſon, to the Recovery of your Empire, not to make *Berenice's* Condition more advantageous by the Luſtre of a Crown; I eſteem your Perſon above all Greatneſſes, and I know well enough you wear a Sword that can both maintain and conquer Empires; but becauſe I judge as you do, that your Glory is intereſted in your Deſign, I'll arm the whole Power of *Scythia* for you, and will ſet you at the Head of a Hundred Thouſand Men, who having ſuch a Leader, will think nothing difficult, but hew you out a Way to the Regaining of the Throne you have loſt; yet I deſire we may ſtay till we either ſee, or hear ſome News of *Oroondates*: I mean that he ſhall march along with you, that Friend whom you ſo highly have oblig'd, and whoſe Company is not to be deſpiſed; and while we expect him, Order ſhall be given, to make Levies for the ſetting of this Army on Foot. Thoſe I was raiſing againſt you, and the Troops you now command, ſhall make a Part of them, and the reſt ſhall be ready againſt my Son's Return, or within the Time we will limit for that Expectation. I was ſo extremely ſatisfied at the King's Anſwer, that I could not diſſemble my Contentment, and to render it abſolutely compleat, the King proteſted he would not ſuffer me to go from *Iſſedon*, before I had married *Berenice*. That fair Princeſs was afflicted at my Reſolution; but being Miſtreſs of a great deal of Reaſon, ſhe yielded to the Neceſſity of my Affairs, and to a Thing for which ſhe had ever prepared. But alas! How little Time had we to entertain one another, and how ſhort my Joys were, tho' my Griefs had been of long Continuance.

I was in Bed, when ſome Hours before Day, I heard a confuſed Noiſe about the Palace, and an infinite Number of Cries, which were enough to waken the ſoundeſt Sleepers. I leapt into the Floor, and running to a Window, ſaw a great many Torches, and heard the Voice of many Perſons, who cry'd that the Princeſs was carried away. At this News, I was very near falling

into a Swoon, but I ſtrove to keep all my Powers in the Need I had of them for ſuch an Occaſion; and preſently after *Criton* came into my Chamber; Sir, (ſaid he) the Princeſs is carried away. The Grief he felt for my Misfortune would not ſuffer him to ſay more; and I was ſo ſtricken, that I had not the Power to get out one Word: I threw on a few Cloaths, and ran haſtily to *Berenice*'s Lodgings, where I found *Theomiris* with *Cyllenia*, and other Maids, who by their Cries redoubled the Rage wherewith I was tranſported, and told me with interrupted Words, how the Princeſs had been pull'd by Force out of her Chamber, by ſeven or eight arm'd Men, and that thoſe Raviſhers had carried her away by the back Stairs into the Garden, and ſo out at a Hole they had broken through the Wall. I ran inſtantly to thoſe Stairs, where I found two Men dead, who were known to be Grooms of her Chamber; and going down, I ſaw the Hole in the Garden-Wall, through which my cruel Enemies came in, and had got out again. Not knowing what Way, nor what Advice to take, I went up again to the King's Quarters, where I found him buried in an extraordinary Sorrow; I had but few Words with him, and thoſe ſo confuſedly put together, that it was eaſy by them to know the Diſorder of my Heart: While he was ſending out Meſſengers every Way, I put on my Arms in his Preſence, and taking a haſty Leave of him, got on Horſeback with a great many Courtiers, who ran thronging to accompany me. We rode out of the City at the neareſt Gate; and not being able to judge by any Conjecture what Way thoſe Raviſhers had taken, we wandred about all the reſt of the Night, without knowing whither we went, and at Break of Day found our ſelves at a little Town, ſome Two or Three Hundred Furlongs from *Iſſedon*: There we could hear no News in the World; and having taken another Way, and after that a great many ſeveral ones, we could meet with no Body that could tell us any thing of what we ſought. I paſs'd that Night in a Village Four Hundred Furlongs from *Iſſedon*, and the next Morning we began our Search again with the ſame Diligence, and with the ſame Succeſs. We ſpent Three Days more in it, not leaving any Town,

Town, Borough, Village, Houſe, or Wood within a Thouſand Furlongs of the City, where we had not been to ſeek her; at the End of which, I returned to the King, to ſee if thoſe he had ſent out other Ways had had any better Fortune; but I found their Pains and Care had been to as little Purpoſe as ours. We doubted not but that it was *Arſacomes* who had ſtol'n away the Princeſs; he had left the Court a Week before, and ſince that Time there had been no News of him. The King, poſſeſt with that Belief as well as I, made ſharp Complaints unto the Queen; and after having proteſted to her, that he would uſe his utmoſt Power to the Ruin and Deſtruction of her Brother, he promiſed her likewiſe, that if by her Perſuaſions he would return to his Obedience, and reſtore the Princeſs, he would grant him Pardon for her ſake: But the Queen, whether it were that ſhe was wilfully bent to favour her Brother's Action, or that indeed ſhe was ignorant of it, caſt her ſelf at the King's Feet, and proteſted her Innocence with ſo many Tears, that he ceas'd to preſs her any further; yet he thought good I ſhould take Two Thouſand Horſe, and go at the Head of them, to ſearch *Arſacomes*'s Houſes, and gave Order for a greater Strength to follow me, in caſe we ſhould find him in a Poſture of Reſiſtance. I ſet forward in this Equipage, and to ſhorten my Diſcourſe, went to all thoſe Places whither it was thought *Arſacomes* could retire; but there was no News to be heard either of *Berenice* or him, and we were inform'd with an unqueſtionable Certainty, that he had not been ſeen in thoſe Parts of many Years. How great ſoever the Rage that tranſported me was, I could not reſolve to pour it forth upon thoſe that were under his Obedience, or ruin a People that was innocent of their Prince's Crime. Then it was that I ſaw my ſelf abandoned to my Deſpair, and that I was often upon the Point of ſeeking an End of my Misfortunes in the End of my Life. I was going to fix on that Reſolution, when happening to be near the Gate of a Temple dedicated to *Juno*, famous for Oracles, which they came to conſult from all Parts of *Europe*, I determined firſt to try if I could find any Pity from the Gods. They expreſs'd themſelves to

me clearly enough; and though I do not remember the Words of the Oracle, I have not forgot, that the Goddess, by the Mouth of her Priest, commanded me to seek out of *Scythia* for that which I had lost, and to visit the Walls of *Semiramis*, where I should find an End of all my Pains. I was the more willing to obey the Pleasure of the Gods, because my Hopes were lost all other Ways; and whether it were that they promis'd me the Recovery of *Berenice*, or that it was by the End of my Days they made me hope for that of my Miseries, I resolved to give my self up wholly to their Will.

My Design of marching into my Father's Territories with the Forces the King of *Scythia* had promis'd me, to fight with *Alexander* for the Empire, and the Glory he had taken from me vanish'd quite out of my Mind, and I was then call'd by a more powerful Motive to attempt the Recovery of *Berenice*, than that of my lost Dominions; 'twas also at that Time I heard that *Alexander* had married the Princess *Statira* my Sister, that he had given *Parisatis* to his Favourite *Hephestian*, and that he carried himself toward the Remnants of *Darius*'s Blood, with the same Affection as to his own. This News afflicted me very much, for many Considerations; it troubled me to know it was my Sister's Husband, against whom I was to prepare my self for War, as soon as I should be in a Condition to entertain such Thoughts; but I judg'd with a far more sensible Grief, that my dear Brother's Hopes were utterly extinguish'd, and that if he had still preserv'd his Affections to *Statira*, he in her Marriage could find no less Matter of Affliction than what I felt for the Loss of *Berenice*. I should longer have reasoned with my self upon that sad Occasion, if I had not been too much taken up with my own Misfortunes; but being resolv'd upon the Voyage the Gods had ordain'd me, I meant to make it without any Train that could make me be observ'd in those Places where I pass'd; and to that End I took Leave of all those that were come along with me from *Issedon*, keeping no body with me but *Criton*, and two other necessary Servants. I even refus'd the Company of my dear *Theodates*. But it was not without an extreme Violence, that I persuaded

ſuaded him to leave me; and I ſhould never have won him to it, if I had not made him ſee that his Stay in *Scythia* was abſolutely neceſſary for me, both to make the greater Care be taken in the Search of *Berenice*, and to keep me right in the King's Opinion, which might perhaps be alter'd during my Abſence, by *Stratonice*'s Sollicitations, whereby he might in Time be drawn to approve of her Brother's Action. *Theodates* lent an Ear at laſt to this Conſideration, which in Effect was ſtrong enough to ſtay him; but tho' he could not yield to that Separation without Tears, and Lamentations, which I cannot expreſs, in the End we parted, after he had promis'd to make my Excuſes to the King, that I came not to take my Leave of him, and to tell him that ſince he had done me the Honour to give me *Berenice*, I would either bring her home to him again, or die in queſt of her.

From the Place where I left *Theodates*, I travell'd directly toward Mount *Imaus* which divides the Two *Scythia*'s, and having croſs'd through the *Aſiattique*, and the Country of the *Maſſagetes*, I came into *Bactria*, and entred upon the Territories that had been the King my Father's. I paſs'd unknown through all thoſe Places, where I found many Marks of the Diſaſters of our Family; and tho' my Love was ſufficient to poſſeſs me totally, yet could I not without a great deal of Trouble, ſee thoſe People that had been our Subjects, yield Obedience peaceably to new Maſters. Theſe Objects preſenting themſelves daily to my Eyes, often drew Sighs from me, which ſeconded thoſe my Paſſions forc'd more violently from the Bottom of my Heart. In ſhort, I continued all that Journey in ſo deep a Sadneſs, that if the Conſolations I receiv'd from *Criton* (whoſe Fidelity is beyond all Recompence) had not in ſome Degree allay'd my Sorrow, I think I ſhould have ſunk under the Burthen of it, before I could have reach'd the Country the Oracle had appointed me. In the End I arriv'd there, without any Encounter worthy to be related; and at my Arrival I heard of the Death of *Alexander*, who had paid the Debt of Nature a few Days before. I know not how to tell you the ſeveral Effects this News wrought in me,

I was

I was glad for my dear Brother's ſake, who thereby recover'd the Hopes he had loſt in *Statira*'s Marriage; but I was ſorry in mine own particular, being thereby deprived of thoſe I had conceiv'd, of regaining my Honour from him that had taken it from me. And tho' it ſeem'd to facilitate the Recovery of my Empire, it gave *Alexander* the Advantage of having kept it all his Life, and of having been the Conqueror and the Maſter till his Death. I then thought upon the Condition of my Siſters, and was joy'd with a Hope of coming to the Place where they were, of ſeeing them, and perhaps of doing them ſome Service in that Eſtate, to which ſo great Revolution of their Fortune might have reduced them. Altho' the Alteration of my Face in ſo long an Abſence, and the general Opinion of my being dead, might have put me out of all Fear of being eaſily diſcover'd, I would not hazard my Life however, knowing that in *Babylon* I ſhould find Perſons from whom Time had not taken away all Remembrance of my Features; and therefore, as ſoon as I was come into this Country, I retired to the Houſe of a good honeſt Man, ſome Three or Four Hundred Furlongs from this Place, whom I by Gifts in preſent, and by the Hopes of more, engaged at firſt to as much Affection and Secrecy as I could deſire.

The next Morning, knowing I was near the Temple of *Apollo*, which I had formerly viſited, I had a Deſire to conſult the Pleaſure of that God, and implore his Aſſiſtance. There it was I met with Prince *Lyſimachus*, and that by his graceful Faſhion, and his charming Converſation, I began to give him that Eſteem and that Affection, which the Recital of his gallant Actions hath ſince compleated. You doubtleſs have heard from him the Diſcourſe we had together, and the Words of the Oracle that were delivered to us; I thought them ſo obſcure that I could not comprehend any thing of their Meaning, and only found by the laſt of them, that the Gods would have me wait their Pleaſure upon the Banks of *Euphrates*. That Conformity with my former Oracle, did a little augment thoſe faint Hopes I had conceived, and made me, in Effect, reſolve to expect my Deſtiny a while upon the Banks of that River. The Houſe I had taken for my Retreat,

Retreat, was seated near it, well enough built, and furnished to make some Stay there without Inconvenïency, and far enough from the High-ways, not to be frequented with any Company. The Master of it profered with a great deal of Freedom to do me all the Service that lay in his Power; and finding him to be a discreet, understanding Man, I resolved to make Use of him, to try if I could learn any News of *Berenice*. For this Purpose, having given him Directions and Addresses to inform himself of what I desired, I sent him to the City; but O Gods! How sorrowful was the News he brought me home, since by him I heard the Rumour that was spread in *Babylon*, of the Death of the Princesses my Sisters! This was so heavy an Addition to my Grief, that it was like to have press'd me down into my Grave; and though I strove to dissemble it as well as I was able, I could not possibly hinder my Landlord from perceiving that I was infinitely troubled at that News. I made the dolefullest Lamentations in the World, when I was at Liberty to utter them; and accused my self of Meanness of Spirit, for having given my whole Life up to my Love, instead of bestowing part of it on the Relief I ow'd to those poor Princesses. I vented a Thousand Threats, and made a Thousand Designs against their Murtherers, and was yet in the Violence of these Thoughts, having hardly dried up my first Tears when I met the valiant *Lysimachus* a second Time by the Riverside. He without doubt has told you the Discourse that passed between us, and how (just as I was going to ask his Name, after I had told him that mine was *Arsaces*) it was interrupted by a Cavalier, who passing near us, enquir'd the Way to *Babylon*. It is very true, (said *Lysimachus* then to *Arsaces*) the coming of that Stranger depriv'd me of your Company, after it had caused in me an Esteem, or rather an Admiration of you, which all I could say was not able to represent to Prince *Oroondates*, when I made him the Relation of that Encounter. That Cavalier (continued *Arsaces*) who passed so suddenly by us, was *Arsacomes*. You may easily judge, by what I have told you, that his Image was always present enough to my Remembrance, not to need

any

any long Time to know him, and that his Sight produced in me at the very firſt, all thoſe Effects it was probable it ſhould. The Knowledge thereof oblig'd *Lyſimachus* to pardon me the Rudeneſs of my haſty Departure, which would not ſuffer me to pay all the Civilities that were due to him. I ran ſo ſwiftly after *Arſacomes*, that tho' he was already a great Way off, I began to ſee him again when we were out of the Wood; that ſecond Sight did ſo animate me, that my Impatience doubled my Horſe's Speed, and at laſt I got near enough to my Enemy to make him hear my Voice; Stay, (cried I) ſtay *Arſacomes*: Theſe Words which he heard, after I had often repeated them, cauſed him in the End to take up a little, and looking back to ſee who it was that called him by his Name, he beheld me with my Sword drawn, coming at him as hard as ever I could drive. My Action, and my threatning Cries, made him know I was his Enemy, wherefore, not wanting Courage, he turn'd about, and expected me in the Poſture of a Man reſolv'd to defend himſelf. He had a Javelin in his Right Hand, which he lifted up into the Air, and when I was within twenty Paces of him, he raiſed himſelf upon his Stirrups, and darted it at me with his utmoſt Force. The Blow miſs'd me, but ſtruck my Horſe ſo violently in the Head, that he fell ſtark dead between my Legs. I diſengag'd my ſelf preſently from my Stirrups, and leaving my Horſe upon the Ground, cover'd my ſelf with my Shield, to end the Combate on Foot, but *Arſacomes* gave me not the Leiſure; and whether it were that he diſdain'd to fight with me upon Advantage, or that he was call'd other where by preſſing Occaſions, as ſoon as he ſaw me fall, he turned about again, and gallop'd on his Way at the ſame Rate as he had done before. I remain'd in a Vexation hard to be imagined; and no longer having any Means to purſue my Enemy, who rode away from me at Liberty, I was ready to have vented all my Deſpair upon my ſelf: Yet did I moderate my Rage by a Reflection I made upon this Encounter; for I believed with Likelihood that I had Cauſe to hope in the Promiſe of the Gods, and that *Berenice* was not far from thoſe Parts, ſince I had found

Arſa-

Arſacomes there. This Belief comforted me very much, and a while after I was confirm'd in it by *Criton*, who came up to me at laſt, his Horſe not having been ſo ſwift as mine, and his Impatience not ſo violent. He was very much troubled to hear the Accident that had befallen me, and having alighted to give me his Horſe, I would have gotten upon him to purſue my Enemy again, but I found him ſo ſpent, that I loſt all Hope of overtaking *Arſacomes*, and was conſtrain'd to think upon ſome new Reſolution. I remembred that *Arſacomes* had ask'd the Way to *Babylon*, and I was of Opinion I might light upon him in that City; but *Criton* (whoſe Prudence I had obſerv'd in all his Actions) thought it not ſafe for me to go thither at that Time, conſidering the exact Guard that was kept at the Gates, where Paſſengers were ſearch'd, and examined whence they came, and what was their Buſineſs, and where they did many Things that would put me in very great Hazard of being known. He repreſented to me, that it would be much more eaſy for him to inform himſelf in *Babylon* concerning what I deſir'd, than for me, who for fear of being diſcover'd, would be fain to keep ſtill within Doors. Therefore, by his Advice, in which I found a great deal of Reaſon, I with his Horſe took my Way back to the Houſe of our Retreat, and he went on Foot to the Town, which was but a little way off, from whence he was to come home to me the next Day, with all the News he could learn, and with another Horſe, which I gave him Charge to buy.

Thus did I return to the Place where I made my Abode, and where I paſs'd the reſt of that Day in Diſcontents, mingled with ſome Glimpſe of Hope; but before it was Night, *Criton* came back with a brave Horſe he had bought; and asking him why he return'd ſooner than I expected, Sir, (anſwer'd he) before I came to the Gates of *Babylon*, I met *Arſacomes*, and which is more, Sir, I met him with the Princeſs *Berenice*. Ah, (cried I) What doſt thou tell me; haſt thou found *Berenice?* Yes, Sir, (replied he) I found her in the Arms of *Arſacomes*, who in ſpite of her Reſiſtance, and in ſpite of all her Cries, carried her away before him, galloping

back

back the ſame Way we ſaw him go. O Gods! (added I, quite tranſported) What a happy Progreſs is this toward the Accompliſhment of your Promiſes! If I had had a Horſe, (ſaid *Criton*) I ſhould certainly have follow'd them, tho' I had been ſure to loſe my Life; but being a-foot as I was, I could not poſſibly execute my Deſires, for having preſently loſt Sight of them, tho' I ran as faſt as I could, after I had complained of my ill Fortune, I thought the beſt Service I could do you, would be to go on to the Town, and buy a Horſe for you, as you had commanded me.

This Diſcourſe touch'd me, as you may imagine, but it was with Joy, which encouraged me to believe I ought to hope for all things from the Promiſe of the Gods. I hardly would allow the Night Leiſure to paſs away, and as ſoon as ever it was Break of Day, mounting the Horſe which *Criton* had brought me, and which I found to be a very good one, I began afreſh to ask after my Princeſs. Yet would I not ſtir out of this Country, for fear of diſobeying the Gods, whom I began to find exact, in the Hopes they had given me; and when I had ſpent the Days in my Search, I for the moſt part came back at Night to my uſual Retreat. There is no Town hereabouts which I have not viſited, no Village, nor Houſe whoſe Entrance was permitted me, where I have not been to look for my Princeſs, but all my Endeavours were unprofitable; and after having vainly ſought through all the Province, I thought at laſt to return to that Temple where the Gods had promiſed me the Return of my Happineſs, and where (if I might be ſuffered) I meant to reproach them for having deceiv'd me. With this Intention, being departed from a Village where I had lain, I left *Babylon* upon the Right Hand, and was hardly gotten Twenty Furlongs from it, when I ſaw a Chariot coming toward me, which Six Horſes drew at a very great Rate. The Deſign I had of ſeeking my Princeſs every where, made me go near the Side of it, where I ſaw a Woman in a Man's Arms, who by her Cries, and by all her Actions, ſhew'd ſhe was carried away by Force. My Hopes were awaken'd in me by that Sight; but as ſoon as I beheld

beheld her Face and heard her Voice, I knew it was no my Princeſs, tho' methought neither that Face nor Voic was unknown to me: Yet was I reſolv'd to ſuccour he whoſoever ſhe was, and to that End riding up to th Charioteer, I commanded him to ſtand. He made a Dif ficulty to obey me, but I brought the Point of my Jave lin to his Face, and made him know there was no Safe ty for him but in Obedience. In the mean Time, h that was in the Chariot, having obſerv'd my Action leapt nimbly out, and calling a Man that carried hi Cask, gave him Charge to hold that Lady, if ſhe ſhoul offer to get away; and making him alight from a gallan Horſe he was upon, he threw himſelf into the Saddl with a great deal of Agility; he was no ſooner in hi Stirrups, but coming toward me with a threatnin Action, Whoſoever thou art, (cry'd he) tho' thou wer *Lyſimachus* again, if thou oppoſeſt my Intention, tho ſhalt be ſure to meet with Death in thine. I am no *Lyſimachus*, (anſwer'd I) but if thine Intention be t carry away that Lady by Force, mine ſhall ever be t defend her againſt thy Violence. Thou muſt die then (reply'd he) and with thoſe Words flew upon me wit a great deal of Courage: Being he indeed was valiant the Combate laſted for ſome Time without Diſadvantag to either; but in the End, I was more fortunate than he and after having warded many Blows he made at me, gave him Two or Three Wounds, which made him fal from his Horſe unable to fight any longer. Then turn'd toward the Lady I had reſcued, and he that hel her by his Maſter's Command, no ſooner ſaw me coming but he let her go, and fled toward *Babylon*. The Woma preſently leaped out of the Chariot, and the Charioteer laſhing on his Horſes toward the City, got a great Wa from us in a little Time. Scarce had I alighted, and fe my Eyes upon that Lady's Face, but I obſerv'd all th Lineaments of Queen *Statira* my Siſter. You may wel enough conceive how great my Amazement was at ſ unexpected an Encounter; eſpecially there being a gene ral Rumour that ſhe was dead. That Belief, and he Habit which was very different from what ſhe wa wont to wear, hindred me from giving Credit to my Eyes;

Eyes; but when by my Action she saw me express my Astonishment, Never doubt of it (said she) I am *Statira*, I am the Widow of *Alexander the Great*. And I, Sister, (cried I, quite transported) am Prince *Artaxerxes* your Brother; and casting my Head-piece at her Feet, I ran to her with open Arms, and in her Amazement which made her incapable of Resistance, I gave her a Thousand Kisses, accompanied with Tears which my Eyes bestow'd on my Affection. If the Wonder that had seiz'd on me was great, you may well imagine that hers was without Comparison, and that she could not see that Brother again, whom we had lov'd so well, and whom she had thought dead eight Years before, with a moderate Astonishment. When she was got loose from my Embraces, she retired a Step or two to consider my Face, and could not believe but that it was my Ghost, ask'd me often if it were possible I should be alive, and in short did all those Actions which you did your self at our knowing one another. As soon as she was persuaded that I was *Artaxerxes* indeed, she cast away her Doubts, to give her self over to her Affection; and throwing herself into mine Arms with transported Cries, she made me see that neither Time, nor the Accidents of her Life, had at all diminished her former Love.

We continued a great while in a strict Embrace, without having Power to bring forth a distinct Word, and when once we were able, we question'd each other mutually concerning what we were ignorant of: How came you to be alive, dear Brother? How came you to be alive dear Sister? said we both together; and answering both at the same Time, we began a very confused Discourse, and so interrupted with Endearments that we could tell one another nothing. Besides, my Sister believed, that in the Place where we were, we could not without Danger engage our selves in a long Conversation; so having pray'd me to carry her from thence, and to run, if it were possible, to the Relief of *Parisatis*, who was alive and a Prisoner, she persuaded me to get on Horseback, and having set her behind me, we rode as she desir'd, along the River-side.

She

She would have queſtion'd me about my Adventures, but I having told her that the Relation of my Life would require no leſs than a whole Day, and that it were more neceſſary I ſhould learn ſomething of her preſent Condition, and of *Pariſatis*, ſhe in a few Words told me all that had happen'd to her ſince *Alexander*'s Death, the Name of *Perdiccas*, with whom I had fought, and the Eſtate in which ſhe had left *Pariſatis*; but ſhe ſaid nothing of Prince *Oroandates*, whether it were that ſhe judg'd that Remembrance faulty after the Death of *Alexander*, or that ſhe meant to ſpeak of him more at large when ſhe had better Leiſure.

She had not quite ended her Diſcourſe when we ſaw the Chariot coming, in which *Pariſatis* was; you have heard the beginning of that which paſſed, and how having made *Statira* alight that I might be fitter for the Encounter, I was aſſaulted by half a ſcore Horſemen who guarded the Chariot, and that, while I was engag'd among them, *Statira* was taken again. I heard her cry aloud when they put her into the Chariot, and would have run to help her if I could have had free Paſſage; but the Enemies I had upon me ſtopt my Way, and reduc'd me to a Neceſſity rather of defending my ſelf, than of relieving my Siſters. Three of them lay already gnawing the Earth, and the reſt began to find that tho' I was alone, they ſhould obtain no eaſy Victory. In effect, my Strength was ſo redoubled by my Anger, and by my Grief for this laſt Accident, that I quickly diſpatch'd another, and by good Fortune *Criton*, who was returning from a Place whither I had ſent him, came in juſt then to my Aſſiſtance, and he no ſooner knew me but making uſe of Policy to ſtrike a Terror in my Enemies; Courage, Sir, (cried he) you are reliev'd. I know not whether theſe Words, and the Confidence wherewith they ſaw him fall upon them, made them believe he was followed by others, or whether their Fear of two Men alone produc'd that Effect; but however it were, the Fierceneſs of my Enemies began to cool, and preſently after they turn'd their Backs, leaving me the Victory and the Field; but at the ſame time my Horſe fell dead of the Wounds he had receiv'd, and *Criton* ſeeing

ing five or six without Masters, catch'd the best of them and brought him to me: I no sooner was upon his Back, but I ran after the Trace of the Chariot, which had carried away the Princesses, and had follow'd the Bank of the River a while in that Pursuit, when I was stopp'd by a considerable Encounter, and such a one as I ought well to remember, since I still bear the Marks of it, and that it cost me more Blood than I had lost in all the rest of my Life. It was the Encounter of you and *Berenice*, Brother, I found you when I least expected it, and I also found *Berenice*, but in such a Condition as I believ'd I could never have taken her. O Gods! what were my Thoughts when I knew my Princess! but O Gods, what were my Resentments when I saw her hanging about the Neck, and kissing the Face of a Man in *Arsacomes*'s Armour! I presently believ'd that it was he, but knew not how to imagine my Princess should be guilty of so horrible a Lightness. I stood a while considering their Actions, but when I saw her continue such extraordinary Kindnesses, as could not have been pardon'd if any Body but a Brother had receiv'd them, I gave my self over to a Rage, which in appearance was but too lawfully grounded: You found the Effects of it, dear Brother, as I felt those of your matchless Valour, which by a number of very deep Wounds made me fall upon the Ground without Sense or Understanding. The Condition I was reduc'd to (interrupted Prince *Oroondates*) was no better than yours, and if I had Glory to share equally with you in the Event of our Combate, I owe it to those you had fought before, which, without doubt, could not have left so great a Vigour as I encountred in that last, in any other Man but the invincible *Arsaces*. If my former Combates (replied *Arsaces*) had caus'd any Wearinesss in me, the Jealousy, or rather the Fury wherewith I was transported, banish'd it in such a manner, and did so powerfully redouble my Forces, that I never was fresher, nor in better Condition to dispute my Pretensions against any Body else but *Oroondates*. In short, I was fallen upon the Ground, where *Criton* had me in his Arms, who that Day did me his wonted Services, and who after he had long tormented himself about me, went to seek help,

either

either for my Recovery or Burial. When he had gone a little way, he by good Chance met a Company of Horsemen who were riding towards *Babylon*, and having told them my Misfortune in a few Words, found some among them so generous as to be sensible of it, and to offer him their Assistance. They were the brave *Seleucus*, and certain Horsemen that attended him, who no sooner were come to the Place where I lay where I had died the Earth about me red with my Blood, but they were touch'd with Compassion, and making me be taken up in some of their Cloaks, they caus'd me to be carried to a poor Man's House, about ten or twelve Furlongs from the Place where we had fought. *Seleucus* was so careful as to have my Clothes pull'd off, and to see my Wounds himself; but he thought them so great, that he conceived very little hope of my Recovery; yet would he not leave me, knowing by many Signs that I was still alive, and therefore sent away a Man instantly to the City, to fetch Chirurgions with all possible Speed. Before they came, having found something in my Face that made him desirous to know who I was, he enquir'd of *Criton*, who thinking he should thereby oblige him to succour me with the more Affection, contented himself with concealing that I was *Artaxerxes* the Son of *Darius*, and told him I was that *Arsaces* who had conquer'd *Arimbas*, and gain'd some Victories in *Scythia*. *Seleucus* had heard of *Arsaces*, and of the first Things I had done in the King of *Scythia*'s Service; wherefore being indeed virtuous himself, he was perswaded by some Report of Virtue that had run to my Advantage, and no sooner knew that I was *Arsaces*, but instead of the Compassion which had mov'd him to lend me that first Assistance, he thought himself oblig'd by all manner of Considerations to neglect nothing for my Safety, and expressing a very great Trouble for the Estate he saw me in, he at the Chirurgions coming promised them excessive Recompences if they could contribute any Thing toward my Cure. When they had search'd my Wounds, they saw small hope of Life, tho' according to what they said, my Loss of Blood was Cause of their greatest Apprehensions. Yet did they do their Office very carefully, and employ'd all

the

their Skill in dreſſing my Hurts, and in fetching me to my Senſes. Part of the Night was paſs'd when I came to my ſelf again, but with very little Memory and very little Underſtanding, and the Day appear'd before I was able to diſcern any Object, or recal to mind any Thing that had paſs'd. As ſoon as I began to have a little Knowledge, I turn'd my Eyes on every ſide, and ſeeing *Criton* by me, I ask'd him where I was, he told me the Truth in a few Words; and preſently after, *Seleucus* coming to me; Courage, (ſaid he) valiant *Arſaces*, you have Perſons about you who are very affectionate to your Virtue, and who labour for your Health as paſſionately as for their own. He ſaid no more, nor ſtaid any longer with me, for fear of obliging me to anſwer him, and *Criton* having only told me that it was *Seleucus*, and entreated me not to ſpeak, went alſo out of the Chamber with him, who was recall'd to *Babylon* by very preſſing Occaſions, and who nevertheleſs would not go away, till he ſaw me in that degree of Amendment.

When they had left me alone, I was more accompanied than I had been before; you eaſily gueſs that the Remembrance of my laſt Encounter came not into my Mind, without driving me into an Extremity of Grief, and that I could not call to memory the Conditions I had found *Berenice* in, without falling into another a thouſand times worſe than that, out of which the Chirurgions endeavour'd to recover me by their Aſſiſtance.

O Gods! how ſhall I be able to expreſs my violent Thoughts, or rather how will you ſupply the Defect of my Diſcourſe, by fancying part of them in your Imagination? I cannot repreſent them better to you, Brother, than by your own; but yet my Sorrow wanted one Conſolation which you received in yours, for you could not believe *Statira* to be inconſtant, without having your Affliction counterbalanced by a Joy at the Aſſurance that *Statira* was alive. Yes, I remember'd that I had found *Berenice*, but I had found her ſo unworthy and ſo ſhamefully chang'd that I had ſeen her give my Rival Favours, the ſmalleſt part whereof had never been granted unto me. I remember'd likewiſe that I had fallen under the Forces of my Rival, and that Remembrance made me doubt

doubt whether it was *Arſacomes*; he wore his Arms, he was with *Berenice*, whom *Arſacomes* had carried away, and with whom *Criton* had ſeen her a few Days before; but I had found the Valour of that Enemy ſo different from that of *Arſacomes*, that I had much ado to perſuade my ſelf it could be he, unleſs the Gods, to compleat their Anger againſt me, had ſo augmented his Strength, to hinder the Satisfaction my Revenge might have given me. I remain'd uncertain what to believe; but whether it were *Arſacomes*, or ſome new Servant, I found ſo great cauſe of Grief and of Deſpair in that abominable Change, that all I have told you hitherto of my former Afflictions, had touch'd me but lightly in compariſon of this laſt. I could not fancy *Berenice* in the Poſture I had ſeen her, holding a Man in her Arms, and kiſſing him with that Mouth which had been ſo niggardly to me, even then when her Father's Conſent might have authorized the Permiſſion of ſuch Favours, without loſing that little Reaſon I had recovered; and then yielding to the Rage that tranſported me, Ah! light inconſtant Woman (cried I) by what horrid Change haſt thou loſt the Remembrance of what thou wert heretofore, and the Remnants of that Vertue which made thee leave a Lover to put thy ſelf into the Hands of thine Enemies? Ah! if thou wert to give thy ſelf to *Arſacomes*, thou ſhould'ſt have done it when thou might'ſt with leſs Unworthineſs, and when thy Infidelity might have been juſtified by thy Father's Command. Thy Crime had been leſs ſhameful by that Pretence; and by the Reproach of thy Inconſtancy, thou might'ſt have avoided that of thy Diſobedience.

After theſe Words followed whole Troops of cruel Thoughts, and my Jealouſy giving ſuch Shapes to all Things as were moſt ſuitable to it, put Conceits into my Head, which I ſhould never have fallen into if I had been in my right Mind. Ah! without doubt (ſaid I again) thy Infidelity is not ſo new a Thing as I believ'd; that Action of thine before *Iſſedon*, was an Effect of thy Change, and not of thy Virtue; nor wouldeſt thou ever have forſaken me, to caſt thy ſelf into the Arms of that Rival, from whence I had pull'd thee with the Peril of

my

my Life, if the Lover to whom thou ran'ſt had not been dearer to thee than he whom thou forſookeſt. Thou haſt diſſembled ſince by *Stratonice*'s Counſel, to begin to accommodate thy ſelf to thy Father's Humour, and thy ſtealing away whereby I loſt all my Fortune with thee, had not been ſo eaſily effected, if thou thy ſelf hadſt not conſented to it; pardon me dear Princeſs, (purſued *Arſaces*, turning toward *Berenice*) pardon me the Injury I then did your Virtue, and conſider then that Condition I was reduc'd to, made me uncapable of any ſound or reaſonable Judgment, yed did I ſtrive to repent my Opinion, but could not do it without belying my own Eyes, and accuſing them for having deluded me in that Encounter. Perhaps I may be deceived, (ſaid I) and my Imagination prepoſſeſſed with the Remembrance of *Berenice*, did (it may be) preſent ſome other Object to me inſtead of her. Ah! no, (cried I again, immediately after) I was not deceived, and *Berenice*'s Features are too truly graven in my Memory, to ſuffer me to be conferr'd in the Knowledge of her, I ſaw her but too plainly, and look'd but too long upon her, to be in doubt whether it were ſhe or no. 'Tis ſhe, and ſhe is now in the Arms of my Rival, and of my Conqueror, and if Fortune has dealt any better with him than with me, they now rejoice together at the Victory he has obtain'd. In this Thought ſeeing *Criton* who was come to my Bed-ſide again, I commanded him to relate the true Iſſue of our Combate, to tell me in what Condition I had left my Enemy, and what became of *Berenice*. Sir, (ſaid he) I muſt confeſs that the Diſtance, the Trouble I was in during your Combate, and a Vail ſhe had put down over her Face, hindred me from knowing it was the Princeſs; but the Woman that was preſent while you fought, no ſooner ſaw your Enemy fall, (who ſunk from his Horſe at the ſame time with you, either dead, or in the ſame Caſe you were) but ſhe ran inſtantly to him, with Cries that came unto my Ears as far as I was off; and ſhe ſtill was making Lamentations over him, when I went from you to ſeek for Help, but at my return we neither found her, nor the Body of your Enemy. This Account of *Criton*'s wrought two different Effects upon me; for tho'

it

it confirm'd my Princeſs's Infidelity, it comforted me in the Belief that I had ſlain my Enemy, or at leaſt that he had not gotten an entire Victory. Then I turned over a thouſand ſeveral Reſolutions in my Mind, and tho' they tended all toward Death, yet the laſt upon which I fix'd was, that if it pleaſed the Gods I ſhould eſcape my Wounds, I would never die without being aſſur'd of my Revenge, or without finiſhing it by another Combate? and moreover, that I would never die but before the Eyes of the ingrateful *Berenice*. The Princeſs, who had often bluſh'd during *Arſaces*'s Diſcourſe, could no longer forbear to interrupt him: Ah! *Arſaces*, (ſaid ſhe) how ingrateful were you your ſelf, in thoſe cruel Thoughts you had of me; certainly my Humour ſhould have been well enough known to you, to make you believe that no Body but my Brother ought ever to hope for thoſe Kindneſſes from me, which cauſed your Jealouſy. If I had had any other Witneſſes but my own Eyes, (replied *Arſaces*) I ſhould never have given Credit to them; but in ſhort, I my ſelf had ſeen that that was as bad to me as Death, and I was then ſo unfortunate, that the Truth of this Adventure never came into my Thoughts.

I rather believed that my dear Brother was no longer in the World, ſince in ſo great a Revolution of my Siſters Affairs, we had not heard the leaſt News of him; ſince upon that of her Death, wherein he was much more concern'd than any Body elſe, he had neither appear'd to relieve her, nor to revenge her; and ſince my Siſter who it was likely would beſt have known it if he had been in this Country, had not ſaid one Word to me concerning him. This Opinion of your Death, dear Brother, which by little and little ſettled it ſelf in my Thoughts, was Cauſe of many of thoſe Things that have happened to me ſince, and confirm'd me in the Deſign I have to die, as ſoon as I was certain of my Revenge, and as ſoon as I had poured thoſe Reproaches into the Ears of *Berenice*, which I thought due to her Infidelity. The deſire of prolonging my Life till I could find Occaſion to loſe it in her Preſence made me ſuffer the Help that was given me, and aſſiſt toward my Recovery as much as they about me deſired. *Seleucus*, who intereſted

himſelf in it very cordially, came back to me the ſame Day, and when once I was in a Condition to thank him for his Care, I endeavoured to let him ſee he took it not of a Perſon that would ever become unworthy thereof by his Ingratitude.

The Chirurgeons could not yet ſettle any certain Judgment about my Cure, but they found I was ſo inconveniently in that little Houſe, and in a ſcurvy Chamber where I was almoſt ſuffocated with the exceſſive heat of the Seaſon, that tho' there were danger in removing me, they believed there was more in letting me continue in that Place. *Seleucus*, whoſe urgent Occaſions call'd him perpetually to *Babylon*, and who nevertheleſs could have been glad not to be from me, conſented willingly to the Propoſition of carrying me thither, and I had given my ſelf up ſo wholly to be ordered by them, that I did not ſo much as enquire what they meant to do with me. I knew not whether it was to *Babylon*, or to ſome other Place that they intended to remove me; but tho' I had known, I had preſerv'd ſo little Care of my Affairs, and of all other Thoughts but thoſe my Jealouſy inſpir'd me with, that I ſhould never have oppoſed them. I therefore ſuffered them the fourth Day to put on my Clothes, and lay me in a Litter to carry me to the Town, whither *Seleucus*, going along with me himſelf, made me be brought to his own Houſe, where I was very bravely lodg'd, and more commodiouſly attended. It ſurprized me a little to ſee I was in *Babylon*, but as I have already told you, my Deſpair ſwallowed up all my former Fears of being known, and I judg'd, that happen to me what would, my Condition could not be worſe than it was ſince *Berenice*'s Infidelity. Yet did I endeavour to free my ſelf from receiving many Viſits, and to that end, having made that Requeſt to *Seleucus*, he promiſed I ſhould be ſeen but by very few. The Condition I was in hindred me from ſeeing all the Preparations that were made for Defence againſt thoſe Forces of yours that began to appear; and *Seleucus*, who, by reaſon of *Perdiccas* his Wounds, bore the greateſt Weight of thoſe Affairs, knowing my Weakneſs made me unfit for that Entertainment, talk'd nothing of it to me, but when by Occaſion

of

of Diſcourſe he could not avoid it. Yet thus much I underſtood by what I heard him ſay, and by what *Criton* told me, that the Princes *Lyſimachus*, *Ptolomeus*, and their Companions, had form'd a Party againſt *Perdiccas* and his, for the Intereſt of the Princeſſes my Siſters, either dead or Captives, and the Juſtice I found in your Quarrel, made me ſorry I was oblig'd to *Seleucus*, ſince he was engag'd among your Enemies.

Yet did I ſtick but lightly upon thoſe Conſiderations, for a more powerful Grief had made me incapable of taking an Intereſt in any thing, which concern'd not the Cauſe of my Deſpair: I continued certain Days without other Thoughts ſave thoſe of my Revenge, and of Death, the Danger whereof, according to the Chirurgions Opinion, was not yet quite over, and perhaps I ſhould not have admitted any that could have oblig'd me to join with either Side, if I had been fit for Service, but for a Thing that happened to me about that Time. I had ſent *Criton* to the Place where I had fought to enquire after *Berenice*, and my Enemy, and to endeavour to learn ſomething that might inform me what was become of them; but at his Return with the Remedy for my Wounds, he brought me News which awaken'd my Intereſts powerfully enough to make me neglect thoſe of our Family, to mingle mine with theſe of *Seleucus*. *Criton* came back to me, Brother, with the Herb you had given him for my Cure, told me what had befallen him in your Camp, delivered your generous Meſſage, ſhew'd me the Preſent you had ſent me, and aſſured me that you were not *Arſacomes*. This Encounter made me fall into a Confuſion of Thoughts, and into an Aſtoniſhment hard to be deſcrib'd; and tho' I was glad to hear my Enemy was in a Place where I could meet him, and where we might have Opportunity to end our Quarrel, it was a great Diſcontent to me to know that by the Greatneſs of my Wounds, I ſhould not of a long Time, and perhaps never, be in a Condition to fight him again; or that I muſt be fain to be beholding to my Enemy for the Healing of them. *Seleucus* was preſent at *Criton*'s coming in, and at the Account he gave me; and after having admir'd your Generoſity, he knew the Herb you ſent

me, and confirm'd the Truth of the Story of *Ptolomeus*. He with a great deal of Joy perſuaded me to apply it to my Wounds, but the Repugnance I had to receive my Health from the Hands of my cruel Enemy, made me for a long Time oppoſe his Deſires, and perhaps I ſhould never have conſented, if I had not thought my Rival might attribute that Refuſal of his Aſſiſtance, to a Fear of coming to fight with him again. I judg'd moreover, that that Obligation did not engage me to any Peace with him, ſince he had no other Intention in obliging me, than that of finiſhing with his Hand, what my Wounds perhaps were too ſlow in effecting, and that our Hatred being founded upon the Poſſeſſion of *Berenice*, and not upon any ſlight Formality, it could end no other way but by the Death of one of us.

Theſe Conſiderations made me reſolve to uſe the Preſent he ſent me; and turning toward *Seleucus*, who preſs'd me to it very earneſtly, Yes, *Seleucus* (ſaid I) from whence ſoever I receive my Cure, I accept of it to ſerve you, and to acquit my ſelf of my Obligations to you: I'll fight on your Side, if I can recover my Strength; and tho' in my Opinion you have not the juſteſt Cauſe, the Remembrance of what I owe to you, and the Deſire of taking Revenge upon my Enemy makes me paſs over that Conſideration. *Seleucus* expreſſed an exceſſive Joy when he heard me ſay ſo, and taking me by the Hand, which I put forth to him with much Affection, We have conquered, valiant *Arſaces*, (ſaid he) ſince you ſay you'll fight for us, and you are too accuſtomed to Victory, to let us fear an ill Succeſs of this War, while you are of our Party. If there be any Injuſtice in our Quarrel, I proteſt to you 'tis more than I know of, and that I am engaged in it only by my Friendſhip to *Perdiccas*, whom I have ever known too vertuous to be ſuſpected of thoſe Crimes whereof his Enemies accuſe him.

When he had ſaid theſe Words, he cauſed that Sovereign Herb to be made ready; but preſently after, he began to doubt whether I might ſafely uſe it, and whether I ought not to ſuſpect ſome foul Play in an Enemy's Preſent. The Knowledge he gave me of his Fear, wrought

wrought no Effect upon me; but haſtening the Chirurgions to apply that Remedy, My Enemy is too gallant (ſaid I) to be ſuſpected of ſuch a Baſeneſs; and if you had ſeen how he maintains his Intereſts with his Sword, you would not believe he had any need of Poiſon, or that the Uſe of it were known to him. On this Manner did I accept the Preſent you ſent me, and made no Difficulty to receive my Life from you, that I might be able to imploy it once more to the Deſtruction of yours. I confeſs my Reſolution was ſomething ſtrange in the Choice of that Party; and tho' I knew that I ow'd my Life perhaps to *Seleucus*, and that he continued to engage me further by all kind of Teſtimonies of his Affection, that Reſpect was not ſtrong enough to make me take up Arms for Men, who probably were the Enemies of our Houſe; and the Memory of what I ow'd to my own Blood, and to the Friendſhip of Perſons ſo near me, was powerful enough to counterbalance my Obligations to *Seleucus*; but my enraged Paſſion ſtifled all Remembrances, to thruſt me headlong to my Revenge; and living for no other End but to die in the Preſence of *Berenice*, after I had firſt made an End of him who had ſo unjuſtly robb'd me of her, I ſhut my Eyes againſt whatſoever Reaſon and Nature could repreſent. Let all periſh (ſaid I) if the Gods ordain it ſo, ſince *Berenice* is falſe, and ſince I muſt no longer hope for that Fortune, whereby I have ſurviv'd the Ruin of our Houſe, what is't to me if it be utterly deſtroy'd; and why ſhould I any more be concerned at any thing in the World, where I am detained by nothing elſe but my Deſire of Revenge? They on both Sides are equally my Enemies, ſince they have equally endeavour'd the Deſtruction of our Family, and they equally poſſeſs the Dominions that were ours; and if I ought to put any Difference between them, the Obligation I have to *Seleucus*, ought to make it wholly in Favour of his Party. Yet do I neither fight for *Seleucus*, nor for *Perdiccas*, againſt *Ptolomeus*, and againſt *Lyſimachus*; but among the Enemies of *Seleucus* and *Perdiccas* I ſeek mine own moſt cruel and irreconcileable Enemy. If the Gods permit that I may kill him, I'll ceaſe to offend my Family, by ceaſing to ou-

live him; and if I periſh by his Hand, the End of my Faults, and the End of my Misfortunes will both be join'd together in that of my Life.

Beſides theſe Thoughts which were inſpired unto me by my Deſpair, I reflected as much as it would ſuffer me, upon many Things that confirmed me in the Deſign of ſerving the Party, contrary to that of my Enemy; and tho' I had very juſt Cauſes of Reſentment againſt *Roxana*, I ſmother'd part of thoſe I had againſt *Perdiccas*, and could not remember that his Love had thruſt him upon Actions that were diſpleaſing to the Queen my Siſter, without remembring alſo, that both ſhe and *Parſatis* were indebted to him for their Lives, and that but for the Aſſiſtance he had given them, I ſhould have been the only Perſon remaining of the Blood of *Darius*. Moreover, I believed that the Love which he and his Brother bore my Siſters, would engage them ſtill in their Defence; and that if they were at that Time in their Hands, they were ſafer there againſt *Roxana*'s Hatred, than in any other Retreat whatſoever. I communicated none of theſe Thoughts to *Seleucus*, tho' his Virtue might have given me a great deal of Confidence in him, not thinking it convenient, for the little Time I had reſolved to live, and in the Condition I then was, to make any further Diſcovery of my ſelf; I ſaid not a Word to him of my Combate againſt *Perdiccas*, nor of that I knew of the Princeſs's being alive, whom for all your Declaration every body believed dead, or at leaſt feign'd to believe ſo. *Perdiccas* had never ſeen my Face, and tho' we have often met and talked together ſince, he ſtill continued ignorant that I ever had any Encounter with him: Yet you eaſily imagine, that ſo were *Roxana* and him; and in the midſt of ſo many Men, whom their Intereſt was ſure to make my Enemies, I could not be without a great deal of Danger; but you alſo know, that as I car'd but little for my Life, I took but little Care of its Conſervation. Yet did I deſire (aiming at nothing leſs than my Safety) to avoid the Sight of *Roxana*, and of all others that could know me; and *Seleucus*, of whom I daily requeſted that Favour, being willing to ſatisfy me, ordered the Matter ſo, that I was viſited by none but his particular

cular Friends. The Report, nevertheleſs, of my lying wounded at *Seleucus*'s Houſe, began to ſpread about the Town; and that ſmall Reputation I had gain'd, was the Cauſe that many had a Mind to ſee me. *Roxana* herſelf, who out of Cunning flatters thoſe with great Civility whom ſhe has a Deſire to engage in her Party, had oftentimes a Thought to viſit me; but *Seleucus*, at my earneſt Intreaty, diſſuaded her from it, ſaying I was not yet ſo well as to receive her Viſits without Inconveniency.

In the mean Time, Brother, your Medicine had wrought its uſual Effect upon me; and within Ten or Twelve Days after the applying that Herb, I was well enough to leave my Bed. *Perdiccas* who was cured almoſt about that Time, was the firſt that viſited me, and came into my Chamber with *Seleucus*, *Alcetas*, and *Caſſander*, and ſome other of the moſt conſiderable among them. He entertained me with the civileſt and moſt obliging Diſcourſes in the World, and told me that my Reputation had come to the Ears of *Alexander*, and had not only gain'd me the Eſteem of that Great King, but of all vertuous Perſons whatſoever, that he received the Aſſiſtance I made him hope for, as the chiefeſt Step to Victory, that he would reſign me all the Authority he held over thoſe of his Party, and that there was none among them who would not voluntarily ſubmit to me. I anſwered that Exceſs of Civility, with all that I had left in the ſorrowful Condition of my Heart, and aſſur'd him in a few Words, that I would ſerve him without any Command, and without other Ambition than that of fighting by *Seleucus*'s Side. After that Viſit I receiv'd many others from him; but as ſoon as the Forces were come up, finding my ſelf able to leave my Chamber, I pray'd *Seleucus* I might go out of the Town to encamp with them, and to lie in his Tent, which with thoſe of the other Princes, were pitch'd along the Bank of the *Euphrates*. There I paſs'd many tedious Days, or rather many wearieſome Nights, ſince my Soul was nothing but in Darkneſs, or at the beſt enlightned only by ſome Hope of Revenge. *Criton*, who had already told me that my Enemy was not *Arſacomes*, confirm'd it to me after he had ſeen him again with *Clitophon*, when he carried him

Thanks for the Favour he had done me, and I was already perſuaded of it, by the Tryal I had made of his Forces, and by the admirable Generoſity of that Rival, who in all his Actions, methought, was very different from *Arſacomes*; yet tho' I doubted not of what *Criton* ſaid, I knew not what to believe, when the Report came into our Camp, that a *Scythian* Prince nam'd *Arſacomes*, was with our Enemies, and very much conſider'd among them. This News, which came to us many ſeveral ways, put me at firſt into great Diſquiets, to learn the Truth of it; but in the End I baniſh'd them all, ſticking cloſe to my former Reſolutions. Let him be *Arſacomes*, (ſaid I) or let him be a Stranger, 'tis ſtill he that takes *Berenice* from me, and he whom I ought to proſecute to Death. In the Perſon of *Arſacomes* I ſhall kill my ancient Enemy, and in that of a Stranger I ſhall puniſh the cruel Man, who unjuſtly robs me of what he has not purchaſed by his Blood and Services, as I have done, and who makes *Berenice* a Thouſand Times more faulty by ſuch a horrible Lightneſs than if ſhe had given her ſelf to *Arſacomes*, who has lov'd and ſerv'd her many Years. Theſe were my Thoughts, till the Time of my Conference with *Lyſimachus* the Day before the Battle. *Seleucus* had told me the Hiſtory of that Prince; and beſides the Eſteem which was cauſed in me by the Recital of his gallant Actions, the Affection he had teſtified to my Siſter, and to all our Family, made me value him exceedingly; but when I found by his Letter, that it was he with whom I had contracted a Friendſhip at the Temple of *Apollo*, and afterward by the River-ſide, I received the Occaſion of ſeeing him with all the Joy I could then be capable of; you from him have heard what paſs'd between us, and how our Converſation was interrupted, and from me you ſhall hear, that after we parted, the Remembrance of his Words put me again into my former Confuſion, and I could not call to Mind what he had ſaid of the long Services my Rival had done my Princeſs, without believing it was *Arſacomes*. The laſt Actions (ſaid I to my ſelf) which I did in *Scythia*, till which my Paſſion was never openly declared, were done too lately to be come to the Knowledge of *Lyſimachus*; and *Arſacomes*'s Paſſion,

Paſſion, which has been diſcover'd theſe Seven or Eight Years, can be unknown to no body but thoſe that know not him, 'tis *Arſacomes* without doubt. *Criton* has forgotten his Features, or elſe his Face is alter'd by his Wounds, or ſome other Accident, and with his Face, the Gods to ruin me, have chang'd his Forces, and his Courage. 'Tis certainly this advantageous Change that has alſo chang'd *Berenice*, and this new Gallantry may have obtain'd that of her, which he never could have done by his ordinary Qualities. With Diſcourſes and Thoughts of this Nature, I impatiently waited for the next Day, wherein I hoped to make my Revenge famous to Eternity; but being I ſought for nothing but to meet my Enemy, I would needs have fought as a private Man, and 'twas almoſt by Force that *Seleucus* prevail'd with me to ſhare with him in the Command of thoſe Troops he was to lead. I will not ſay any thing to you of that bloody Day, wherein, after I had long ſought the ſuppoſed *Arſacomes*, I met him, but to my Loſs and to my Confuſion; yet you may gueſs by what I have told you, and by what I attempted, with how great an Extremity of Anger and Affliction I have been tormented ſince. When I knew that the Gods had ſav'd my Enemy from my Revenge that ſecond Time, I was ready to have turn'd all the Effects of my Deſpair, againſt my ſelf; and 'twas with all the Difficulty in the World, that *Seleucus* got me to ſuffer the Dreſſing of ſome light Hurts I had received. From my firſt Tranſports, I fell into new Deſigns, and began to condemn the Ways I had taken for my Revenge. The Injuſtice of the Side I was of, was more known to me than it had been before; and when I heard that Prince *Oxyartes*, my Uncle, and all thoſe that lov'd the Memory of *Darius*, were of your Party, and that your Intention appear'd to me to be ſuch as you had declared in your Manifeſts, I with Remorſe perceived that my Paſſion had made me criminal and ingrateful, and that my Fault was too odious to the Gods, to hope they would ever grant me the Revenge I aim'd at, and in which I had bounded my utmoſt Deſires. *Fight no more againſt thy Friends, ingrateful* Artaxerxes (ſaid I) *and give not that Advantage to*

thine Enemy, to ſerve thy Houſe, while thou art favouring its Enemies. The Choice he has made of that Party, ought to make thee bluſh for Shame; and if he be worthy of thy Hatred, by Wrongs that are more conſiderable than the Services he does thy Friends, ſet thy ſelf againſt his Perſon alone, without fighting ſtill againſt thy neareſt Kindred, and againſt thoſe that have taken Arms for the Remainders of thy Family. Go, and diſpatch him in his Tent, ſince without Crime thou canſt not ſtay here till a ſecond Battle, and that thy Impatiency will not yield to ſo long a Delay; perhaps the Gods may ſuffer thee to effect what thou haſt reſolv'd; and if they have decreed that thou muſt fall, thy Death will be more to thy Advantage that Way, than if thou ſhouldſt receive it at the Head of the Enemies of thy Houſe, from the Hands of Oxyartes, *or of ſome other Prince of thine own Blood.* This Deſign was put in Execution, and the next Day without thinking ſo much as upon *Criton* (ſo far had my Fury blinded me) while he was gone to ſome other Part of the Camp, I put on my Arms, got on Horſeback, and being fully reſolv'd to be kill'd, or kill my Rival, I left our Camp, and advanc'd directly toward yours. There was little Probability I could effect that Enterprize, but the Regard I had of Life, was a great deal leſs; and equally deſiring my Death and my Revenge, I ran to both with a like Precipitation.

I ſhall not need to tell you any more (continued *Arſaces*) ſince you are not ignorant of the reſt; and that you know as well as I, the admirable Change that has happen'd in my Fortune. Where I ſought my cruel Enemy, I met my deareſt Brother; where I ſought a faithleſs *Berenices*, I found *Berenice* ſtill conſtant, and ſtill full of Goodneſs, to pardon me the Injuries I have done her; and in ſhort, where I ſought my Death, I found my Life, but a Life happy beyond all my Hopes, and a Life that makes me bleſs all my paſt Afflictions, ſince I ſee them brought to ſo ſweet, ſo glorious a Concluſion.

The End of the Fifth BOOK.

The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK VI.

THUS did the Prince finiſh his long Narration; and his Illuſtrious Hearers, at the Recital of his marvellous Actions, remain'd in an Aſtoniſhment, which for a long Time they could not expreſs otherwiſe than by their Silence. They look'd a while upon one another, as if it had been mutually to ask what Judgment *Arſaces* was to expect of thoſe his Wonders; and in the End, they broke forth all together into an Admiration of that Prince's whole Life, and of all his particular Actions, extolling them with Praiſes which his Modeſty could not ſuffer. Yet was he conſtrain'd to let paſs the firſt Motions of thoſe generous Perſons, who could not hold their Peace, having ſo great and ſo gallant a Subject to diſcourſe of. After that Confuſion

fuſion was a little over, and that a ſingle Body could be heard, The Greatneſs of theſe Actions (ſaid *Oroondates*) which the Prince my Brother hath related, has not at all ſurprized me; for tho' perhaps they are above all that the Virtue of any Man, without the Help of Fortune, hath ever executed, yet are they not above the Opinion I had conceived of Prince *Artaxerxes*. The Gods have reſtor'd him to me, (purſued he, giving that Prince moſt affectionate Embraces) and in reſtoring him, contrary to my Hopes, they have made known to Men, what exact Obſervers they are of their Promiſes. The Words of that Oracle, which we thought to be ſo obſcure, are now ſufficiently explain'd; and in our latter Actions we cannot be ignorant, That THE DEAD have BUILT THE FORTUNE OF THE LIVING, and that THE LIVING have laboured for the REPOSE OF THE DEAD. While *Oroondates* LIVING defended *Berenice* againſt the Violence of *Arſacomes*, and deliver'd her out of his Hands, to reſtore her into thoſe of Prince *Artaxerxes*; *Artaxerxes* DEAD in the Opinion of the World, fought alſo for *Oroondates*, and by the Effects of his uſual Valour, freed the Queen his Siſter out of the Power of *Perdiccas*. As the Providence of the Gods in this Encounter is wonderful, ſo is the Conjuncture of it likewiſe very ſtrange; and by this happy Beginning, I, from the ſame Gods, and from this DEAD Prince they have raiſed again, expect the End of that Felicity they have promiſed us, with an undoubting Confidence. They that heard *Oroondates*'s Words, after they had kept him Company in admiring ſo extraordinary an Event, confirm'd him in his Opinion, and were going to fall into a Converſation, for which they wanted not Matter, when *Arſaces*, to whom *Berenice*'s Adventures were unknown, and who was therein too much concerned to be ignorant of them any longer, deſired her to favour him with that Relation, and in that Deſire he did but prevent *Oroondates*, who knew no more of them than he, and oblig'd the Company who long'd extremely to hear the laſt Accident of that Princeſs's Life. She ſtaid not to be any longer entreated; but after having thought a while upon what ſhe had to ſay, began to ſatisfy their Expectations thus:

The

THE CONTINUATION OF THE Hiſtory of *BERENICE.*

THE whole Day has been ſpent in Prince *Artaxerxes*'s Story; but mine ſhall be ſo ſhort, that 'tis not the Length of it will make it tedious to you.

I ſhall not need to tell you it was *Arſacomes* that carried me away, ſince you are certain enough of that Truth already; I will only let you know, that I had paſs'd Part of that fatal Night in which he executed his perfidious Reſolution, with *Arſaces*, Prince *Carthaſis* my Uncle, and many other Perſons; and that after all were retired to their ſeveral Lodgings, I, inſtead of going to Bed, ingag'd my ſelf in a long Diſcourſe, wherein (tho' *Cyllenia* often deſired me to go to Bed) we ſpent Two or Three Hours: It ſeem'd my evil Deſtiny had ſo ordain'd, to give my Enemies the more Facility to execute their Deſign, or my good Fortune to hinder me from falling into their Hands in an undecent Manner. Our Converſation at laſt was at an End, and we were beginning to undreſs us to go to Bed, when I ſaw my Chamber-door thruſt open, and ſeven or eight armed Men come in. You may well enough imagine in what a Fear I was, without my going about to repre-

repreſent it; therefore I will only tell you, that it was ſo great as it deprived me of all my Strength, and that I ſaw my ſelf in a Man's Arms, without being able to reſiſt him, and almoſt without having the Confidence to call *Theomiris*, and *Cyllenia* to my Relief: Yet did I ſend forth loud Cries, when they took me out of my Chamber, which drew ſome of my Servants, who inſtead of Reſcuing me, found their Death in the Swords of thoſe barbarous Men. They carry'd me down the back Stairs, croſs'd thro' the Garden, and being got out at the Hole they had made in the Wall, they put me by Force into a Chariot, in which I was ſtay'd for by two Men and a Woman; and no ſooner was I in it, but three of thoſe Raviſhers placing themſelves by me, the reſt got on Horſeback, and the Charioteer laſhing his Horſes, drove away as faſt as poſſibly he could; I then fell preſently into a Swoon, as one of greater Courage than I might have done, and continued ſo long in it, that we were above Three Hundred Furlongs from *Iſſedon* before I came to my ſelf again. I open'd not mine Eyes to recover Light, the Night was too full of Darkneſs to afford any to a Perſon blinded with Grief; but I recover'd my Underſtanding, to know the miſerable Condition I then was in, and I open'd my Mouth to give my ſelf over to ſuch Cries and ſuch Complaints, as it was likely I ſhould make in ſuch a Misfortune. I did all I could to throw my ſelf out of the Chariot, but I was held by very ſtrong Men, who heard all my Cries, and all my Imprecations, without giving me any Anſwer; nor did I hear any other Voice, ſave that of the Woman who was in the Chariot with me, and who endeavour'd to comfort me by Diſcourſes, to which I lent no manner of Attention.

In the mean Time the Chariot went on with an incredible Swiftneſs, and at Break of Day we came to a Place where they took freſh Horſes. *Arſacomes*, during the Time he had to prepare for his Deſign, had been careful to make them be laid at every Three Hundred Furlongs thro' all the Way he meant to go, judging it requiſite to uſe all poſſible Speed to eſcape thoſe that would be ſent in Purſuit of him. He had alſo

furniſh'd

furnish'd himself with very skilful Guides, and such as were well acquainted with all the By-ways thro' which they led him, hardly ever coming into any inhabited Place; you know that's a very easy thing in *Scythia*, where the Way lies open over all the Fields, and where there is neither Ditch nor Wall to hinder one. The fresh Horses expected our Passage in Woods, or in By-Houses known to our Guides; and by this Order which was observ'd through all our Journey, *Arsacomes* found as much Facility as he could wish, to get to *Byzantium*, whither he intended to retreat, and whither he had sent a Man to desire Protection, knowing he could make no Abode, nor find any Safety in any of my Father's Territories. This Knowledge had made him resolve to retire among the Enemies of *Scythia*, and he had persuaded the Lieutenant of *Thrace*, *Zopirio*'s Successor, to receive and protect him, having promis'd to raise a Party in *Scythia*, that might be powerful enough to take Revenge for the Defeat of his Predecessor. I have thought fit to inform you of these Things in a few Words, before I tell the Beginning of my Voyage; and now I will let you know, that after the rest of that first Night was past, I, by the Light of the approaching Day, perceived my self in *Arsacomes*'s Arms, and knew the Face of my Enemy, who till then had not discover'd himself, nor had ever open'd his Mouth to interrupt the Lamentations I had made. I learn'd nothing by that Sight, which was not known to me already by all manner of Probability; yet could I not forbear to break into a greater Sorrow than before; and my Aversion to that insolent Man being increased, as you may imagine by this last Offence, made his Presence insupportable to me. Another Woman, transported as I was, would have flown immediately at his Face, and would have employ'd her Hands, and all the Arms that Nature hath given us, to take Revenge upon so cruel an Enemy, or else to exasperate his Anger; but I am not of so violent a Nature, and therefore left that only to my Cries and Tears, which I could not hope for from my Forces: Traytor, (said I, bursting forth into Tears) Traytor to thy King, to thy Country, and to thine Honour, Is it thus thou usest the

Daughter

Daughter of thy Sovereign, and a Princeſs to whom thou did'ſt profeſs thy ſelf ty'd by other Duties than thoſe of her Birth? Are theſe the brave Effects of that Paſſion, which had made thee not to know thy ſelf, and of that Love which raiſed thy preſumptuous Thoughts ſo high? Is it poſſible it ſhould make thee ſtoop to ſo black, ſo ſhameful a Treachery? Doſt thou think this Infidelity to thy King, and to a King who has ſo particularly oblig'd thee, can remain unpuniſh'd? And canſt thou believe thou ſhalt eſcape the Juſtice of the Gods, though thou ſave thy ſelf from that of Men? I ſaid a great deal more to him, and pour'd forth Reproaches which he hearken'd to, without interrupting me: But when I was a little ſettled, or at leaſt when being tir'd with long ſpeaking, and tormenting my ſelf, I was conſtrain'd to hold my Peace and take Breath; Madam, (ſaid he) I ſhould find a great deal of Juſtice in your Reproaches, and ſhould condemn, this laſt Action of mine, if I had done it in a leſs Extremity than that you had reduc'd me to, and if a Service of Eight Years, and a Service paid with as much Reſpect and Submiſſion as you could deſire, were not enough to juſtify this Effect of my Deſpair.

So long as I had any Hope, you never ſaw me abuſe the King's Favour toward me, nor licenſe my ſelf to any Liberty that could diſpleaſe you; but when I loſt my Hopes, both by your cruel Obſtinacy, and by the King's diſhonourable Change, I to extreme Misfortunes apply'd Remedies of the ſame Nature, and would not leave unto my Rival what was due to me, both by my Services, and by the King your Father's Promiſe. In ſhort, Madam, I have done nothing that I can juſtly repent of, nor for which I ought to fear any Reproach; and rather than leave you to my Rival, I would not only have pull'd you out of the King's own Arms, but would even have ſacrific'd himſelf to my lawful Reſentments, have made the whole Kingdom periſh, and have ſet all *Scythia* on Fire, if it had been in my Power. Ah! Thou unworthy Man, (reply'd I) if thou couldſt not endure to leave me in the Hands of thy Rival, thou ſhouldſt have pull'd me out of them, as once he pull'd me out of thine; thou ſhouldſt have undertaken that againſt him alone, which

he

he undertook againſt thee at the Head of thine Army; and thou ſhouldſt have diſputed me like a Prince, and like a valiant Man as he is, ſince thou knew'ſt he never would have refuſed thoſe Occaſions. I would willingly have made uſe of them (ſaid *Arſacomes*) if they could have been any Advantage to my Paſſion; and as valiant, and as fortunate as *Arſaces* is, he never ſaw me run away from him; nor did the *Scythians* ever ſee *Arſacomes* turn his Back in the greateſt Dangers; but if I had fought with *Arſaces*, *Berenice* would not have been the Prize of my Victory, ſince the King's Injuſtice had otherwiſe diſpoſed of her; and that by his expreſs Command he had utterly extinguiſh'd all my Hopes: By taking that Courſe, tho' I might have reveng'd my ſelf upon mine Enemy, I had not obtained my Princeſs; but by this I have followed, *Berenice* is mine, and *Arſaces* is more cruelly puniſh'd, than if I had given him a Thouſand Deaths. *Berenice* thine? (cry'd I, interrupting him) *Berenice* thine? Ah! never hope it; and ſince thou haſt ſeen her reſiſt her Father's Will, while he was ſo far blinded as to favour thee, and while thou wert leſs criminal than now thou art, be certain that ſhe knows well enough how to defend her ſelf by her Death againſt thy Violence, and againſt thy Perſecutions; and that ſo long as ſhe lives, ſhe will never look upon thee as other than a Monſter, and as an Enemy, black with the baſeſt of all Crimes. Time (replied *Arſacomes*) and the Continuation of my Reſpects, will, without doubt, abate your unjuſt Anger, and you will ceaſe to hate me, when you come to conſider, that 'tis the Exceſs of my Love which forces me to diſpleaſe you, in taking you away from a Rival more fortunate than I am, but which ſhall never make me go beyond the Limits of that Reſpect I owe you, and which ſhall ever leave you the ſame Empire over me you had in the Court of the King your Father. By theſe Words, *Arſacomes* ſtrove to appeaſe and comfort me; but all his Endeavours were to no Purpoſe; and as often as he opened his Mouth to ſpeak to me, he receiv'd no other Anſwer but Reproaches and Imprecations.

I continued almoſt Two whole Days, before I would eat any thing in the World; and certainly I ſhould have kill'd

kill'd my self with Hunger, rather than have fram'd my self with Hunger, rather than have fram'd my self to live with my cruel Enemies, if I had not hoped I should be retain'd, and if I had not expected marvellous Effects from *Arsaces* for my Deliverance. *Arsacomes* to use me with the more Decency, and not to keep a Princess of my Quality alone among a great many Men, had taken Care, as I have told you, to provide a Woman to serve me. I knew her well enough, having seen her often with the Princess of the *Issedons*, *Arsacomes*'s Mother; but tho' she did me all the Service she was able, with a great deal of Cunning, and in Shew with a great deal of Affection, I could not receive it but as from my mortal Enemy; and wheresoever I look'd upon her, the Remembrance of *Theomiris* and *Cyllenia*, whose Consolations would have been so sweet to me in that Condition, drew new Tears from my Eyes, and new Sighs from my afflicted Heart. Alas! How often did I name *Arsaces!* And how often did I call him unprofitably to my Assistance! I made no Difficulty at all of it before *Arsacomes* himself, and I so little fear'd to displease him, that I never used any Constraint upon my self to smother my just Resentments. His whole Train consisted of Ten Men, whom he had chosen amongst those that were most faithful to him, Three of which were in the Chariot with us, and the rest follow'd it on Horseback; he, of whom he made most Account, was *Astiages*, the wickedest of all Men living, and one who having left his Country, where he was born, for many Crimes he had committed, and particularly for the Death of his Brother, which he had caused by his mischievous Practices, had taken Refuge in *Scythia*, where he had found a Retreat with *Arsacomes*, during the Time he was in Favour. 'Twas he who had discover'd *Arsaces*, and who remembring the Face of *Artaxerxes*, whom he had often seen in the Court of the King his Father, had more considered the Recompences he hoped for from *Arsacomes*, than the Fidelity he ow'd to his lawful Prince, and after he had told him of it, went by his Orders to the King, declared the Truth of *Arsaces*'s Birth to him, took upon him to know the Intentions that had brought him into *Scythia*,

Scythia, and by his Diſcourſe made thoſe cruel Impreſſions in the King's Mind, which afterwards cauſed ſo many Diſorders. He, after *Arſaces*'s Return, and his Reconciliation with the King, had retir'd to one of *Arſacomes*'s Houſes, not being able to look on the Face of his Prince, whom he had betray'd; but from the Time *Arſacomes* left the Court, he had been with him again, and by his Perſuaſions had ſtrengthen'd him in his wicked Intention, and had counſell'd him to go to *Byzantium*, where, by Means of his Acquaintance, he aſſur'd him of a ſafe Retreat. 'Twas that wicked Fellow that perſecuted me more than all the reſt; and thinking thereby to gain himſelf more Favour with *Arſacomes*, he wrought ſuch an Averſion in me, that I was not able to endure him. I will not trouble you with the Diſcourſes we had by the Way, and you ſhall only know that we arriv'd at *Byzantium* without any Hindrance. *Eurimedon* was Lieutenant there for *Alexander*, under Prince *Lyſimachus*, who was Vice-Roy of *Thrace*; but he being abſent with the King, *Eurimedon* was abſolute in *Thrace*, and in the *Boſphorus*; as ſoon as he heard of *Arſacomes*'s Arrival, he receiv'd him in a very obliging Manner, and by Word of Mouth confirm'd whatſoever he had promiſed to his Meſſenger: I was ever well lodg'd, and *Eurimedon* having taken Care to furniſh me with other Women, I was ſerv'd as well as I could have deſired, if it had not been by Enemies. *Arſacomes* daily employ'd all his Eloquence, and all his Cunning to work upon me; he bethought himſelf of all the Submiſſions whereby an exaſperated Mind could be appeaſed, and made no Difficulty of ſuffering any thing, except the Propoſition of my Return, and of my Liberty.

The impudent *Aſtiages* ſollicited me every Day to favour him, and perſuaded me that in the Condition I then was, nothing could be of greater Advantage to me than to marry *Arſacomes*: He told me, it was not my beſt Courſe to drive a Prince into Deſpair, who had Power to do what he pleaſed himſelf; and that a Lover reduc'd to the laſt Extremities, was capable of doing any thing; but I repulſed that perfidious Man with ſuch Words, as, if he had had any Shame in him, would have ſerv'd his

Turn

Turn for ever. *Eurimedon* himſelf at firſt ſpake for *Arſacomes* with a great deal of Earneſtneſs, and ſtrove to win me to an Opinion that I ſhould not be unfortunate with a Prince that adored me, and in whoſe Favour he offer'd me his Protection againſt all Enemies whatſoever, and Part of *Alexander*'s Forces againſt *Arſaces*, and againſt the King my Father, if he diſapprov'd my Change. He endeavour'd alſo to comfort me in my Sorrow, by all manner of Civility; but when he found me inflexible, and not to be comforted, he ceaſed to trouble me any more. I for a while believ'd that the Compaſſion he had of my Misfortune, or the Reſpect he had of my Perſon, had made him cooler towards *Arſacomes*; and with that Conceit, I endur'd his Company more willingly than before, but within a little after I perceiv'd that Alteration proceeded from another Cauſe, and by his Looks, and by all his Actions, I found that his own Intereſts had made him forget thoſe of *Arſacomes*. In brief, by an Effect of my Deſtiny, either good or bad, *Eurimedon* fell in Love with me, and I ſaw my ſelf expoſed by my cruel Fortune, to ſuffer the Affection of a Man of meaner Birth, and of meaner Quality than *Arſacomes*. He for ſome Days ſpoke nothing to me of his Paſſion but in ambiguous Terms; yet within a while after, the Power he ſaw he had, made him grow inſolent, and not only took away all the Reſpect he had born to my Quality, but alſo the Conſideration he had of *Arſacomes*, and the Promiſe he had given him. The firſt Time he explain'd himſelf to me, was after a Diſcourſe we had of my Misfortunes; and having quietly hearken'd to the Complaints I made, Madam, (ſaid he) you are not ſo unfortunate as you believe; and if you were but of an Humour to diſcern thoſe Perſons that have an Ambition to ſerve you, from thoſe that have offended you, your Miſeries would not be of any long Continuance.

Theſe Words, into the Meaning whereof I did not dive at firſt, gave me ſome Glimpſe of Hope; and being deſirous to keep the Good-will of a Man who had Power to oblige me, Do not doubt, *Eurimedon*, (ſaid I) but that I am as ſenſible of Courteſies, as I can be of Injuries; not but that I would fully acknowledge thoſe

I ſhould

I ſhould receive from vertuous Perſons. If it be ſo, (replied he) *Eurimedon* will be the happieſt Man in the World, and you ſhall not be the moſt unfortunate Princeſs. I know what I owe to *Arſacomes*, and to the Laws of Hoſpitality; but I alſo know what I owe to *Berenice*, and to my ſelf; and though I ſhould commit a Fault, that Paſſion wherewith *Arſacomes* covers his, may more reaſonably excuſe thoſe of *Eurimedon*.

Theſe Words, wherein there no longer was any Ambiguity, cauſed a Diſdain in me which I cannot expreſs, and if *Eurimedon* look'd then upon my Face, I am confident he ſaw it overſpread with a Colour that was not ordinary. Go, *Eurimedon*, (ſaid I) go, declare your Paſſion to others than the Daughter of the King of *Scythia*, and re-double not by your Inſolence the Afflictions of a Princeſs, whom you ought not to behold but with Reſpect. Though *Eurimedon* was daſh'd at this Reply, yet would he have ſpoken again, but I gave him not the Leiſure, for going away without ſo much as caſting an Eye toward him, I ſhut my ſelf up into my Cloſet. Imagine the Complaints I made after this laſt Effect of my Misfortune, and ſpare me the Pains of repeating them: 'Twas not without a very ſenſible Diſcontent that I conſider'd that new Conqueſt, nor was it without a great many Tears that I looked upon the Miſery of my Condition, which forced me to receive Declarations of Love from a Man of *Eurimedon*'s Birth. Ah! *Artaxerxes*, (ſaid I) what an unworthy Rival has my hard Fate procured thee? And how much thou wouldſt be aſhamed if thou knewſt my Miſery, to have a Petty Lieutenant of a Province, thy Competitor in Affection, thou to whom a Hundred Provinces, and Ten Thouſand Subjects more conſiderable than this Rival, ought to yield Obedience. This Remembrance made *Eurimedon* more odious to me than *Arſacomes*; and tho' according to the Rules of Prudence, I ought perhaps to have diſſembled with him, to get by his Means out of the Power of *Arſacomes*, my fear of falling into worſe Hands than his, oppoſed that Subtilty, or rather I had not command enough over my ſelf to make my Reſentments give Way to that Conſideration: I therefore avoided all Diſcourſe with *Eurimedon*,

don, as carefully as with *Arſacomes*; yet for all I ſhunn'd him, I could not keep him off, but growing more inflam'd by that Reſiſtance, he omitted nothing that could advantage his Deſign; and having found me one Day alone at my Cloſet-window, whither he came to me ſo ſuddenly that I had not Time to get away, Madam, (ſaid he) it is in your own Power to be at Liberty, and Sovereign in *Byzantium*; and if you did not diſdain my Services and my Perſon, I would quickly revenge and free you from the Tyranny of *Arſacomes*. Altho' I hated *Arſacomes*, as you well may judge, I confeſs I abhorr'd the Falſeneſs of *Eurimedon*, who voluntarily offer'd to betray a Man that had truſted him with his Life, and with that which was deareſt to him. This Knowledge made me hate him, and deſpiſe him the more; but thinking I ſhould be unwiſe to neglect the Means of recovering my Liberty, If you will ſerve *Berenice*, (ſaid I) as Vertue obliges you to do, the Gods will recompenſe ſo good an Action, and the King my Father will neither want Power, nor Will to acknowledge it. I deſire nothing but *Berenice* (replied he) for the Price of her Liberty; and for a leſs Recompence than that, I would not undertake a thing which in Appearance is worthy to be condemned. Perhaps I am not ſo deſpicable as you believe, for tho' the Gods have not made me Owner of a Crown, I am allied to thoſe that are, and I ſerve a Maſter from whom I may poſſibly hope for one. Serve that Maſter then in that Hope (ſaid I, being extremely vext) but never ſerve ſuch a Miſtreſs as *Berenice*, with Hope of a Recompence that is too far above you. With theſe Words I left him, and tho' he follow'd me to proſecute that Diſcourſe, I no longer would afford him any Attention.

He was not at all the colder for my Diſdain; but his Paſſion rather increaſing to my Misfortune, he every Day gave me ſo many Signs of its Violence, that I had a great deal of Reaſon to fear it might make him at laſt abuſe his Power. He began not long after to threaten me with it, or at leaſt to make me know by his Diſcourſe, that I ſhould not do well to drive a Man into Deſpair, who was able to do whatſoever he would, and

and that perhaps he could not always continue so much master of himself, as he had been since the Beginning of his Love; and in the End it blinded him so far, that losing all manner of Discretion, it came at last to the Knowledge of *Arsacomes*. He was most violently transported when he perceiv'd it; and as soon as that Belief was settled in his Mind, Rage and Indignation entred so powerfully with it, that he was ready to go and kill *Eurimedon*, tho' he saw his infallible Ruin in that Action: *Astiages* dissuaded him from that furious Resolution, and if his Words were not able to moderate that Fury, they at least wrought so far as to make him hearken to less desperate Propositions. Neither of them doubted but that there was a Necessity of leaving *Byzantium*, and of seeking a safer Retreat otherwhere, but they were a long Time e're they could think of one, and that Uncertainty kept them for some Days in a very great Trouble. In the End, *Astiages* thought he had light upon what they studied for, and made a Motion to *Arsacomes*, which he gave Ear to, it not being without some Ground of Reason. Sir, (said he) since you can find no Safety in *Scythia*, nor with any of the neighbouring Princes, whom the Consideration of *Matheus* would hinder from protecting you, make your Retreat to *Alexander*, he is no Friend to the King of *Scythia*, having lost two Armies, and two Generals against him, and without doubt nothing but his great Employments have made him defer the Design he has to invade his Territories: if you retire to him, and let him know that by the Credit, and by the Intelligence you hold in *Scythia*, you can facilitate his Conquest of it, he not only will hearken to your Proposition, and receive you very favourably, but will consider you as a Prince useful to the Augmentation of his Greatness, and protect you against the King of *Scythia*, and against all Enemies whatsoever. Moreover, when he shall hear that your Rival is the Son of *Darius*, whose Empire he now is Master of, and who while he is alive, may trouble him in that Possession, you need not question but he will help you against him with all his Power, and use all the Strength he has to ruin him. Having *Alexander's* Assistance and Protection, there is nothing any more

more to be fear'd, for your chiefeſt Enemies will be too weak to hurt you when once you are ſo powerfully ſupported; he readily will give you *Berenice*, and if to the Intereſt of your Love you deſire to join that of your Revenge, you may ask him Juſtice againſt *Eurimedon*'s Infidelity. *Arſacomes* approv'd ſo well of this Counſel of *Aſtiages*, that he immediately reſolv'd to follow it; and after having a Thouſand Times embrac'd the Giver of it, they began to deliberate what Courſe they ſhould take to eſcape from *Byzantium*, not doubting but if *Eurimedon* ſhould ſuſpect their Intent, his Love would make him oppoſe my Departure, and perhaps thruſt him upon worſe Reſolutions.

When they had long conſulted, they at laſt agreed that *Aſtiages*, by a conſiderable Sum of Money, ſhould gain the Maſter of one of thoſe Barks that uſe to carry Perſons over the Paſs at *Byzantium*, that after having won him to his Devotion, he in the Night ſhould carry over the Chariot and the Horſes that had brought us, which ſhould be left on the other Side the Water, under the Cuſtody of ſome of his Servants, and that the next Night following they ſhould get me out of my Lodging, to go over altogether in the ſame Bark. They found no great Difficulty in this Deſign, becauſe *Eurimedon* miſtruſted nothing, and becauſe I ever had the Liberty to go abroad whitherſoever *Arſacomes* would; beſides, by reaſon of the Tranquility they were in at that Time, there was no Guard kept either at the Gates or Haven, ſo that if *Eurimedon* were advertiſed of their Enterpriſe, it was not eaſy for him to prevent it. *Aſtiages* went away immediately about it, and had as fortunate Succeſs as he could wiſh, that very Day he gain'd the Maſter of a Bark by a conſiderable Preſent, and having diſpoſed him to all that he deſir'd, he at Night ſent the Chariot over, and the Horſes, which he truſted to the Care of three of *Arſacomes*'s Servants, who by his Direction ſet them up in one of thoſe Houſes, that are about Fifty Furlongs from the little Town on this Side of the Water. *Arſacomes* paſs'd the next Day in a great deal of Fear and Impatiency, and when Night was come, *Eurimedon* and he ſtaid in my Chamber till the Hour I was wont to retire;

retire; then they both withdrew together, but *Eurimedon* went to his Lodging, and *Arſacomes*, having walk'd Two or Three Turns in my Gallery, came again into my Chamber with *Aſtiages*; his Return cauſed ſome Apprehenſion in me, not being uſed to ſee him come back at ſuch an Hour; but he quickly put me out of Doubt, and coming to me with ſomething a troubled Countenance, Madam, (ſaid he) all your Servants are not ſo full of Reſpect as *Arſacomes*; for tho' the Power my Fortune has given me, has not made me forgetful of that I owe you, *Eurimedon* cannot ſay the ſame; he is reſolv'd, Madam, to take that by Violence, which he has not been able to obtain by Perſuaſion, and if you ſtay here but a Day longer, you'll feel the Effects of that Authority you now are under. I know I ſhall die in your Defence, but my Death will not be able to ſecure you; therefore I had rather give up all my Hopes, and carry you back to the King your Father, than leave you to the Mercy of this faithleſs Man. Diſſembling *Arſacomes* had coined this Invention, for fear I ſhould cry out, or make any Noiſe when he ſhould take me out of my Chamber; and the Probability I found in what he ſaid, by the Knowledge I had of *Eurimedon*'s Paſſion, made me immediately believe him. I praiſed the Gods for putting him into ſo good a Mind, and looking upon him with a Countenance very different from what I ordinarily afforded him: If it be true, (ſaid I) that you will reſtore me to the King my Father, not only he and I will pardon you the Faults you have committed againſt us, but you will recover the ſame Place in his Affection you heretofore enjoy'd, and ſhall obtain as great an one in my Acknowledgment and in my Eſteem, as you in Reaſon can deſire. I am fully reſolved upon it, (replied *Arſacomes*) and tho' I knew you were left to me for ever, I had rather loſe you by doing you Service, than abandon you to treacherous *Eurimedon*. But Madam, (continued he) we muſt fly without any longer Delay, for if we let paſs this Night, without employing it to ſave you, there will be no Poſſibility to do it to Morrow. I am ready, *Arſacomes*, (replied I) nor ſhall I be leſs joy'd to eſcape the Tyranny of *Eurimedon*, than to return to the King

my Father. We must away then instantly (said he); all things are prepar'd for our Departure, and wait for us at the Gate of the City. There was no Body in my Chamber at that Time, but the Woman that came along with me out of *Scythia*, for I had sent away those *Eurimedon* had put to me. Wherefore, seeing I had free Passage out, I joyfully laid hold of that Occasion to save my self; and not being frighted with the Night, which might have caused some Apprehension in me, I gave *Arsacomes* my Hand more willingly than ever I had done in all my Life, and let my self be guided by him without any Torch, since in the Design we had, Darkness was more favourable to us than Light.

We got out of the House without any Hindrance, and went a-foot till we came to the Haven. I was so little acquainted with the Streets, that I never perceiv'd my Error; but when I saw my self at the Water-side, and that *Arsacomes* took me in his Arms to carry me into the Bark that staid expecting us, I found I had been deceiv'd; and recalling my first Resentments against *Arsacomes*, Ah! Traytor, (cry'd I) how much was I to blame, to believe thou couldst be capable of any vertuous Motion, and how fooliſh I was, to give Credit to the Words of such a faithless Man? Thou hadst found a Friend of *Eurimedon* very like thy self; but since I was to perish by the Infidelity of one of you, thou shouldst have let me die at *Byzantium*, without drawing out my Misfortunes longer by thy Perfidiousness. *Arsacomes* received these Words as he was wont to do those he had ordinarily from me; and I receiv'd that Loss of my Hopes with an Affliction that was like to have brought me to my Grave.

In the mean time, our Bark put off from the Shore, and within a while after, came to the other Side. I was taken out of it in spight of all my Complaints, and put into the Chariot that waited for us; we had no fresh Horses to change, and therefore were fain to travel more slowly than we had done in *Scythia*; and indeed there was not so much Danger for *Arsacomes* and his Crew, because the second Day we got out of *Eurimedon*'s Jurisdiction. I was in eternal Lamentations all the Way, my Tears

Tears run down inceſſantly, and in whatſoever *Arſacomes* ſaid to comfort me, I ſtill found new Matter of Affliction. Within a few Days I learn'd that *Arſacomes*'s Purpoſe was to retire to *Alexander*; and as he had found ſome Probabilities of ſettling his Fortune by that Deſign, I alſo found ſome Hope of Conſolation in it. I knew that *Alexander* was a generous Prince, an Enemy to thoſe that were Traitors to their Princes, as he had ſhewed in puniſhing *Beſſus*; that he had a great deal of Conſideration of Perſons of my Senſe and Quality; and moreover, that he had married *Statira*, to whom my Brother had been extremely dear, and who was the Siſter of *Artaxerxes*, to whom I was ſo, and from whom they had taken me away: I hoped, that by diſcovering my ſelf to that Great Queen, by giving her the Relation of her Brother's Life, and by letting her know how much he was concerned in my Loſs, I ſhould make her take ſo much Intereſt in my Fortune, as to grant me her Protection, and to procure the King her Husband's. This Thought did ſomething allay my Diſcontents, and gave me Strength to go through that Journey.

We overcame it without any other Troubles, ſave thoſe of my afflicted Mind, and we croſs'd through Provinces, and ſaw Towns, whoſe Names I know not. At laſt we arrived in this Country, but at our Arrival we heard that *Alexander* was dead the Day before, which News deprived *Arſacomes* of all his Hopes, and put him to think upon other Reſolutions. He would not go to *Babylon*, which he heard was in great Troubles, by the Conteſts that aroſe upon the Death of *Alexander*; but *Aſtiages*, who was in his own Country, provided a Place for him to retire to, and brought us to the Houſe of a Couſin of his, not above a Hundred Furlongs from this Place, and about Fifteen or Twenty from the *Euphrates*; we were very well received there by the Maſter of the Houſe, who ſhewed an Exceſs of Joy to *Aſtiages* for his Return, and for his Friend's ſake offered *Arſacomes* all the Services he could deſire of him.

His Houſe was very well built, and ſtrong enough to make ſome Reſiſtance in it; beſides, it was far from any High-way, encompaſſed with Woods, and very little in

Sight; we ſpent ſome Days there, with Conveniency enough to my Perſecutors, but with ſo great a Sadneſs to me, as was like to have put an End to all my Miſeries with my Life. Ah! *Arſaces*, how often did I complain of you, when I ſaw my ſelf deprived of the Relief I had expected from you; and then again, how often did I excuſe you, when I remembred the Order *Arſacomes* had taken in *Scythia*, to keep you from knowing whither we were gone? Then from the Complaints I had made againſt you, I fell into Lamentations for you, and not doubting but that you loved me well enough to ſeek after me, I could not think of the Grief my Loſs had cauſed in you, without becoming as ſenſible of your Sorrow as of mine. I had paſſed ſome Days in theſe Afflictions, when Opportunity made me undertake a thing above my ordinary Courage. The Knowledge *Arſacomes* had, that I was of no very adventurous Humour, made him leſs careful in keeping me, than he had been when firſt he took me; and ſeeing me now in a ſtrange Country, where I knew no Creature in the World, he left me at greater Liberty than before. The Seaſon then was very hot, and being got up one Morning before Day, to take the cool Air at a Window that look'd into the Garden, I ſtood there for a while, muſing upon my ſtrange Misfortunes: But ſcarce had the firſt Beams of the approaching Light diſcover'd the Proſpect of the Field, when that Sight made me think upon my Liberty. That Window was low enough to ſlip down into the Garden, by Tying my Sheets to the Bar of it, and I knew there was a Gate which gave Paſſage out of the Garden into the next Wood, and which was faſtened only with a Bolt on the Inſide.

Then I believed, that if by that Means I could get forth, I ſhould find ſome Way to get to *Babylon*, where I might addreſs my ſelf to Queen *Statira*, at whoſe Feet I hoped to meet a Sanctuary. This Thought was hardly come into my Mind, when I reſolved to put it in Execution, knowing that if I ſhould be taken again, my Condition could not be worſe than it was already. The Woman that came out of *Scythia* with me, lay in my Chamber, but ſhe was then aſleep, and uſed always to

ſleep

sleep so soundly, that one could not wake her without a very great Noise; that Assurance made me much the bolder, and so going to my Bed-side as softly as possibly I could, I got me ready in Haste, and taking my Sheets, tied them to one another, and having fasten'd them to the Window, the Desire of Liberty shut up my Eyes to all manner of Danger. I skipp'd down into the Garden as happily as I had contrived, and being gotten out, I put my self, tho' not without extreme Fear, into the first Path I met, hoping I should quickly find some body or other, that might direct me the Way to *Babylon*. I had thrown my Veil over my Face, and tho' I trembled exceedingly for the Danger I was in of making some ill Encounter, yet did I go so fast, that I presently got a good way from the House, and my Legs little accustomed to such Journeys, were extremely tir'd, and stood in need of Rest to carry me further. I was constrained therefore to sit down under certain Trees, where while I endeavour'd to unweary my Body, my Mind was perplex'd with terrible Disquiets; my Fear then began to make me see the Greatness and Difficulty of the Business I had undertaken, I considered the Dangers into which a Maid all alone, and a Maid apparel'd in a Habit rich enough to be observ'd, might fall, as well in the Remainder of the Way I had to go, as at my entering into the Town, before I could get unto the Queen. But all the Evils my Fear could represent, seem'd less to me than that I fled from, nor did I know any Peril so great, into which I would not have cast my self, to escape the Hands of my cruel Enemy. That Desire renew'd my Strength, and I rose up again with a Design to think no more of Resting till I came to *Babylon*. I had met with no body to learn the Way, but I saw the *Euphrates* within a Hundred Paces, and knowing it stood upon that River, I resolved to follow the Bank of it at a little Distance, nor had I walk'd very long before I discovered the Towers of that stately City. My Hopes were redoubled by that Sight; but alas! they were cruelly deceived, for when I had not above eight or ten Furlongs more to go, I heard a Noise behind me, and turning my Head in a marvellous Fright, I saw *Arjacomes* riding after

ter me as fast as ever he could; it was the Day he kill'd *Arsaces*'s Horse, and 'twas after me he was running when he met *Arsaces* and *Lysimachus* by the River-side, and by that Encounter interrupted their Conversation. Judge, if you please, of the Excess of my Grief, at that cruel Loss of the Hope I had conceiv'd, and exempt me from repeating the Complaints I made, and the Reproaches of *Arsacomes*. He took me in his Arms without alighting, and lifting me with a great deal of Strength, set me before him upon his Horse, and gallop'd back toward the House from whence I was flying, but he follow'd not the Bank of the River, for fear of some Encounter that might stop him; and presently after having met *Astiages*, who was riding after him, he did not want a Guide to find the Way. My ungrateful Fugitive, (said he to me) you see the Gods have not approved your Flight, since they have so little favour'd it, and you may judge by the little Care they have taken to deliver you out of my Hands, how much they blame and condemn your Cruelties. I was so dejected with my Grief, and so tired with my Journey, that I had hardly Strength to give him any Answer; and if I reply'd sometimes to what he said, 'twas only with a few interrupted Words, whereby my Resentments expressed themselves better than by any other kind of Discourse. In short, I was brought again to that House, or rather to that cruel Prison, where I since have passed so many wretched Days. *Arsacomes* being exasperated by this Accident, and by the unlucky Mischance of *Alexander*'s Death, which deprived him of the Hope of that Retreat and Protection he had expected from him, but more by the pernicious Counsels of *Astiages*, who incited him continually to make use of his Power, and who could not forbear, even in my Presence, to blame the Remainder of that Respect he still had toward me, began to use me otherwise than he had done formerly, and made me see by all his Actions, that I had Cause to fear the highest Outrages from him, if the Gods suffered me to be much longer in his Hands.

This Fear compell'd me to dissemble with him, and I often disarm'd his Fury by a feigned Compliance. But *Astiages*, who being less prepossess'd than he, discovered

my

my Intention better, press'd him every Day to seek Ways to satisfy himself, and by his Sollicitations corrupted him so far, that in the End *Arsacomes* forgot who I was, and no longer knowing me to be *Berenice*, whom he was wont to behold with so much Submission, ran on to that cruel Resolution, which was diverted by the Assistance of the Gods, and by the Valour of the Prince my Brother, whom they miraculously sent to my Relief.

The Princess made a Pause at these Words, and left the Princes Matter enough to entertain themselves with the Events she had related: *Lysimachus* told her the Discourse he had heard in the Wood between *Arsacomes* and *Astiages*; but scarce had she taken a little Breath, when she was sollicited by the Princes, and by the Amazon Queen, to let them also hear her last Adventures; and being willing to give them that Satisfaction, she went on thus:

You have been informed by *Hippolita*, that it was the Encounter of a Litter that made me leave her; but she could not tell you, that he whom I saw lying in it, was *Arsaces*, who according to what I guess by his Narration, was then removing to *Babylon*; his Paleness could not hinder me from knowing him, and after what you have heard of his Life, you cannot be ignorant of the Motions which were stirr'd up in me by that Sight, yet could it not have persuaded me, Brother, to leave you in the Condition you then were; but I believed I could do no less than use my Endeavours to see *Arsaces* again, and to shew him *Berenice*, whom he sought, and the finding of whom would put an End to all his Wandrings; this was my only Intention, and when I followed the Litter, 'twas with a Hope to overtake it quickly, seeing it went but very slowly, and to come back to my Brother again within a little while, as I had done but for the Hindrance I met withal, and then I had spar'd you both the Blood which you have mutually shed. I walk'd as fast as I was able, leaning upon *Alcione*'s Arm, when I unfortunately met with five or six Horsemen, who presently surrounded us, and having cry'd that I was *Berenice*, they leapt from their Horses, and putting up the Beavers of their Helmets, no longer concealed their Faces from

me. The first I cast my Eyes upon, was that Villain *Astiages*, and by him, with an incomprehensible Amazement, I saw *Eurimedon*. *Eurimedon* the Lieutenant of *Thrace*, from whose Persecutions I had fled with *Arsacomes*, and whose Presence was yet less supportable to me than his. To instruct you by what Encounter he was then with *Astiages*, you shall know that after my Departure, his Love to me had made him leave *Byzantium*, and not caring to lose his Fortune to obtain me, he had substituted his Brother in his Command, and with a greater Number of Men than *Arsacomes* had, was come in Pursuit of us with a Resolution to kill *Arsacomes*, and pull me out of his Hands.

But whether it were that he made not so great Speed, or took not the same Way, the Gods would not suffer him to overtake us. He was at last arrived at *Babylon*, where he had lain a while conceal'd, not being willing to be known in the Design that brought him, and not having been able to learn any News of me there, he had spent a great many Days in seeking me about the Country, but all his Search had been to no Purpose, till the Day my Brother kill'd *Arsacomes*, and laid *Astiages* for dead, with a Blow of his Gauntlet. As soon as that wicked Fellow had recovered himself again, he went directly to the Place where *Arsacomes*'s Body lay, and finding there was no Life in it, when he had lamented his Loss according to the Affection he bore him, he caused him to be taken up by some of his Servants that were come thither, and was carrying him to the House of our Retreat, when he was surprized in that Employment by *Eurimedon* and his Party. *Eurimedon*, as soon as he knew *Astiages*, ran at him with his Sword drawn; but *Astiages* finding he was too weak, had cast himself at his Feet, and appeased him by the Promise he made to serve him in the Recovery of *Berenice*.

Hereupon *Eurimedon* had changed his Threats into Protestations of Friendship, and having learnt all that *Astiages* knew of *Arsacomes*'s Destiny, he had kept him from that Time, to make use of him for the Execution of his Promise. They had together caused *Arsacomes* to be buried, and meeting in each other a great Conformity of Disposition,

fiction, they by little and little had baniſh'd their Diſtruſts, and Heart-burnings, and had reſolv'd to ſeek me together in a Country, from whence *Aſtiages* believ'd I could not be gotten very far.

Eurimedon had been careful to win *Aſtiages* by all manner of Kindneſſes, and *Aſtiages*, who in the Condition of his Affairs, ſtood in need of a Support againſt thoſe whom his Crimes had made his Enemies, had really engaged himſelf to do him Service, and unfeignedly ſought Occaſions to ſatisfy his Deſires. He alſo had brought him to the ſame Retreat where we had been, and which *Arſacomes*'s Servants had quitted after their Maſter's Death, and from thence it was that they were come, when my cruel Deſtiny made me fall into their Hands. *Eurimedon* appeared tranſported with Joy at that Encounter, and taking one of my Hands, which he kiſs'd whether I would or no, How great is the Goodneſs of the Gods, (ſaid he) ſince they reſtored me the adored Princeſs I had loſt, after having puniſh'd him that ſtole her from me. I was ſo extremely ſurprized at this unhappy Accident, that I neither had Strength nor Courage to reply; but only pulling away my Hand from between his, and looking upon him with a diſdainful Eye, I made him know, that if my Sight was a Contentment to him, his produced a quite contrary Effect in me; but this Encounter ſurprized not me alone, for *Alcione*, who was with me, was like to have fallen down dead, when ſhe ſaw *Aſtiages*, and *Aſtiages* who knew after he had ey'd her a good while, was ſo aſtoniſh'd at that Sight, that as impudent as he was, he had much ado to recover himſelf. In the mean Time *Eurimedon* being got again on Horſeback, and having ſet me before him, by the Help of one of his Servants, carried me toward that curſed Houſe, which my ill Fortune had choſen for the Retreat of my Raviſhers. *Aſtiages* having overcome his Amazement, did the ſame to *Alcione*, and in ſpight of our Cries, which made all the Plain to ring, and of all the Reſiſtance we could make, after having many Times eſcaped, and many Times been taken again, we were at laſt partly on Foot, and partly on Horſeback, carried or dragg'd to that Houſe, with all Violence in the World;

Aſtiages's Friend, who was as wicked as himſelf, lent it him very readily, as well out of his Inclination to Miſchief, as his Expectation of thoſe Recompences *Eurimedon* made him hope for.

As ſoon as we both were Priſoners, as I had been before, *Eurimedon* came to me, and putting on all the Mildneſs he could, alledged his Love to excuſe his Violence, pray'd me to take Heart, and to believe that his Paſſion ſhould never make him exceed the Bounds of that Reſpect he ow'd me, and that if I would but take ſome Pity on it, I might expect any thing in the World at his Hands, and even my Return into *Scythia*, and the Regaining of that Liberty *Arſacomes* had robb'd me of; he alſo proteſted, that if I had ſhew'd him but any Favour at *Byzantium*, he would from thence have carried me home to my Father, and that if by my future Carriage, I did not oppoſe the Intention he had to ſerve me, I ſhould quickly ſee an End of thoſe Miſeries, that haſt coſt me ſo many Sighs and Tears. He ſaid a great deal more to me, but I gave no Ear to him at all, and having learn'd by *Arſacomes*'s laſt Deceit, never to believe the Promiſes of wicked Perſons, I was nothing moved by his; but looking upon him with an angry Eye, Hope not (ſaid I) to work upon me by the Hopes thou giveſt me, I will not receive any Favour or Aſſiſtance from thee, but ſcorn thy Services, as much as I hate and deſpiſe thy Perſon. *Arſacomes* himſelf was not ſo odious to me as thou art, for tho' he were unworthy of my Affection, he had many Advantages above thee, both by his Birth and Qualities, and by the Services he had done me, which ſhould ſtrangle thoſe guilty Hopes thou haſt conceiv'd, and make thee know, that if the Gods have puniſh'd his Crime with Death, thou oughteſt to expect a much ſeverer Recompence for thine. Moderate thy Ambition, (continued I, preſently after) and conſider, that if the Daughter of a King be to be ſerv'd by *Eurimedon*, 'tis only as a Subject, or a Houſhold Servant. *Eurimedon* found Matter of Offence in theſe Words, but his Love made him digeſt them, and my Quality, or ſome other Conſiderations did indeed give him ſome Reſpect which left him not the Courage to execute his wicked Intentions.

Poor

Poor *Alcione*, the Companion of my Fortune, who was then my only Conſolation, was in no leſs Affliction than I, not being able to behold the Face of *Aſtiages*, the only Cauſe of all her Sufferings, and of the Death of her dear Huſband *Theander*, without falling into Swoonings which brought her almoſt to her Grave.

Yet that ſhameleſs Fellow came into her Preſence with a brazen Impudence, and when he could make her hear him, *Alcione* (ſaid he) for I dare not call you Siſter, you have ſuch a ſtrange Averſion againſt me, let us henceforth forget all that's paſt, and ſuffer me to make a Conceſſion to you which I never made before. I ever lov'd you, and if the Conſideration of *Theander* made me ſilent, know, it was my own that made me jealous of *Cleonimus*, and not that of *Bagiſtanes*. The Intereſt of that Kinſman ſhould not have perſuaded me to trouble the Repoſe of my Brother, who was much dearer to me than he, and you well may judge that that Compliance alone would not have been able to carry me on to ſo great Extremities. Forget therefore thoſe Injuries which my Love may excuſe, and with them forget *Cleonimus*, who either is no longer in the World, or elſe no longer remembers you; and if you will receive me for your Huſband, I will ſupply the Place of *Theander*, we'll re-unite our Fortunes and our Houſes, and you ſhall be no leſs happy with me, than you were heretofore with my Brother. Poor *Alcione* was not able to hear theſe impudent Words from a Man whom ſhe had ſo much Cauſe to hate, without being tranſported with a Rage which ſhe could not poſſibly diſſemble.

Aſi! Monſter, ſtain'd with thy Brother's Blood (cried ſhe) thou Monſter, black with a Thouſand Treacheries, canſt thou think me capable to hear thy horrible Propoſitions? And hadſt thou yet this laſt Crime to commit, to be the moſt deteſtable of all Men living? Having ſpread thy Villanies both in *Europe* and *Aſia*, doſt thou come back into this Country, to give them a Concluſion ſuitable to them, and to thy ſelf? If *Cleonimus* be dead, thy Crimes have kill'd him; and if he no longer remember *Alcione*, 'tis only his Virtue has made him forget her, and 'tis only thy Vice that brings her again into thy Memory,

Memory. But be confident, be confident wicked Wretch, (purſued ſhe) thy Love is yet more cruel to me than thy Hatred, and I ſooner will conſent to ſee thee a ſecond Time be the Death of what is deareſt to me in all the World, and alſo of my ſelf, than to let thee hope that I will make *Theander*'s Murtherer his Succeſſor. *Aſtiages*, in whom all Shame was quite extinguiſh'd, hearken'd without bluſhing to theſe Reproaches, but ſtill by all his Actions endeavoured to make *Alcione* believe that he was really in Love with her. In theſe Torments we liv'd till the Time of our Deliverance, having hardly an Hour free from the Perſecutions of our cruel Enemies. The Maſter of the Houſe where we were, had obtain'd a Protection from the Officers of this Army, to the End your Forces might not indamage any thing that belong'd to him, neither did any of the Soldiers ever come near his Houſe, and he leaving it to *Aſtiages*'s Diſpoſing, went every Day into your Camp, and feigning to be very well affected to your Party, fought only to ſecure his Houſe, and his Eſtate; the Care he took in Favour of his Friend, did much advantage the Deſign they had to lie concealed for many Conſiderations. *Eurimedon* knew that Prince *Lyſimachus*, whoſe Lieutenant he was, was one of the Commanders of your Army, and after the Fault he had committed in leaving *Byzantium*, at a Time when there was moſt Neceſſity of his being there, durſt not appear before him. And *Aſtiages*, blaſted with Crimes, and defam'd in his Country, had not the Confidence to ſhew himſelf. And indeed I think they were ſeen but by very few, and if one of them went out ſometimes, he left us under the Cuſtody of the other, with ſo exact a Watch, that all Means of Liberty were utterly cut off. Yet did I hope in the Aſſiſtance of my Brother, who I knew was ſo near us, though I much fear'd his Wounds, and could never get any true Information concerning them from our Landlord; I was confident he would take Care to make me be ſought after, and that if the Place of my Impriſonment could be but known to him, I doubted not but he would eaſily reſcue me out of the Hands of my Enemies.

I alſo

I alſo knew that *Arſaces* was in this Country, and dar'd to hope that his coming hither was for no other End but to ſeek me; and I may truly proteſt, that if I had not expected Relief from one of you, I had put an End to my Miſeries by ſome Effect of my Deſpair. I receiv'd the ſweeteſt Conſolations from *Alcione* that ſhe could poſſibly invent to give me, and the Affection ſhe expreſſed to me, had oblig'd me to love her ſo dearly, that there was nothing in my Heart I did not utter to her; ſhe knew all the Particulars of my Life, and took ſo great an Intereſt in them, that ſhe forgot her own Misfortunes to bewail mine, and bore all the Afflictions which infamous *Aſtiages* made her ſuffer, with an admirable Patience, that ſhe might be able to comfort me in all my Griefs.

Our cruel Guardians were neither at the Battle you gave, nor in any of the Encounters that paſs'd, but while ſo many Thouſand Men were fighting in this Plain, they kept within Doors, where their only Combates were againſt *Berenice* and *Alcione*. In the End, whether it were they believ'd they could not longer ſtay ſecurely in that Houſe, and that they had a Mind to ſeek ſome other Retreat that might be further from your Army, or that *Eurimedon* had a Deſign to carry me back to *Byzantium*, or to ſome other Place where he thought himſelf more powerful and more abſolute, they reſolv'd to leave that Houſe, and to perſuade us to be ſet on Horſeback to go along with them; they often ſwore they would carry us to the Place where they had taken us, ſince by all their Submiſſions they had not been able to ſoften our Hearts, nor make us loſe the Averſion we had againſt them. I gave no Credit at all to their Words, and yet I was eaſily perſuaded to get on Horſe-back, that I might leave that deteſted Houſe, hoping that in the open Field I ſhould find many more Occaſions to ſave my ſelf, than in that Priſon from whence I went, with a Hope which had not ſo ſtrongly flattered me till then. *Eurimedon* had ſent away ſome of his Servants the Day before, and had kept with him, beſides *Aſtiages* and his Kinſman, who went alſo with us, only Three of his Men, well arm'd and well mounted. With this Company we were riding

riding in a Way which seem'd to lead us toward *Babylon*, when we saw a Cavalier compleatly arm'd, coming upon the same Road. We being desirous to interest all those we should meet, in our Deliverance, had our Faces unveil'd, and that Man had no sooner cast his Eye upon *Alcione*, as he was passing by, but he stopt short, and presently after turning about, and coming back again, began to ride at a little Distance by our Ravishers; but keeping his Eyes fixt upon us, with an Action that displeased *Eurimedon*, in whom all Objects were sufficient to beget a Jealousy, Friend, (said he) travel on your Road whoever you are, and leave not your Way to follow us, unless you seek your own Destruction. The Stranger was not at all terrified with that Threat; but looking boldly upon *Eurimedon*, I know the Ladies that are with you, (answered he) and before I go away from them, I'll know whether they go along with you willingly or by Force. Ah! 'tis by Force, (cried we both together) and if you were not too weak against so many Enemies, we would implore your generous Assistance. You shall have it as weak as I am, (replied the Stranger) and I will die in the Design of delivering you, since I am not strong enough to effect it. He had not ended these Words before his Sword was drawn; and with a most warlike Garb had prepar'd himself to receive *Eurimedon*, who transported with Anger, fell instantly upon him with all his Men. The Gods guided the first Blow he made; and tho' *Eurimedon*'s Sword gave him a light Hurt in the Arm, his luckily finding way under *Eurimedon*'s Cask, ran him thro' the Throat, and opening a Passage for his Blood and Life together, made him tumble dead among the Horses Feet. The Stranger, after this gallant Blow, rush'd into the Midst of his Enemies with an admirable Courage, but they inviron'd him so furiously, that he quickly was wounded in many Places, and his Horse kill'd between his Legs: Yet had he the Satisfaction to see *Astiages*'s Cousin fall to the Ground before him, who being run quite thro' the Body, lost his Life for the Quarrel of his Friend. This kindled him with so great a Rage, that re-doubling his Blows upon the valiant Stranger, who prepar'd himself

ſelf to diſpute his Life a-foot with the Help of a Tree, againſt which he ſet his Back, he in ſpight of that marvellous Reſiſtance, being ſeconded by his Companions, would have ſeconded the Death of *Eurimedon*, and of his Friends, if the brave *Demetrius* had not come in to his Relief, and had not for the Preſervation of his Life, and the Recovery of our Liberty, finiſh'd what he ſo generouſly had begun.

You have heard what he did for our Deliverance, and how he gave that gallant Stranger (who preſently after was known to be *Cleonimus*) the Means to ſave himſelf, and to kill *Aſtiages's* faithleſs Kinſman, and his ancient Enemy, but not without being ſo extremely wounded, that notwithſtanding all the Care that has ſince been taken of him at *Polemon's* Houſe, this is the firſt Day the Phyſicians have given any Hope of his Recovery, in which I am concern'd as much as I am oblig'd to be, by the Service he did me, and by the Conſideration of *Alcione*, whom I dearly love.

Thus did the Princeſs conclude her Recital, and *Arſaces*, who for all his Impatiency at ſome Paſſages of it, had heard it to the End without Interruption, fell then into a very paſſionate Diſcourſe, whereby he let her ſee how infinitely he was concern'd in the Afflictions ſhe had ſuffer'd. The Heavens be prais'd, (ſaid he) fair Princeſs, who after having expos'd you to Misfortunes, for which in Probability you were not born, reſtore you now at once this Brother ſo great, and ſo dearly lov'd, and (if in the Number of your other Happineſſes I durſt count this laſt) your faithful *Arſaces*, whom by the Remembrance of your Loſs, and by the Tranſports of this cruel Jealouſy, you have been like to loſe, and for whom you have had the Goodneſs to preſerve your ſelf. He ſaid a great deal more to that Effect, and after that *Orondates*, with the other Princes, and Queen *Thaleſtris* had ſeconded him with the like Diſcourſes, the whole Company retir'd, to leave the Night to *Arſaces*, who probably ſtood in need of it, having ſpent the greateſt part of the Day in this Narration. *Lyſimachus* and *Ptolomeus* waited upon the Princeſſes to *Polemon's* Houſe, and being afterwards come back into their Tents, paſs'd the

Night

Night all of them, if not with a perfect Reſt, at leaſt with leſs Diſquiets than thoſe they were wont to feel.

The next Morning *Lyſimachus*, *Ptolomeus*, *Oxyartes* and *Eumenes* came to *Oroondates*'s Tent, where they found *Arſaces* in ſo fair a way of Amendment, as made them hope he would be abſolutely cured within a few Days. All the Princes teſtified the Exceſs of their Joy; and after they were ſet down by the Bed-ſide, *Lyſimachus* addreſſing himſelf to *Arſaces*, Sir (ſaid he) I proteſt to you, by all the **Gods**, and by the Reſpect I owe to *Pariſatis*, that the moſt ſenſible Diſcontent I now am touch'd with, is that of having been one of thoſe that have help'd toward the Ruin of your illuſtrious Houſe, and that I am tied to you and yours, by ſuch powerful Conſiderations, that this cruel Remembrance will ever give a Check to my moſt glorious Fortunes. It is true, Sir, I follow'd *Alexander* in the Conqueſt of thoſe Dominions that were the King your Father's; and that in the Diviſion that has been made of them ſince the Death of *Alexander*, *Thrace*, *Pontus*, and *Boſphorus*, are fallen to my Share: Theſe Provinces are big enough to form a Kingdom of a large Extent; but tho' by the ſame Right I were Poſſeſſor of all that are in *Aſia*, I would deliver them up freely to their lawful Prince. I therefore diveſt my ſelf of all the Pretenſions our Diviſion may have given me, and ſince it is not in my Power to reſtore you the whole Empire of the King your Father, I'll ſerve you to the laſt Drop of my Blood in the Deſign you may have to recover it. *Lyſimachus* had hardly ſpoken, when *Ptolomeus* who would not appear leſs generous than he, *Ægypt*, (ſaid he to the Prince) and *Arabia*, with part of *Africk*, ſhall alſo return to the Subjection of Prince *Artaxerxes*, for I never will accept a Crown, which I cannot hold, but from the Spoils of his. *Eumenes* made him the ſame Offers of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and thoſe generous Princes ſtrove who ſhould be forwardeſt to ſhew, that they knew how to deſpiſe Kingdoms, to render what they ow'd to Vertue. But *Arſaces* abuſed not their Civilities, and looking upon them with a very grateful Countenance, I prefer your Friendſhip (ſaid he) before the Provinces you offer me, and before all thoſe, which by the Rights

of

of War we have loſt; but the Generoſity you expreſs, ſhall never find me of ſo unworthy an Humour as to make a wrong Uſe of it. 'Tis not by that Way that I ought to riſe to the Throne again, nor will I receive that from all the Liberality of my Friends, which the Valour of my Enemies has taken from me. Therefore I proteſt to you by *Oroſmades*, by *Berenice*, and by my Honour, that all your Offers, and all your Intreaties, ſhall never be able to ſhake me from this Reſolution. Poſſeſs the Territories which now are lawfully yours, and which I ſee you command without Envy, and without Diſcontent; there are enough beſides in the Power of our Enemies to eſtabliſh a Monarchy great enough; and if you would not have *Darius*'s Son live as a private Man, I refuſe not your Aſſiſtance to re-conquer part of them. This was *Arſaces*'s Reſolution; and tho' the Princes, eſpecially *Lyſimachus*, ſtuck obinately to their Propoſition, it was impoſſible for them to overcome his Reſiſtance, or make him recede from what he had determined. Since *Artaxerxes* is alive (ſaid *Lyſimachus*) I never will command the *Thracians*, and if I will have a Kingdom to be worthy of *Pariſatis*, I muſt take it up of other Provinces than thoſe that belong to the Prince her Brother. 'Tis from my Enemies I ought to win Dominions, and not from Perſons whom I honour more than all the World. He ſaid a great deal more to the ſame Effect; but all was to no Purpoſe; for Prince *Artaxerxes* continued firm in his Intention. I cannot want a Crown (replied he) while I have ſuch Friends as you are, and if we muſt diveſt any of thoſe that are poſſeſs'd of our Inheritance, let us diveſt *Perdiccas* and *Leonatus*, rather than *Lyſimachus* and *Ptolomeus*; our Enemies have Provinces enough for you, and for me too, and the Empire of *Darius* (concluded he with a Sigh) may very well ſatisfy the Ambition of us all.

Oroondates, who was witneſs of this Converſation, and who never open'd his Mouth to interrupt it, admired the Magnanimity of both, and found Reaſons in *Artaxerxes*'s Refuſal, which perſuaded him to approve it. When from that Entertainment they fell upon another, *Oroondates* and *Lyſimachus* began to ſhew the Diſquiets they were

were in for their Princeſſes, of whom they could hear no manner of News, of whom *Arſaces* had made no mention at all in the End of his Diſcourſe, tho' he had been in *Babylon*, and that he continued a good while near thoſe that had taken them. The Diſcontent of theſe two Princes was preſently obſerv'd by the Company, and after the Cauſe of it was known, there was ſo much Reaſon found in it, that it could not juſtly be condemn'd. *Arſaces*, ſaid he, had heard nothing of them, but that the Rage wherewith he was then tranſported, had left him very little Care of inquiring; and after he had muſed a while upon that Conſideration, I think, Brother, (added he of a ſudden) we may learn the Truth of what's become of them by a Means that's not come into my Hand. You do not doubt but that my Intereſts now are inſeparably link'd with yours, and that tho' I were not tied to yours by thoſe of our Houſe, *Roxana*, *Perdiccas*, and all they of that Party muſt needs be my Enemies now, becauſe I know them to be yours. I ſhall chearfully fight againſt them with you; but before you give me a ſecond Battle, that which I owe to the Aſſiſtance I have receiv'd from *Seleucus*, obliges me to demand a Parley with him, and to uſe all my Endeavours to withdraw him from a Party, againſt which I am ready to declare my ſelf; if *Perdiccas* will make one at our Interview, he ſhall be admitted, and if you pleaſe to be preſent, Brother, you and I together will ſee them Two, and make our ſelves known to them; and if we cannot by Generoſity perſuade them to reſtore the Princeſſes my Siſters, we ſhall at leaſt know what we ought to fear or hope concerning them, and the Truth of the Condition they now are in. *Oroondates* and all his Friends lik'd very well of *Artaxerxes*'s Motion; and *Lyſimachus*, both for his own Intereſt, and the Deſire of keeping them Company, would gladly have been one, if his mortal Hatred to *Perdiccas* had not oppoſed all manner of Interviews between them. From this Diſcourſe (which was broken off by the coming in of *Craterus*, *Oxyartes*, *Antigonus*, *Demetrius*, *Polyperchon*, and many other chief Commanders) they fell to that of the War, and of the Preparations they were to make for a ſecond Battle; and thoſe Princes to whom

Artax-

Artaxerxes's military Experience was known only by Report before, heard him ſpeak in Terms, which made them ſee, that for all he was but young, he had attain'd to as much Knowledge as the oldeſt and greateſt Captains in the World had ever had. Wherefore all thoſe great Commanders ſubſcrib'd to his Opinions, with a Readineſs which even wounded his Modeſty; and the Knowledge of his Quality, and of his Vertue, begot ſuch a Reſpect in them to his Perſon, as they had never given to any body but *Alexander*. There was not one amongſt them, who came not to pay him their Civilities with a great deal of Submiſſion, and very few, who according to *Lyſimachus*'s Example, did not offer to reſtore the Territories whereof they had already taken Poſſeſſion; but he gave them the ſame Anſwers he had done the former, and perhaps it was their Aſſurance of his Refuſal, that made them ſo forward in thoſe generous Offers. Within a little after, the Room that was left in the Chamber, was fill'd by the Arrival of the Princeſs *Berenice*, Queen *Thaleſtris*, the fair *Deidamia*, *Apamia*, *Arſinoe*, *Cleone*, and other Ladies; and when they after one another had inquired how the Two Princes did, that noble Company began an Entertainment, in which they ſpent moſt part of the Day. The next Morning Prince *Oroondates* left his Bed, and *Artaxerxes* found himſelf much mended, that he doubted not but within a Week he ſhould be as well as *Oroondates*.

The Princeſs *Berenice*, by her own Inclination, and by her Brother's Deſire, kept him Company for the moſt part, and that paſſionate Prince enjoy'd a Happineſs in her ſweet and charming Converſation, which made him utterly forget his Wounds. That fair Princeſs, whoſe Love was not inferior to his, drew Contentments alſo from his Sight, and from the Teſtimonies of his Affection, which were able to make Reparation for part of the Sorrows ſhe had undergone; and that long Deprivation of thoſe Joys which were then afforded them, made them far more precious to one another, than if they had not been interrupted: A Thouſand Times did lovely *Berenice* uſe little Reproaches to her dear *Arſaces*, for the Injuries he had done her in the Tranſports of his cruel Jealouſy,

and

and a Thouſand Times did happy *Arſaces*, (reading in her Eyes that her Anger was neither diſobliging nor dangerous) excuſe himſelf by a Silence accompanied with flaming Glances, and fixing his Lips upon one of her fair Hands, ſeem'd as if he would breath out his Soul there for the Expiation of his Faults.

Oroondates was joy'd to ſee the Satisfaction of theſe Two Perſons whom he lov'd ſo well, and the Happineſs of *Artaxerxes* was ſo dear to him, that he could not look upon his Contentments with leſs Delight than if they had been his own; but he could have wiſh'd a Fortune like that of his, and that Sight awakening the Remembrance of his old Felicities, drew Sighs from his Breaſt a Thouſand Times a Day. In the Interim, he buſied himſelf with the other Commanders in the Duties of his Charge, and all of them labour'd to put the Army in a Condition to fight another Battle; they cauſed their wounded Men to be carefully look'd to, their Arms to be mended, and alſo the Chariots that had been broken; they recruited their Troops with freſh Men that came up daily to the Army, and in ſhort all things tended to the cruel Preparation for a bloody Day. *Philoxides* brought a Reinforcement of Ten Thouſand Men out of *Ægypt* to *Ptolomeus*, *Antiſthenes* Six Thouſand to *Antigonus* out of *Phrygia*, *Lyſimachus* Four Thouſand *Syrians* to *Laomedon*, and within a few Days after with Six Thouſand *Cappadocians*, and *Paphlagonions*, which *Ariſtedes* brought for *Eumenes*, they ſaw the valiant *Menalippa* arrive with Ten Thouſand *Amazons*. *Thaleſtris* was not a little joy'd, when ſhe ſaw her Supplies were come, and moſt part of the Princes would needs wait upon that fair Queen to meet them, and with Admiration beheld the March, and Diſcipline of thoſe warlike Women. Their Queen receiv'd them with a great deal of Sweetneſs and Affection, and *Menalippa*, with the chief of her Companions, long imbracing her Knees, expreſs'd what an infinite Trouble her Loſs, or her tedious Abſence had imprinted in the Hearts of all her Subjects. The whole Army welcom'd theſe Succours very reſpectfully, and the Troops that were already quarter'd willingly yielded them the moſt commodious Place to

incamp

incamp in. They were in this Condition when *Arſaces* left his Bed, and that ſame Day his Satisfaction was increaſed by the Sight of his faithful *Criton*, whom certain Soldiers brought in, having taken him about the Camp, where he was ſeeking after his Maſter. *Arſaces*, when he had embrac'd him many Times with a moſt particular Affection, heard by him, that the Commanders of the Enemies Army, eſpecially *Seleucus*, had ſhew'd a great deal of Trouble for his Departure, and that not having been able to gueſs the Cauſe, they had imploy'd ſeveral Perſons to ſeek for him. This confirm'd *Arſaces* in the Deſign of ſeeing *Seleucus* and *Perdiccas* before the Battle, and with that Intent he impatiently waited for a more perfect Cure. In the mean Time, all the Princes being met together in his Chamber by *Oroondates*'s Counſel, would have deliver'd up the ſole Authority of the Army into his Hands, and preſs'd him to accept of it, with the moſt earneſt Intreaties they could invent to win him to it, but all their Perſuaſions would not ſerve; and after he had long refus'd all manner of Command, all they could obtain of him at laſt, was, that he would come in for the Seventh Man, to take his Turn among the Six other Princes, to whom the Army had already ſubmitted. They all receiv'd that Companion joyfully, and while he was recovering Strength, they often ſent out Parties; for knowing that the Enemies Army increas'd as well as theirs, they ſtrove to diminiſh their Number by frequent Skirmiſhes, in which there was much Blood ſhed every Day on either Side. Among thoſe that got greateſt Renown in thoſe Encounters, was the young *Demetrius*, who gain'd an extraordinary Reputation; and being of an Age to ſeek Occaſions to ſhew his Worth, he ſuffer'd none to eſcape without giving Proofs of a Valour that was far from common. Yet was it no longer Deſpair that thruſt him headlong into Danger, for his Heart had allay'd part of its Sorrow, by the Birth of another Paſſion; the ſad Remembrance of *Hermione*, had by little and little given Place to the Charms of *Leidamia*, and that Love of Aſhes and of Tombs had yielded to a more lawful Affection; the Current of his Tears were ſtopp'd, and his Words were no longer

inter-

interrupted with ſo many Sobs, but his Sighs continued ſtill tho' they had chang'd their Object, and tho' this laſt were leſs deplorable than the former, it was ſo powerful, and ſo imperious, that thoſe timerous Meſſengers of his Love durſt hardly venture to make their Paſſage out of his Breaſt. Yet did he reſiſt the Birth of this latter Paſſion, and oppos'd the Force of it with all the Remembrances of *Hermione*; but tho' thoſe ſorrowful Ideas ſerved his Intention for a few Moments, the ſight of *Deidamia* conquer'd all thoſe Obſtacles, and diſſipated all his Reſolutions. That fair Princeſs wept daily for a Loſs which was ſtill freſh in her Memory, and at firſt *Demetrius* had contented himſelf with weeping with her, confirming her in the Deſign of loving the Remembrance of her dear *Agis* eternally; and if in the beginning he had found ſome Conſolation in the Humour, and in the Deſtiny of that Princeſs, he now deſired an Alteration in them both. He had inſenſibly dry'd up his Tears to become her Comforter, whoſe Companion in Affliction he had been before; and in ſhort, as he had before lamented only his own Misfortunes, ſo now he ſeemed to have forgot them, to become ſenſible of *Deidamia*'s. She, who had obſerved the winning Qualities of *Demetrius*, who knew his Birth, and who (beſides) found her ſelf oblig'd to his Civilities, and to the Care he took for her Conſolation, and for her Fortune, ſhew'd him a great deal of Acknowledgment, and beheld him with more good Will than all the reſt; but being her Grief was very lively, and very real, and that her Heart in that Condition was little capable of a ſecond Affection, all her Inclinations to *Demetrius* went not beyond the Limits of Eſteem and Gratitude, and he whoſe Paſſion ſettled it ſelf with a moſt profound Reſpect, and who was more afraid of *Agis*, for all he was dead, than of all his living Enemies, knowing *Deidamia*'s Mind, durſt neither complain of his Condition, nor deſire one more advantageous. He thought it not enough to forbid his Tongue the Uſe of Speech, but would alſo keep even his Eye, and Sighs from diſcovering his Paſſion, and equally fearing to offend, both what he began, and what he ceaſed to love, he tied himſelf up ſtrictly in a very narrow Conſtraint.

In

In theſe Terms he ſtood, when the whole Army was ready to try the Succeſs of a ſecond Day, and *Arſaces* being then well enough cured to ride on Horſeback, and to fight, approv'd of the Reſolution which he knew all his Companions had, to ſend and preſent their Enemies Battel within Three Days. They had Intelligence by Spies that were return'd out of their Camp, that their Army was no leſs recruited than theirs, and that from *Media*, *Lydia*, *Pamphilia*, *Caria*, and *Parthia*, there was a Re-inforcement of Five and Thirty, or Forty Thouſand Men come to them; and not being willing to afford them Time to make themſelves ſtronger, they with a general Opinion determined to ſend them a Challenge, and to agree with them both upon the Day and Field for deciding of their Quarrel. *Cleomenes* and *Ariſtides* were choſen for that Commiſſion; but before they went, *Arſaces* taking them aſide, informed them of what he deſired, and gave them Charge to demand an Intervenience of *Perdiccas* and *Seleucus* the next Day between the two Camps for him, and one of his Friends with all neceſſary Securities. The Deputies departed, having received their Inſtructions, and the Princes remained with the Ladies, who began already to tremble, and grow pale at the Approach of the Battel. *Berenice* was like to die with Fear for her dear *Artaxerxes*, and for the Prince her Brother, who ſhe ſaw eſcaped out of ſo many Dangers only to precipitate themſelves into a new one, and to try the Hazard of a Day, the Events whereof were very doubtful. *Apamia* and *Arſinoe* grew wan for their dear and noble Husbands; *Deidamia*, for all ſhe was exempt from loving any Body that was alive, was not without Fear for her worthy Friends, and among all, the Princeſs from whom ſhe hoped for Support, ſhe beſtowed her particular Wiſhes for young *Demetrius*. Only *Thaleſtris* appeared fearleſs among ſo many timerous Princeſſes, and making ſome Attempts to baniſh out of her Mind the Remembrance of *Orontes* which afflicted her, ſhe ſhew'd her ſelf at the Head of her fair *Amazons*, both fairer and chearfuller than ordinary, her Satisfaction was cauſed by their Arrival, and ſhe could not diſſemble the Contentment ſhe receiv'd, by being able to aſſiſt thoſe Princes with

with her Forces, whom till then she had only serv'd in her single Person. The two Camps being not far asunder, *Cleomenes* and *Aristides* were not long ere they return'd, whereupon the Soldiers ran thronging to the Tent of *Antigonus*, who commanded that Day, and where the Princes were then assembled. The Answer they heard was such as they desired, for *Cleomenes* told them that the Enemies had gladly received their Proposition, and that *Perdiccas* had promised to expect them the third Day, with a Hundred Thousand Men in the next Field. All the Company welcom'd this News with joyful Cries, and the Rumour of it going out of the Tent, ran presently from one to another, into all Parts of the Camp. Afterwards *Cleomenes* turning toward *Arsaces* to give him an Account of his whole Negociation: Sir, (said he) I have followed your Orders, and having declared your Intention to *Seleucus*, he appear'd so astonisht to hear you were in our Party, that of a great while he was not able to answer me; in the End, after he had made some Complaints of your Change, he conferr'd with *Perdiccas*, and they both together promised me, that to Morrow as soon as the Sun is risen, they will be upon that little Hill which you see on the Right-hand, and what is just half way between their Army and ours; *Arsaces* was very well pleased with this Answer, and hoping for a good Success of that Parley, he imparted his Thoughts to Prince *Oroondates*, with whom he walked a while upon the Bank of the River. The rest of that Day was spent in their ordinary Employments, and the next Morning as soon as Day appeared, the Princes of *Scythia* and *Persia* called for their Cloaths and Arms, and no sooner had they got them on, but they took Horse, and rode directly toward the Place *Cleomenes* had told them of. They arrived there first, but presently after they saw them coming whom they expected, and *Arsaces* no sooner knew *Seleucus*, but he gallop'd up toward Him, and the same did *Oroondates* by his Example. When they were near, they saluted one another in a Fashion that had nothing of Enmity in it, and tho' *Oroondates* were unknown to *Perdiccas*, (whose Weakness had not suffered him to observe his Face when he had been succour'd by him) his graceful

ful Preſence working the Effect that was uſual to it, mov'd *Perdiccas* to nothing but Reſpect. After the firſt Salutation, *Arſaces* prevented *Seleucus*, who open'd his Mouth, probably to uſe ſome Reproaches againſt him; You wonder, brave *Seleucus*, (ſaid he) to ſee me in your Enemies Party, but when once you know me, you will wonder more that ever you ſaw me in yours. I know I am indebted to you for my Life, but you ſhall alſo know that I have fought for you againſt Nature, againſt Juſtice, againſt my neareſt Friends, and even againſt my ſelf, and that perhaps few Men in the World would have preferred the Obligation I have to you, before the Intereſt which now has pull'd me from you; yet as great as it is, it is not able to make me forget a Friend ſo worthy of Eſteem as is *Seleucus*; and I was very deſirous to ſee him, to juſtify my ſelf in his Opinion, and to beg the Continuation of a Friendſhip, which I no longer can hope for from thoſe of his Party. I never thought (replied *Seleucus*) it could be out of Inconſtancy that *Arſaces* had forſaken us, and I have found Courage, and Gratitude enough in you, for a Service of ſmall Importance, to believe they muſt needs be very weighty Conſiderations that had made you to become our Enemy. Yet could I not hear it without Trouble, nor (if I may ſay ſo to you) without Reſentment, ſince by the Promiſes of Friendſhip you had made me, I believed ſuch a Man as you are ſufficiently engaged. Say, (added *Perdiccas*, who had not ſpoken till then) that no Party can loſe a Man like *Arſaces*, without being very much weakned; that the great Actions we had ſeen him do in favour of us, will not ſuffer us to bear his Loſs without complaining of it; and that in ſhort, (if we may uſe ſuch a Reproach) we had given him no Cauſe, by the Uſage he received from us, to carry his Aſſiſtance to our Enemies. That I gave to you, (replied *Arſaces*) as it is my greateſt Crime, ſo would it alſo be my greateſt Remorſe, if it were not excuſed by what I owed to *Seleucus*, and by the Tranſports of a Paſſion to which I had then given my ſelf over. In brief, *Perdiccas*, ſince you know what I have done for you, learn what I ought to have done againſt you, by learning that I am the Son of *Darius*.

Thoſe Princeſſes, whom you brought to the very brink of Death, and whom you now keep Priſoners, are my Siſters; and to give you a fuller Knowledge of me, he who pulled *Statira* out of your Arms, and who, upon the Banks of *Euphrates*, made you, with part of your Blood, to ſatisfy for the Offence you committed againſt her that had been your Queen, was no other than this *Artaxerxes*, who ſince has fought for you, againſt the Protectors of his Blood, and the Revengers of his Quarrel, and this *Artaxerxes*, who now ſpeaks to you. The Confuſion of *Perdiccas* and *Seleucus* was exceeding great at this Diſcourſe of *Artaxerxes*, and being they had heard by common Fame that *Darius*'s only Son had been dead many Years, they could not learn that he was alive, and that he was *Arſaces*, without falling into an unparallell'd Amazement. They ſhould have doubted of the Truth of theſe Words, if they had heard them from the Mouth of a Perſon, whoſe Soul had been leſs great than his; but not knowing how to ſuſpect ſuch a Man as *Arſaces* of a Lie, they conſidered him from Head to Foot, with more Reſpect than before, and were not able to open their Mouths to give him any Anſwer. Neither did the Prince afford them Leiſure, but going on with his Diſcourſe, while their Aſtoniſhment had ſtruck them mute; Altho' I am the Son of *Darius*, (purſued he) I come not to reproach you as Enemies of our Houſe, and tho' *Perdiccas* hath uſed thoſe Princeſſes unworthily, whom he ought not to have beheld but with Reſpect, I know nevertheleſs that he employ'd his Induſtry to ſave their Lives; and that but for his Care they might perhaps have been Sacrifices to *Roxana*'s Cruelty; this Remembrance ſtifles part of my Reſentments, and obliges me to make a further Trial both of *Seleucus*'s Friendſhip, and *Perdiccas*'s Generoſity, to obtain the Liberty of my Siſters; Compleat the Glory of that Action, O *Perdiccas*, which you did in favour of them, and reſtore us a Queen, and a Princeſs which are of too illuſtrious a Birth to continue your Captives any longer! *Artaxerxes* demands his Siſters of you, and *Oroondates*'s Miſtreſs, the deſire of gaining ſuch a Friend ſhould make you forget your Intereſts, and if you cannot become his by the Recital of his admirable

admirable Actions, conſider him as a Prince, who twice has been the Author of your Safety; he ſecur'd you once from the Revenge of *Lyſimachus*, and after our Combate upon the River-ſide, he aſſiſted you again, tho' conſidering you as *Statira*'s Murtherer, one would have thought he ſhould rather have given you a Thouſand Deaths, than the Succour you receiv'd from him. 'Tis this miraculous Man, whoſe Vertue wins him Idolaters in all Places; 'tis he whom at the Head of his Troops, you have ſeen defeat your Battalions alone, and carry'd Victory which way ſoever he turn'd, he under whoſe Valour I have ſunk two or three ſeveral Times, and he——'Say no more, (interrupted *Oroondates*, whoſe Modeſty could not ſuffer *Arſaces*'s Diſcourſe any longer) theſe Praiſes offend our Friendſhip, and 'tis enough you told *Perdiccas Artaxerxes* loves me, to obtain the Favour you demand of him in my Behalf. *Statira* is without doubt indebted to him for her Life, and I ſhall be indebted to him for *Statira*, and alſo for my Life, if he generouſly can conquer his Intereſts, and if he will grant that to our Requeſts, which he has refuſed to the Threats, and to the Force of ſo potent an Army as that of ours. *Perdiccas*, who during the Diſcourſe of the Two Princes, had had Time to ſettle his Aſtoniſhment, and to recall to Mind the Wounds *Artaxerxes* had given him, and the Shame *Oroondates*, for all he was unknown to him, had made him ſuffer, when at the Head of his Army he had overthrown him on the Ground at the firſt Encounter, conſidered thoſe Two Princes, but 'twas *Oroondates* as his Rival, and *Artaxerxes* as his Enemy: And recollecting all his Confidence to reply, I am very glad (ſaid he) to know Perſons with whom I have had Encounters of no ſmall Importance, and with whom I ſhall not fear the like again, tho' Fortune ſeconded them in the former; I have been wounded by your Hand, *Artaxerxes*, and by that Occaſion that made us fight, you know *Statira* is alive, and moreover that ſhe is alive by my Aſſiſtance; I therefore will not tell you ſhe is dead, as all other Men have hitherto been made believe, and I have too much Intereſt in her Life to ceaſe to defend it, while the Gods afford me mine. *Statira* is alive, but ſhe's not alive for *Oroon-*

dates; altho' the good Office he did me, were ſufficient Weight to counterbalance what he hath done againſt us; and altho' what *Arſaces* has done for us, were able to make me forget the Wounds he gave me, neither of them ought to hope for that from me, which I would not part with for all the Empires of the World; nor doth any Rule of Generoſity oblige me to give that to my Enemy, and to my Rival, which I would refuſe to my deareſt Friends, and even to *Alexander* himſelf, if he were yet in a Condition to make uſe of the Power he once had over me. But thou ſhalt (replied impatient *Oroondates*) thou ſhalt either give *Statira* to that Enemy, and to that Rival, or elſe that Life which thou haſt already been like to loſe by the Sword of each; I expected nothing from thee, and if I did abaſe my ſelf ſo far as to entreat thee, know thou oweſt that forcing of my Inclinations only to the Power *Artaxerxes* hath with me.

If I were not with-held by the Promiſe I have given him, perhaps thou never ſhouldſt return into thy Camp, to boaſt of the Advantages thou haſt over me; and thou ſhouldſt quickly know, that if *Statira* be not alive for *Oroondates*, ſhe never ſhall be ſo for *Perdiccas*. Think not (replied *Perdiccas*, putting his Hand upon the Hilt of his Sword) that thy Threats can terrify me, or that I will take Advantage by the Promiſe thou haſt given thy Friend; I'll defend *Statira*, both againſt thy Perſon, and againſt thy Forces, ſhe is in my Power, ſhe is in *Babylon* with her Siſter, and that which I have hitherto kept ſecret for other Conſiderations than thine, ſhall now be publiſh'd to the whole World, to engage thee ſo much the more to execute what thou haſt threatned.

Oroondates ſuffer'd himſelf to be tranſported with his Anger, and would without doubt have decided his Quarrel with *Perdiccas*, if he had not been with-held by *Artaxerxes*, who ſtill conſidering *Seleucus* as a Man to whom he was obliged, deſired to ſhun the Occaſion of drawing his Sword againſt him. It is an eaſier Matter, (added the Prince of *Perſia*) for ſuch Perſons as *Oroondates* to execute than to threaten; but I ſhould have hoped that *Seleucus* (continued he, turning toward him) would have uſed ſome Endeavour to draw *Perdiccas* to

more

more vertuous Thoughts. If I had not hitherto (replied *Seleucus*) known a great deal of Vertue in *Perdiccas*, and a great deal of Juſtice and Integrity in all his Actions, I would never have been his Friend; but I am ſo now in ſuch a high Degree, that I ſerve him without arguing againſt his Intentions, and without conſidering any other Intereſts but his. Then I am diſengaged (ſaid *Artaxerxes* briskly) of Part of what I owe you. I acquit you of all, (anſwered *Seleucus*) and ſince you are *Perdiccas*'s Enemy, I cannot look upon you as other than the Enemy of *Seleucus*. I will not be ſo far his Enemy, (replied the Prince) but that I ſhall remember I am obliged to him, and ſhall diſcern him always from the reſt of his Party. They had ſaid more, if *Oroondates*, who could no longer endure the Sight of *Perdiccas* without breaking forth into Rage, had not haſtened their Separation: Let's away, Brother (ſaid he to the Prince) and ſtay no longer with Enemies, with whom we muſt henceforth converſe no other way but with our Swords. Farewel *Perdiccas*, (continued he, looking upon him with an Eye that ſparkled with Fury, and with an Eye which as reſolute as he was, did a little daunt him) defend *Statira*, ſince thou haſt undertaken it, but know the Day draws near when thou ſhalt reſtore her to me, and all the Blood in thy Body with her. He ſaid no more, but pulling *Arſaces* by the Arm, made him without other Salute turn from his Enemies, whom he left with very threatning Words and Actions; yet in the midſt of all his Anger, he carried away no ſmall Satisfaction, in having learnt from *Perdiccas* (who till then had diſavow'd it) that *Caſſandra* was in *Babylon*; and ſince he was aſſur'd of the Place of her Abode by him, who knew it better than any body elſe in the World, he hop'd he ſhould recover her by Force, tho' his Enemies were yet ſtronger than they were, and tho' *Babylon* were defended with a Hundred Walls, like that wherewith it was encloſed.

As ſoon as the Two Princes were returned to the Camp, all the Commanders came about them, to hear what had been the Succeſs of that Interview; and they gave them an exact Account of all that had paſs'd be-

tween them. Dear Companion of my Fortune, (said *Oroondates* to *Lysimachus*) our Princesses are in *Babylon*, and from henceforward we no more can doubt of their life, nor of the Place of their Captivity; but we must win them with the Edge of the Sword, for *Perdiccas* prepares to defend them with his utmost Power. *Perdiccas*'s Defence (reply'd *Lysimachus*) will be but weak against the Valour of *Oroondates*, and perhaps *Alcetas* has not conquer'd all the Difficulties he has yet to encounter for the obtaining of *Parisatis*. After these Words, the rest of the Day was spent in necessary Preparations for the Battle, and the next Morning all the Troops were carefully overlook'd, their Number exactly taken, and the several Battalions were disposed, according to the Order they intended to observe. The Day of Battle happen'd to be that of *Oroondates*'s Command, and all the Officers in whom that Prince's Vertue had made a wonderful Impression, shew'd an extreme Contentment that it so fell out. Yet *Oroondates* would have shar'd that Glory with his Companions, but they opposed his Intention so stiffly, that it was impossible for him to make them consent; and even *Arsaces* himself, whom he press'd to it by all the Considerations of their Friendship, persisted formerly in the Resolution of the rest, and contenting himself with the Glory he had gain'd at the Head of the *Scythian* Army, would needs see his dear Brother, at that of so many gallant Men, and leave him the whole Honour of that memorable Day.

Oroondates being in the End constrain'd to yield to the Desires of his Friends, protested that nothing but Obedience made him accept of an Advantage, to which his Ambition never had aspir'd, and afterwards by their Advice he disposed of the Forces on this Manner: He divided them into Four Bodies, as at the other Battle, the first of which was given to the valiant *Arsaces*; 'twas with an exceeding Joy, and with a marvellous Hope of Victory that they saw so great a Man obey'd by the Conquerors of the greatest part of the World; and with them they that had been his Father's Subjects acknowledged their Prince, and submitted to him with an extraordinary Affection. That Body was composed of *Bactri-*

ans,

ans, and *Zogdians*, under Prince *Oxyartes*, who desired to unite himself to the Fortune of his Nephew, and under *Cophes* the Son of *Artabasus*; of *Syrians* under the brave *Laomedon*, of *Lydians* under *Menander*, and of *Cappadocians* under the generous *Eumenes*. The second Body was given to *Lysimachus*, consisting of *Thracians*, and of the Inhabitants of *Pontus*, and *Bosphorus*; of *Egyptians* and *Arabians* under *Ptolomeus*, who would needs fight that Day by the Side of his dear Friend, and of *Cilicians*, under the Conduct of *Orestes*, the Brother of their deceased Commander *Philotas*. The third was assign'd to the great *Craterus*, and under him marched the valiant *Macedonians* that were lately of *Alexander*'s Guard, with *Polyperchon*, who desired to fight at the Head of them; the *Africans*, Subjects of *Ptolomeus*, under his Brother *Menelaus*; as also the *Armenians*, and *Mesopotamians*, who wanted Leaders since the Death of their Princes *Phrataphernes*, and *Archesilaus*, who with their Sons had fallen by the Sword of *Arsaces*. The gallant Queen of the *Amazons* commanded the last, and tho' she would have refused that Charge, she was constrain'd to accept of it, by the most urgent Entreaties of all the Princes; she was follow'd by her courageous *Amazons* under *Menalyppa* and *Amalthea*, by the *Paphlagonians*, who were led by *Euristeus*, *Eumenes*'s Lieutenant, by the *Hyrcanians* under *Philip*, and by the *Phrygians* under *Antigonus*, who for all his Greatness, and the Height of his Quality and Reputation, would needs place himself that Day under the Banners of that valiant Princess: *Demetrius* had an Employment worthy of himself, which was a Body a-part, composed of six thousand Horse, that was to keep upon the Wings, and according to the Events and Necessities, to succour them that had need of his Assistance; and the Conduct of Two Hundred Chariots of War, arm'd with Scythes and Plates of Iron, and full of Archers taken out of the several Nations, was committed to young *Alexander* the Son of *Polyperchon*. The whole Army being thus disposed of, the Four chief Commanders took a Survey of those Troops that were to obey them, and during the Remainder of that Day, they shew'd themselves to the Soldiers, and instructed the Officers in those things they desired to

make them know. *Craterus*, who had the Command that Day, was careful to overſee the Arms, Horſes, Chariots, and the Field of Battle; and when Night was come, beſides the general Cares, every Man in particular was diverſly employ'd in Preparations for that important Day.

The Morning Light began newly to appear, when the Signal of Battle was ſet up on the Top of *Orœndates's* Tent, and the Sound of a Thouſand warlike Inſtruments, which were heard from one Camp to the other, rouz'd up thoſe that were faſteſt aſleep, and excited in the fainteſt Hearts a Courage which was not natural to them. The Prince of *Scythia* had not ſtay'd for it, but his Cares, and his generous Impatience had made him leave his Bed before the Break of Day. As ſoon as he perceived the Shining of the earlieſt Beams, I ſalute thee (cry'd he) O glorious Day, and thou bright Sun, the tutelary God of my Princeſs's Country, who To-Day art to give Light to an Action worthy of thy Preſence; if theſe Years, which my Love has covered with a gloomy Obſcurity, have paſs'd with ſome kind of Diſhonour to me, perhaps I To-Day may find Occaſion to make my Fortune alone be accuſed of part of thoſe Faults which have hitherto reflected upon me. My Arms, (continued he) my Arms; and preſently after *Leucates* having brought them, he put them on with the Help of *Araxes*, who buſied himſelf in that Employment with a Joy which he drew from the Contentment of his Maſter. They were the ſame he wore in the former Battle, as well becauſe he had try'd their Goodneſs, and for Love of the Prince that had given him them, as to make himſelf the more eaſily known to *Perdiccas*, againſt whom he had now turn'd all the Anger which before was chiefly againſt *Arſaces*. There had been but very few with him at his Riſing, becauſe he was one of the firſt up in the whole Camp, but his Arms were not quite on, when his Chamber was full of Officers of the Army. He with them went out of his Chamber to go into that of *Arſaces*, whom he found out of Bed, and with him *Oxyartes*, *Ilyoneus*, and many other noble Perſons, whoſe Affections that Prince's admirable Vertues had acquir'd. Brother, (cry'd *Orœndates* as he came in) To-Day we ſhall have

you

you to fight with us, and I hope we shall conquer, since in turning of our Side, you without doubt will make the Victory turn with you. Yes, Brother, (replied Prince *Artaxerxes*) we shall conquer, and if the Gods are not too much our Enemies, an Army commanded by *Oroondates*, and by so many valiant Princes cannot chuse but hope for Victory.

After these Words, and many others full of Modesty, and Civility, they received *Lysimachus*, *Ptolomeus*, and *Craterus*, and by little and little all the considerable Men of the Army. *Bereniee*, *Apamia*, and the other Ladies, whom the Apprehensions of that Day had waken'd sooner than ordinary, came thither also. *Apamia* and *Arsinoe* openly shew'd the Fear they were in for their dear Husbands; and *Berenice*, tho' she endeavoured to dissemble part of hers, or to make the Opinion of it fall upon her Affection to her Brother, could not keep the Company from discovering, that tho' *Oroondates* was very dear to her, yet her greatest Disquiets were for *Artaxerxes*. *Oroondates* observed it with much Joy, and as jealous as he had been of him for another, he envied not his Friend the Precedence in his Sister's Affection. 'Twas in her Presence *Artaxerxes* called for his Arms, which had newly been presented to him by his Uncle Prince *Oxyartes*; they had been *Darius*'s, and were the same he wore when under the Name of *Codoman*, he by a memorable Combate had added *Armenia* to the Crown of *Persia*, and the Prince's Son having kissed them, out of the Respect he owed unto that Memory, could not put them on without solemnizing that Remembrance with some Tears, nor without drawing some by his Action from the Eyes of *Oroondates*, and *Oxyartes*, with the rest of their Companions. As *Darius* had been the greatest, and most magnificent King in all the World, his Arms shewed Tokens of his Magnificence, and of his Greatness, and the Gold and Stones of Value wherewith they were enriched, afforded no sight of the Matter whereof they were made; so that when the Prince had put them on, he look'd like fierce *Achilles* in those gallant Arms whereon *Vulcan* at the Request of *Thetis* had set forth the utmost of his Skill. All the Princes went out of the Tent together to-

be preſent at the Sacrifices that were going to be offered thro' the whole Camp, and by the Zeal they teſtified in that Action, made the Soldiers know that 'twas rather from the Gods than from their Valour they ought to expect the Succeſs of that dangerous Day; the Prieſt found nothing ominous, either in the Smoak or in the Entrails of the Beaſts, and ſome among them having eſpied an Eagle flying toward the Left-hand, drew a Preſage from thence, that gave them a very great hope of Victory.

The Troops began preſently after to march out of their Entrenchments, and were drawn up in the Plain by the Care of *Eumenes* and *Polyperchon*, while *Arſaces* took a leave of *Berenice*, which ſhe could not give him without breaking forth into Sorrow, and while Prince *Oroondates* attended by his faithful *Araxes*, gallop'd thro' all the ſeveral Diviſions, and by his Words and Preſence ſtirr'd up a Deſire to fight in the Hearts of the veriеſt Cowards; the Princeſſes were already retired, all the Commanders were at the Heads of their Battalions, and the Forces being quite drawn up, marched toward their Enemies in gallant Order; they had mov'd but a little Way when they perceived them, and from a riſing Ground ſaw all the Field of *Babylon* covered with Men and Horſes. Their Order was no leſs beautiful than that of our Princes, nor their March leſs conſiderable. *Perdiccas* had divided his Army into ſix Battalians; the firſt compoſed of *Macedonians*, *Parthians*, and the Inhabitants of Mount *Caucaſus* was commanded by the valiant *Seleucus*. *Caſſander* led the ſecond, conſiſting of *Cavians*, *Lycians*, and of the invincible *Argiraſpides*. The third obeyed *Lacnatus*, and under him marched the *Pamphilians*, the *Oraches*, and the *Argeans*. The fourth was under the Conduct of *Alcetas*, in which were the Inhabitants of the two *Mediaes*, the *Pelaſgians*, and thoſe *Zogdians* that were not under the Juriſdiction of *Artabaſus*. The fifth, whoſe Leader was *Neoptolemus*, was made up of natural *Perſians*, and the Inhabitants of *Suſiana*, and thoſe of that part of *Bactria*, which was under the Obedience of *Scythens*. *Peuceſtas* brought up the laſt, and was followed by the *Babylonians*, *Bellites*, and the Soldiers of *Mariana*. *Python* had the Charge of Two Hundred and Fifty arm'd

arm'd Chariots, and *Statanor* that of Five or Six Thousand Horse, which were a Reserve for the same Purpose as those of *Demetrius*.

The two Armies were no sooner within sight but they saluted one another after the usual manner, and all the valiant Commanders of each Side, animated by the present Objects, and by the Resoluteness they observ'd in their Soldiers Faces, shew'd a generous Impatience in their own, and forgot not any Thing belonging to their Charge that could conduce unto the Victory. *Lysimachus*, *Ptolomeus*, *Craterus*, *Thalestris*, *Eumenes*, *Polyperchon*, and *Demetrius*, appear'd at the Head of their Troops like so many invincible *Alcides*; *Arsaces* was before the first with a more than human Presence, and with a Majesty worthy of his high Birth, which begot Love, Respect, and Fear in all that beheld him; and Prince *Oroondates*, fuller of Business than all the rest, seem'd also to be greater and handsomer than ordinary, and the Action wherewith he was animated, made a Fire appear about his Face, which dazel'd the Eyes of all that consider'd him. He had already wearied two Horses with riding about to every Rank, nor did he forget any of his natural Eloquence to inflame the coldest Hearts with a desire of Victory. 'My valiant Companions, (said he to those that could 'hear him) I am unworthy to command these invincible 'Forces, which under a Leader worthy of them, have 'vanquish'd all the Earth; but since I have the Glory to 'fight with you to Day, I shall also have the Glory to 'conquer with you. I to less generous Persons should 'represent the interest you all have in this Victory, I 'should make some of you desire it by the hope of inestimable Spoils, others by that of Rest, which after 'such tedious Labours you well may wish for, and all 'by that of the high Reputation your Arms have given 'you, and which from the Issue of this Day expects its 'last Establishment: But to the Conquerors of the 'World, to the Masters of the whole Earth, what can a 'Stranger promise; what can he make be hop'd that is 'not far below them; and what Belief can they have in 'an unknown Person, whose most glorious Advantage is 'that he holds to Day from the Goodness of your Princes,

'and

'and of your ſelves? It ſhall therefore be neither Spoil 'nor Glory that I'll propoſe to you, but the Revenge of 'your great King, and the Safety and Liberty of your il-'luſtrious Queen: 'Tis againſt the horrible Murtherers 'of *Alexander* you are to fight, and from thoſe very Mur-'therers you demand nothing but the Widow and Siſter 'of that victorious King. Beſides the Quality that Al-'liance gave them, their Birth is conſiderable to many of 'you; and I aſſure my ſelf, that among Troops of ſo 'many ſeveral Nations, which heretofore were under the 'Obedience of the worthily deplored *Darius*, there are a 'great Number who yet hold his Memory in Venera-'tion. Allow ſomething, (valiant Men) allow ſome-'thing to that Remembrance; the Son of that great King, 'more conſiderable by his Virtues than by his Birth, 'fights on your Side to Day, and forgets whatever ſome 'of you have done againſt his Houſe, to turn all his Re-'ſentments againſt your Enemies. You will infallibly 'conquer, being ſupported as you are, both by the Ju-'ſtice of your Quarrel, and by the Courage of ſo many 'brave Commanders who fight at the Head of you: If 'your Foes are valiant, as without doubt they are, ſince 'they heretofore were your Companions, and that they 'ſhar'd with you in the Honour of ſo many Conqueſts; 'if they be harder to vanquiſh than thoſe Nations you 'have overcome without Reſiſtance, the Victory over 'them will be much the more glorious, and you may 'boaſt, that after having ſubdued *Aſia*, and the greateſt 'part of *Europe* and *Africa*, you at laſt have conquered 'the only Enemies that could diſpute the Prize of Valour 'with you'. *Oroondates* had hardly ended theſe Words, when the Soldiers, by loud Acclamations, teſtified what an Impreſſion they had wrought upon them, and at the ſame time, they were come ſo near their Enemies, that it no longer was in the Power of the Generals to bridle their Impetuouſneſs.

The laſt Signals were given on either ſide, and the Troops marched up with ſuch a Fury as could be com-par'd to nothing but it ſelf. On one ſide the great *Aryſa-ees*, and on the other the brave *Seleucus* began that bloody Day, and the foremoſt Ranks of each Party, after having exchang'd

exchang'd a Cloud of Arrows, closed to a nearer distance, and drawing their Swords fell without delay to handy Blows. Their valiant Leaders who equally sought for Glory where the Danger was greatest, and who knew not one another by reason they had chang'd their Arms, ran fiercely to the Charge, and having broke their Javelins upon their Shields, which they mutually opposed against their Strokes, they shock'd each other with an incredible Violence. *Arsaces* was disorder'd in his Seat, and *Seleucus* was like to have lost his, yet did he settle himself again with a great deal of Agility, and by his Readiness in drawing his Sword, cover'd part of the Disadvantage of that Encounter. These two great Men being in the middle of their Troops, had not the liberty of a lasting Combate, but were both constrain'd by the Throng that parted them, to carry Death to other Persons. *Eusrates* the Son of *Axiarchus*, Prince of the Inhabitants of Mount *Caucasus*, with his Brother *Evagoras*, were the first that found it under the Sword of *Arsaces*, and tho' they had Courage, and that they charg'd him both together, their Attempts were to no purpose against him, and received a different Death, one by the Point, the other by the Edge of his keen Sword.

From these he passed on to other Enemies, disdaining common ones to chuse out those that were more terrible; *Oxyartes*, *Eumenes*, *Cephes*, and *Ilyoneus*, endeavoured to follow him amongst the thickest; but though they did Actions worthy of their great Reputation, *Arsaces* open'd their Way whithersoever he turn'd, and in all Places left bloody Marks of his having passed. *Seleucus* and his Men contested for the Advantage with wondrous Courage, and the hand of *Seleucus* had already laid *Cephes* in the Dust, and given two dangerous Wounds to *Ilyoneus*; but then *Perdiccas* made *Cassander* advance with his Battalion on the Right-hand, and *Leonitus* with another on the Left. The falling on of the fierce *Argiraspides*, who gave Death to all that came before them, soon made the Victory incline toward *Perdiccas*'s Side, and if Prince *Oroondates* in Person had not brought up *Lysimachus* with his Troops, those of *Arsaces* would have been in manifest danger. *Demetrius*, by the same Order, assaulted *Leo-*

natus

natus alſo at the ſame Time, but with ſuch Vigour, that he preſently trampled under Foot whatſoever oppoſed his Paſſage. This double Re-inforcement chang'd the Form of the Battel, and all *Perdiccas*'s Advantage was loſt in a Fight of more Equality; but *Python* then appear'd with his arm'd Chariots, and ruſhing on with them into the Enemies Infantry, did very conſiderable Execution. *Oroondates* commanded one young *Alexander* with his, which making a no leſs bloody Slaughter, return'd a cruel exchange to the contrary Party. Then it was that the Face of the Battel became more horrible, and Death ran through all the Ranks in many hideous and diſmal Forms.

Oroondates having diſengag'd himſelf of the firſt Cares of his Command, began to fight now in his own Perſon; and after he had ſlain the firſt that withſtood his Fury, ſought *Perdiccas* amongſt all his Enemies, and made his Name reſound which Way ſoever he went. *Perdiccas* avoided not the Combate, but he was inviron'd by a Number of his Friends, to whom *Oroondates*'s Valour was well known, and who by the Trial they had made of it in the former Battel, were afraid with Reaſon for their General, and oppoſed the Deſign he had to ſtand the Fury of that dreadful Enemy. *Oroondates* hew'd open his Paſſage to them, but not without Difficulties, and Dangers wherein any other Man but he would have been loſt. *Python*, who at the Head of his Chariots made a lamentable Maſſacre of the Foot, having a while beheld his admirable Actions, notwithſtanding the Hazard he ſaw in that Reſolution, had yet the Boldneſs to encounter him, and remembring in how many Perils he had out-brav'd pale Death under the Command of *Alexander*, he thought that without Diſhonour he could not ſhun that laſt.

With this Belief he oppoſed *Oroondates*'s Paſſage, and charg'd him with ſo weighty a Stroke, as made the Prince of *Scythia* know the Vigour of his Enemy; but he ſoon gave him better Proofs of his, for with his Shield receiving thoſe Blows wherewith he ſeconded his firſt, he with one ſingle Thruſt, in the Default of his Cuiraſs, found Entrance to the Seat of Life. That famous Captain

opening

opening his Arms fell dead at the Feet of *Agenor* his youngeſt Son, who, not willing to ſurvive his Father, inſtead of giving him the laſt Aſſiſtance, ran deſperately as a Lion to his Revenge; Cruel Man, (cried he to the Prince) ſince thou haſt kill'd my Father, either die, or kill me alſo. As he ſpake theſe Words, he ruſh'd precipitately upon him with ſo little Circumſpection, that in the Point of the Sword yet wreaking with his Father's Blood, he found the End of that Life, which he no longer would preſerve. *Nearchus*, a moſt intimate Friend to *Python*, flew upon this Murtherer with a great many others, but the furious *Scythian* made Way amongſt them like a Thunder-bolt, and ſending ſome of the forwardeſt to bite the Ground, laid *Nearchus* himſelf there alſo, having given him two very dangerous Wounds. This Action was in the ſight of *Perdiccas* and of his Friends, who altogether ran upon *Oroondates* with terrible Cries, and with *Perdiccas* whom he ſought, had like to have made him alſo find his Death. Yet did he lay about him with a more than manly Fierceneſs, and there came but few Blows from his Hand, that drew not ſome of the Enemies Blood. He had deſcried *Perdiccas* in the midſt of them, and 'twas at *Perdiccas* he ruſh'd headlong thro' the claſhings of a Hundred Swords. Are theſe (cried he to him) the Effects of thy gallant Reſolution, and of thy Love? Come out of that Croud, which ſaves me from thy Valour, and if thou art a worthy Succeſſor of *Alexander*, ſhun not the Sword of thy Rival, and of thine Enemy.

Theſe Words receiv'd no Anſwer, but the Blows of a great many Swords at the ſame Time; and without doubt that obſtinate Prince had met his Death among ſo great a Number of Foes, if the Gods had not ſent *Arſaces* and *Lyſimachus*, with a Troop of valiant Men to his Relief. *Arſaces* was all dyed in Blood, and *Lyſimachus* had ſhed ſo much, that his Arms were read all over with it. Thoſe two brave Princes having found *Oroondates* in ſo great a Danger, Courage, (cried they both together) we muſt Conquer, we muſt take Revenge, and breaking into that Ram art of Men which ſheltred *Perdiccas* from

the

the Prince of *Scythia*'s Fury, quickly leſſen'd their Number, and with Actions worthy of themſelves, diſengag'd their gallant Friend.

Oroondates was ſorry he had neglected the Care of a General, to follow his particular Revenge; and knowing that all the Enemies Army began to encompaſs them, ſent Word by *Alexander* to *Craterus*, and to the *Amazon* Queen, that they ſhould bring up the laſt Battalions to charge. This Order was preſently perform'd, and *Craterus* on the one Side, and that matchleſs Queen on the other, came into the Fight, preſently after *Alcetas*, *Peuceſtas*, and *Neoptolemus*. Then it was that the Maſſacre grew horrible, and that the famous Troops of *Alexander*, with the renowned *Amazons*, ſlew many Thouſand Men, whoſe Courage might have prolong'd their Deſtiny againſt other Enemies. But on the other Party, the *Macedonians*, and the invincible *Argiraſpides* made no leſs Slaughter of thoſe with whom they fought. Thoſe fearleſs Women, led by their warlike Queen, got Ground of *Neoptolemus*'s Squadrons; and *Thaleſtris* being engag'd in Fight with their Commander, after ſome Blows that paſs'd without Inequality, wounded him at laſt with many others, and made him fall under the Horſes Feet. No ſooner was *Alcetas* come up into the Battle, but *Lyſimachus* had fought him through all the Field, loudly defying him to the Combate, and by provoking Words inviting him to uſe the ſame Diligence on his Side; but *Alcetas* was not at Liberty to do ſo, for he was then exchanging Blows with *Demetrius*, and that with ſo little Advantage, that if his Friends had not deliver'd him out of the Hands of that young Prince, there was no doubt but he had loſt his Life. Among all the chief Commanders on either Side, there was not one but made himſelf remarkable that Day, by many Proofs of Courage. *Lyſimachus* did Actions beyond all the fabulous Heroes; *Ptolomeus*, thruſt on by an old Animoſity, cloſed often with *Seleucus*, but they ſtill were parted by their Men, and carried the Effects of their Anger otherwhere, which became fatal to divers valiant Soldiers. *Eumenes* fought all about for his ancient Enemy *Neoptolamus*, but the *Amazon* Queen had already diſpatch'd him

to

to his Hand. *Craterus*, *Oxyartes*, *Polyperchon*, *Antigonus*, and *Laomedon*, appear'd both in the Duties of Commanders, and in the Actions of Soldiers, worthy of their high Reputation. Part of the Day was passed without giving any probable Conjecture of the Success of that bloody Battel, when *Stasanor* (whom *Perdiccas* had reserv'd with Six Thousand Horse) advanc'd at the Orders he receiv'd, and came pouring down upon the *Amazons*. *Seleucus* on the other Side having rallied the *Argiraspides*; Invincible *Argiraspides*, (cried he) who have never fought but to overcome, will you suffer your selves to be robb'd of a Victory which is your due? And will you lose in one single Day that high Renown you have acquired in so many Years? Ah! Let us rather die together, and if we cannot be Conquerors, let us at least fall with a Glory worthy of the Memory of *Alexander*.

With these Words he ran foremost into the *Lydian* Squadrons, and having with a shock overthrown their Prince the brave *Meander*, he with two successful Blows slew *Cleobulus* and *Lesthenes*, the Sons of *Ariobarsanes*, who fought near his Person. The *Argiraspides*, encouraged by that glorious Example, gave such a furious Charge against the *Lydians*, and *Cylicians*, that having forc'd their Opposition, they made them turn their Backs, and began to pursue them with a terrible Execution. On the other Side the *Amazons* not having been able to resist the brunt of *Stasanor*'s Cavalry, had given back in spite of them; and those fresh Men falling in when they were tir'd with fighting, put them in so great Disorder, that they wanted but very little of being defeated. The valiant *Thalestris*, doing Wonders in her own Person, saw *Clytemnestra* and *Amalthea* fall dead at her Feet, and running headlong to their Revenge, her Horse was kill'd under her with a multitude of Wounds. The Danger in which she saw her self could nothing daunt her, but fighting a-foot with an invincible Courage, she made a heap of Bodies which for a while defended her from her Foes. Yet was she ready to have lost her Life, not being able to hope for any Relief from her routed *Amazons*, when

when the Gods brought *Arſaces* to her Aſſiſtance. The Name of *Arſaces* ſtruck a Fear into the Enemies Troops; but before he could make his Paſſage to the Queen, her Cask was fallen at her Feet, and her Head being unarm'd, would certainly have been wounded by the Hand of cruel *Statanor*, if the unexpected Sword of a Warrior, who appear'd upon a ſudden, had not ſlaſh'd off that ſacrilegious Arm, and with a ſecond Blow taken the Life of that barbarous Man, whom the ſight of ſo much Beauty had not been able to make relent. After this Action, that valiant Man ſlew *Sinus*, alſo the Prince of *Suſiana*, who was one of the eagereſt to kill or take the Queen, and gave the Son of *Scytheus* a mortal Wound. By theſe Exploits he ſcattered the Throng wherewith *Thaleſtris* was almoſt o'erwhelm'd, and had already procur'd her Means to get upon *Statanor*'s Horſe, when they ſaw the Foe gave way at the arrival of the redoubted *Arſaces*. *Arſaces* was follow'd by a Squadron of *Bactrians* and *Cappadocians*, who under ſuch a Leader quickly chang'd the Face of the Combate; for charging into the thickeſt of *Scytheus*'s *Suſians* and *Zogdians*, he not only ſtopt their Impetuoſity, but made them loſe the Deſign they had againſt the Life of their Enemies, to think upon the Preſervation of their own. How many courageous Men fell then under the Sword of great *Arſaces*, and how much Blood did he pour forth to the fair *Amazons* Revenge, and to *Darius*'s Memory; *Scytheus* was one of the firſt that felt his Fury, who being run quite thro' the Belly, fell without Breath in the middle of his Troops. *Arthous*, Prince of the *Belaſgians*, would have reveng'd his Friend, but he met a Deſtiny which differ'd only in this, that *Scytheus* received his Death by the Point of *Arſaces*'s Sword, and he his by the Edge; for both his Arms, which he had lifted up to diſcharge a Blow with all his Force on his Enemies Head, being cut off cloſe to his Elbows, he was carried away a while by his unguided Horſe, and tumbled at laſt among the Feet of the reſt, where he miſerably loſt his Life. That Warrior who had firſt relieved the *Amazon* Queen, ſeconded *Arſaces* with Blows little different from his, and *Thaleſtris*

leſtris being got on Horſeback, and having put on her Cask again by his Aſſiſtance, labour'd in her own Revenge with marvellous Animoſity. The *Amazons* rallied in a little Time, and being encourag'd by the Example of their Queen, and by the Help of the *Bactrians*, and of the *Cappadocians* their Neighbours, they came on afreſh with ſuch a Fury, that the Troops of *Statanor*, the *Syſians* and the *Zogdians* having loſt their chief Commanders, were no longer able to withſtand them, but having fought a while retiring, at laſt turn'd their Backs, and quitted the Victory and the Field together. The Conquerors ſeeing them routed, follow'd their Advantage with loud Cries; but in the interim on the other Wing of the Battle the Succeſs was very contrary. The *Argiraſpides* and *Macedonians*, led by the furious *Seleucus*, *Caſſander*, and *Perdiccas*, who then fought there in Perſon, after having broken the *Lydian* and *Pamphilians* Squadrons, were already enlarging their Victory upon the *Phrygians*, and by little and little were putting the better part of the Army in a Rout. They ſtill advanc'd like an impetuous Torrent which nothing was able to reſiſt, when the Gods, for the Safety of their Foes, brought Prince *Oroondates* to oppoſe them, who with *Ptolomeus* and *Lyſimachus* came from another part of the Battel, where his Preſence had been neceſſary. O Gods, how great was the Indignation of the Prince of *Scythia*, when he ſaw his defeated Troops flie ſhamefully before the Face of their Enemies? Certainly, it would be very hard to repreſent his Fury, but they that came in his way felt the prodigious Effects of it; he caſt up his terrible Brow on every ſide, and having a while conſidered that ſad form of Combate, he gallop'd before the chief of them that fled, and raiſing his Voice that he might be heard, Whither fly you, (cried he) valiant Men? Whither fly you? What Retreat have you if you loſe this Battel? What Walls to eſcape the Fury of your Conquerors? And how will you ſave your ſelves either from Death, or from eternal Infamy? Are you not the ſame Men that fought under *Alexander the Great*? and the ſame Men who but a few Minutes ſince had ſo gloriouſly begun

gun the Victory? By what Accident, and by what Losſes are you chang'd and weaken'd? In ſpeaking theſe Words he oppoſed their Flight with his Sword up, and ſtopping one of the chief *Lydian* Captains by the Arm, Stay, (ſaid he) and face about, ſee here are thine Enemies. By theſe Words, animated with an extraordinary Geſture, and ſeconded by others from *Lyſimachus*, and *Ptolomeus*, he made ſome of thoſe frighted Men take Heart again, but he encouraged them a great deal better by his Actions. Follow me, (ſaid he to them) do but follow me the Way that I will open to you; and at the ſame Time having obſerv'd *Seleucus* at the Head of the *Argiraſpides*, he judg'd that a good part of the Victory conſiſted in defeating him. He advanc'd toward him with a threatning Cry, and *Seleucus*, who ſaw him coming, expected him with a great deal of Reſolution; the firſt Strokes they gave were reaſonable equal, but tho' at another time *Seleucus* might have been able to make a long Reſiſtance; *Orondates*'s Force was then redoubled by his violent Anger, and he ſhew'd no ſmall Proof of it, when being cloſed with *Seleucus*, he lockt him ſo ſtrongly in his Arms, that clapping Spurs to his Horſe, he lifted that gallant Man out of his Saddle, and having carried him above Twenty Paces, let him fall quite aſtoniſhed among the Horſes Feet. *Caſſander*, to revenge *Seleucus*, ſtruck *Orondates* a blow behind; but the furious Prince turning about to him, made his Sword come down with ſuch a force upon his Head, that his Cask was deeply dinted by it; and *Caſſander* himſelf, having his Face bath'd in Blood, reel'd from his Horſe among ſome of his Men who were come up to his Relief. *Perdiccas* could not ſee theſe Actions without being terrified, yet having Courage enough to prefer Death before Infamy, did not turn his Back, but dar'd to ſtand the furious Prince, who knowing him by many Marks, flew at him as an Eagle at his Prey. Thou muſt die, *Perdiccas*, (cried he) thou muſt die for *Statira*, ſince thou art unworthy to live for her. With theſe Words he ruſh'd upon him with a Fierceneſs which made him grow pale under his Arms, and forc'd him to approve of the Help he receiv'd from thoſe about him.

With

With two Blows *Oroondates* gave him, he died his Arms in Blood, which came ſtreaming from Two ſeveral Places; but as eager as he was upon his Victory, he could not hinder *Perdiccas*'s Friends from thruſting themſelves between, nor from reſcuing him out of his Hands half vanquiſh'd and half dead. *Oroondates* took Revenge for the Diſpleaſure he receiv'd, upon ſome of thoſe that caus'd it; and at the ſame time, turning his Eye towards his own Men, he ſaw *Peuceſtas* and *Leonatus* fall by the Hands of *Lyſimachus* and *Ptolomeus*.

By theſe brave Examples, the *Phrygians*, *Lydians*, and *Pamphilians* ſtaid their Flight, and fac'd about to their Enemies with ſo great Reſolution, that they ſeeing themſelves depriv'd of thoſe valiant Commanders, who had animated them, had not enough to make Reſiſtance; eſpecially when they ſaw the brave *Demetrius*, follow'd by a good Body of Horſe, come thundering upon them, and *Craterus* alſo at the Head of the *Macedonians*. This ſecond Charge finding them wavering, utterly took away their Courage; ſo that of terrible Conquerors which they were a few Minutes before, they became timerous Runaways; and inſtead of Victory, which by ſo much Blood they had almoſt gotten, they only ſought to ſave themſelves by Flight. That Rout amongſt them was ſo general, that the ſtouteſt of them ſhamefully turn'd their Backs, and even the Two chief Leaders of the *Argiraſpides*, *Antigenes* and *Teutamus*, both wounded by the Swords of *Lyſimachus* and *Demetrius*, being eſcap'd out of their Hands, like feeble Birds out of a Falcon's Tallons, fled to avoid the Danger that threatned them, and by their Example perfected the Routing of their Men.

They are beaten, my valiant Friends, (cried Prince *Oroondates*) they are beaten, and if you neglect not the Advantages your Valour has given you, this is the laſt Day of the War, and of your Enemies. As he had ſaid theſe Words, he threw himſelf among them who yet made Oppoſition; the greateſt part of which were *Macedonians*, and having with the Troops that vigorouſly ſeconded him, water'd the Field with the Blood of thoſe that were moſt reſolute, the reſt (unable to ſuſtain his Violence) follow'd the Example and the Deſtiny of their

their Companions. From this part of the Battle, and from that where *Arſaces*, *Thaleſtris*, and *Eumenes*, had fought with the ſame Succeſs, the Rout ſpread over all the Field, and *Perdiccas*'s whole Party gave it ſelf up either to Flight, or to the Mercy of the Enemy; nor was there longer any fighting ſeen, but only Execution without Reſiſtance, and a lamentable Slaughter which for a long time the Commanders were not able to hinder. The *Amazons*, incenſed by the Loſs of their Companions, gave Store of Blood to their Revenge, and the People of the moſt cruel Natures, as the *Thracians*, *Arabes*, and *Hircanians*, not regarding Pity, covered the Ground all over with dead Bodies. Thoſe that could make uſe of the Swiftneſs of their Horſes, ſought Safety toward the Town, but the miſerable Foot either loſt their Lives upon the Place, or found their Deaths in the River, where they leapt in headlong to ſhun the Sword of their Enemies.

The Waters of *Euphrates*, which before were clear and pure, turn'd red with the Blood of many Thouſands, and ſeem'd to ſwell higher with thoſe Streams, which made a ſecond River upon their Banks. The renowned *Arſaces*, carried on by the Ardour of the Fight, had croſſed thro' ſo many Squadrons, that he at laſt was come near the Place where *Oroondates*, by his glorious Actions, had given the Victory to his Party, and ſeeking for Reſiſtance whereſoe'er he thought he might find it, was brought by *Seleucus*'s good Fortune, where that valiant Man, reduc'd to the laſt Extremity of his Life, was diſputing the Remainders of it a-foot againſt a Company of Soldiers, who but for his Arrival had certainly made an End of him. *Arſaces* having heard ſome body name him, and knowing him by divers Marks, he who tho' he had not known him, and for all he was an Enemy, wou'd not have ſuffer'd ſo brave a Man to be ſlain, rode up before all his Soldiers, and by re-doubled Cries, ſtopping the Fury of the hotteſt among them, drew near to *Seleucus*, who making uſe of the Reſpite that was given him, ſet the Point of his Sword upon the Ground, and leaning on the Hilt to take a little Reſt and Breath, ſaw his Blood run down from a great many Parts of his Body.

Arſaces

Arſaces putting up the Bever of his Helmet, Valiant *Seleucus* (ſaid he) you ſhall not die, nor ſhall you be overcome, *Arſaces* will repay you part of what he owes you, and tho' he was not oblig'd to you for his Life, he, with all generous Men, owes his Relief unto your Vertue. *Seleucus* knowing him, would no longer diſpute his Life, nor his Liberty againſt him, but preſenting him his Sword, I yield my ſelf (ſaid he) and I yield my ſelf without Shame to the Great *Arſaces*, with this Belief, that if he had not ceaſed to be my Friend, I ſhould not now have been conquer'd. *Arſaces* was going to reply, when he perceiv'd him to grow pale, and by little and little to ſink into a Swoon, which his Wearineſs and Loſs of Blood had cauſed. He embraced him preſently to hold him up, and feeling him faint in his Arms, he turn'd towards ſome he knew, and making them take him up, commanded them to carry him into his Tent, and lay him in his Bed, with the ſame Care he would have deſired to his own Perſon. Then ſeeking *Orcondates* on every Side, he found him buſied with *Lyſimachus*, *Demetrius*, and *Ptolomeus*, to ſtop the Slaughter of ſo many Men, who had given over all Reſiſtance. Spare, Friends, (cried he, running from Place to Place) ſpare thoſe who were your Countrymen and your Fellow Soldiers; there has been Blood enough ſhed already, and our Victory for being the more bloody, cannot now be any thing the more entire. *Arſaces* help'd the Prince of *Scythia* in that Employment; and by the Care they took they ſav'd the Lives of many Thouſand Men. The Soldiers having long been deaf to thoſe Commands, began to obey in many Places, and giving Quarter took ſome of their Enemies Priſoners, leaving the reſt free Liberty to eſcape; all thoſe that could get off, retir'd to *Babylon*, the Gates whereof were ſet open to them, and of all that mighty Number of Soldiers, which a few Hours before had covered all the Plain, there remained not any without the Walls, but what were either dead or Priſoners. In ſhort, our Princes had as total a Victory as they could have wiſh'd; and if the Ardour of *Orcondates* and *Arſaces* had been follow'd, they that very Day wou'd have appear'd at the Heels of the Run-aways, before the Gates

Gates of *Babylon*; but *Antigonus*, *Craterus* and *Polyperchon* oppoſed that Reſolution; and knowing that it was near Night, and that the City was not in a Condition to be eaſily taken, they ſtaid their Impetuouſneſs with very ſpecious Reaſons; and telling them how well they ought to be ſatisfied with the Actions of that Day, perſuaded them to beſtow the reſt of it in the Care of their wounded Men, and in the Help they ow'd to their Friends, many of whom lying among the Dead, may yet have need, and be in a Condition to make Uſe of their Aſſiſtance. The Two great Princes, to whoſe Valour and Conduct the Army confeſſeth it ſelf indebted for the Victory, ſubſcribed to the Opinion of their Friends; and after having employ'd their Care and their Authority in quieting all the Field, they cauſed a Retreat to be ſounded on every Side, moderating their Impatience by Hope of laying Siege within a few Days to *Babylon*.

The End of the Fourth Part of CASSANDRA.

61621941